CHAPTER III. THE PRESENCE OF THE RISEN JESUS IN AND AMONG HIS FOLLOWERS IN THE FIRST FAREWELL DISCOURSE (JOHN 13:31-14:31)

3.1. Introduction

The previous chapter has described that John planned that the text of the Gospel should actively change people: people who are no longer in a position to see Jesus physically will “see” (meet) Jesus, confess him as Christ, and receive eternal life, through the narrative of the Gospel (cf. 20:30-31). It was thus discovered that the text of the Gospel serves as a replacement for the presence of Jesus. This chapter will investigate how this performative power of the text accounts for the first farewell discourse of Jesus (John 13:31-14:31) where Jesus’ consolidation to his disciples on the day before the departure from the world is mentioned. The question of how John arranged his narrative to function that the risen Jesus continually presents himself to his followers after his departure from the world through this particular pericope will be examined. This can be achieved by applying proper exegetical methods to the text, which is explained in the methodological considerations in Chapter I. According to this research plan, two aspects of the exegesis will be considered, namely, literary context and detailed exegesis. These two processes are unified and integrated, but separated here for purposes of clarity. As a first or preliminary step toward determining the exegesis of the underlying pericope, it is necessary to discuss the literary context of the pericope. The contextual study is very important in forming an accurate understanding of the text. This consideration prevents the exegete from going astray and makes an understanding of the narrative vital. This means that the delineation of the literary context would be of considerable help in determining and explaining the basic tendency of the text. Thus the contextual study is the preliminary step to providing the necessary foundation of the complete exegesis. The subsequent or last step is the detailed exegesis of the pericope. This exegetical study will be done on the basis of the examinations of context that have been covered in the previous section. This means that the study of context is the introductory step to the concrete analysis of the given text. Throughout the preliminary study of the context of the
pericope some important aspects that exegetes must consider will be consistently kept in mind. The investigator should like to leave aside all questions concerning the historical development of strata and turn exclusively to a synchronic reading of the presented text in order to expose the theological purpose that the original author strove to deliver through the text.

3.2. The context of John 13:31-14:31

This part deals with the context of John 13:31-14:31. Several questions about the context of the present pericope must be dealt with in detail by way of an introductory investigation. First, in the present position John 13:31-14:31 is part of the Revealer’s farewell to his disciples. This section will look therefore at the genre of the farewell discourse in ancient literature. The study will argue that the Johannine farewell discourses do not follow the model of the testament alone, however. An attempt will be made to show that the discourses are a composite of various literary forms, not one but many. Besides, the ensuing study will examine in what ways additional literary forms surpass the testament in solving some of the interpretative difficulties in the farewell discourses. Secondly, although the farewell scene of Jesus appears to be an extended, single discourse stretching from 13:1-18:1, various seams have been discovered in the literary flow of these chapters. The discovery of these aporias has inspired claims that the unity of the discourses is only apparent and is the result of several stages of redaction. The assumption of the generic variety that other literary options exist in antiquity and the Gospel’s author takes advantage of them for the furtherance of theological and narrative designs supports narrative unity. Thirdly, since John 13:31-14:31 is attested through the macro structural investigation of the entire Gospel in the previous chapter to be placed in John 13:1-17:26, the narrative strategies of the author to place the pericope within the overall structure of Johannine narrative and, particularly, within John 13:1-17:26, need to be examined. Although the main focus of this study is a close reading of John 13:31-14:31, taking a look at the contextual factors of the underlying pericope will be helpful at this stage. In this way the individuality and uniqueness of this Johannine example will come to the fore with much greater clarity and precision (cf. Segovia 1991:5; Thomas 1991:65).
Finally, before proceeding to the detailed exegesis of John 13:31-14:31, the investigator will present a brief outline of the structure of the pericope. This overview is based on a detailed discourse analysis that has been particularly developed in South Africa and which will be discussed in more detail in the subsequent detailed exegesis.

3.2.1. The purpose and nature of the Johannine farewell discourses

What is John’s specific purpose in the farewell discourses and how does he deliver his intention to the readers throughout the narrative? The question concerning the purpose and nature of the farewell materials may very well be tied to the literary genre of the present pericope.

3.2.1.1. The testament and the Fourth Gospel

Many contemporary scholars find formal similarities between the literary form of John 13-17 and other “farewell discourses” or “testaments” of famous heroes from the ancient world (Brown 1970:597-601; Segovia 1991:4ff.; Klauck 1996:236-250; Keener 2003:896-898). Attention has been drawn to the farewell and blessings of Jesus in the Gospels (also of the disciples in Acts) and the Old Testament tradition, and is convinced that the form and style of these farewell discourses stem from the ancient biblical tradition. Munck’s *Discours d’adieu dans le Nouveau Testament et dans la litterature biblique* (1950) was another important article that appeared at the same time as Stauffer’s work. In the article Munck has discussed a number of farewell speeches in the New Testament against the background of Jewish literature. According to him, the farewell discourse in Jewish tradition contains four elements: (1) a person bids his farewell either because he will be raised to heaven or because he is about to die; (2) the person then offers exhortations or predicts what will happen; (3) less frequently, the person bidding farewell recounts his life which is to serve as a model; and (4) also rarely, the discourse contains a prophecy concerning the destination of the people on the last day (1950:159). He (1950:163) then analysed the speech of Paul to the Ephesian elders (Acts 20.17-38), 1 Timothy 1.12-11, and 2 Timothy 4.6-8, and concluded that these New Testament passages were influenced by the farewell discourse in Jewish tradition. Finally, Munck has considered other passages in the New Testament, including the farewell discourses in John 13-17. However, for him, the discourse in John’s Gospel is distinct from the rest of the New Testament in that it has lost its apocalyptic character (1950:167). Following on from Stauffer and Munck, Brown has listed 13 features that are common to the biblical and post

---

224 Over decades several studies have been devoted to the analysis of such scenes in antiquity, both within and outside the biblical tradition. See, for instance, Segovia (1991:4); Ferreira (1998:63-66); and Brown (1970:597-598) for a comprehensive survey of research on this issue: Stauffer (1950) was one of the first scholars to draw attention to this genre found in the ancient world both in Greco-Roman literature and Jewish literature. He has noted particularly a distinction between the Greek farewell speech and the biblical, namely, that the subject of the Jewish (biblical) farewell speech is not the noble hero (*vir praeclarus*), but the man of God, the office-bearer and middleman of God, who speaks on behalf of God (1950:31). He, then, has given a list of the parallels between the farewell speeches of Jesus in the Gospels (also of the disciples in Acts) and the Old Testament tradition, and is convinced that the form and style of these farewell discourses stem from the ancient biblical tradition (1950:32). Munck’s *Discours d’adieu dans le Nouveau Testament et dans la litterature biblique* (1950) was another important article that appeared at the same time as Stauffer’s work. In the article Munck has discussed a number of farewell speeches in the New Testament against the background of Jewish literature. According to him, the farewell discourse in Jewish tradition contains four elements: (1) a person bids his farewell either because he will be raised to heaven or because he is about to die; (2) the person then offers exhortations or predicts what will happen; (3) less frequently, the person bidding farewell recounts his life which is to serve as a model; and (4) also rarely, the discourse contains a prophecy concerning the destination of the people on the last day (1950:159). He (1950:163) then analysed the speech of Paul to the Ephesian elders (Acts 20.17-38), 1 Timothy 1.12-11, and 2 Timothy 4.6-8, and concluded that these New Testament passages were influenced by the farewell discourse in Jewish tradition. Finally, Munck has considered other passages in the New Testament, including the farewell discourses in John 13-17. However, for him, the discourse in John’s Gospel is distinct from the rest of the New Testament in that it has lost its apocalyptic character (1950:167). Following on from Stauffer and Munck, Brown has listed 13 features that are common to the biblical and post
Jacob to his children (Gen. 47:29-49:33); Moses’ addresses to the covenant community (Deut.), which would be, according to Brown (1970:598), perhaps the most important example from the pre-exilic period, in which the whole book of Deuteronomy is made up of Moses’ farewell speech to Israel; Joshua’s final remarks to Israel (Josh. 22-24); Samuel’s last speech (1 Sam. 12); and David’s address to Solomon and to the nation (1 Chron. 28-29). This literary genre became even more popular in the late biblical and the inter-testamental periods: Tobit’s deathbed farewell to Tobias (Tobit. 14:3-11); the twelve sons of Jacob (The Testaments of the XII Patriarchs, wherein either a Jewish work with Christian interpolations or an early Christian work drawing on Jewish sources); Noah (Jubilees 10); Abraham (Jub. 20-22); Rebecca and Isaac (Jub. 35-36); Moses (Josephus, Antiquities 8.45-47 sec. 309-26); Enoch (1 Enoch 91); Ezra (2 Esdras 14:28-36); and Baruch (2 Baruch 77). Other examples can be found in the New Testament: the last address of Paul to the biblical farewell speeches and John’s last discourses (1970:598-601). He is certain that the last discourses of John belong to the literary genre of the farewell discourse (see above). Other studies dealing with the genre of the farewell discourse have been provided by Michel, Di Lella, and Kurz. Michel gave a thorough overview of the Jewish (biblical and postbiblical) farewell Gattung in the middle section of his dissertation. He finds 13 elements that characterise this biblical genre (1973:48-54). These are: (1) confirmation of approaching death; (2) address to a specific audience; (3) paraenetic expressions; (4) prophetic statements; (5) self-resignation; (6) the destiny of the followers; (7) the blessing; (8) the prayer; (9) the last command; (10) funeral directions; (11) promises and oaths; (12) further farewell gestures; and (13) the end. He concluded that the farewell discourse is a definite literary genre (1973:54). Another important question that Michel deals with is the function and Sitz im Leben of the farewell discourse. According to Michel, this genre served a paraenetic function. “We are convinced that the farewell discourse had its origin in paraenesis, which, on the basis of a defined understanding of history, points out the relationship between the past, present and future.” (1973:57) In his analysis of biblical and postbiblical material paraeneses are an essential part of the farewell in all cases (1973:49). For him, the question concerning the Sitz im Leben of the farewell discourse must be seen in relation to the particular theology of the farewell. Michel also makes the point that the discourses were created ex eventu, and that they reflect the present situation of the author (1973:54). In his article, The Deuteronomic Background of the Farewell Discourse in Tob 14.3-11, Di Lella (1979) has isolated nine “major correspondences” between Deuteronomy and Tobit’s farewell discourse (14.3-11) (1979:380). These are: (1) long life in the land; (2) the offer of mercy; (3) rest and security in the land; (4) the blessing of joy; (5) the fear and love of God; (6) the command to praise God; (7) a theology of remembering; (8) the centralisation of the cult; and (9) a final exhortation. Di Lella also identified Deuteronomy as “nomic literature” in paraenetic form (1979:388). Another important study on the farewell discourse is that of Kurz, Luke 22.14-38 and Greco-Roman and Biblical Farewell Addresses (1985). In Kurz’s analysis the elements of the farewell addresses consist of the following: (1) summoning of successors; (2) recollection of the mission and example of the departing person; (3) recollection of the innocence and faithfulness of the departing person; (4) impending death; (5) exhortation; (6) warnings and final injunctions; (7) blessings; (8) farewell gestures; (9) tasks for successors; (10) a theological review of history; (11) the revealing of the future; (12) promises; (13) appointment of successors; (14) mourning over the departure; (15) prophecy concerning future degeneration; (16) renewal of the covenant; (17) care of those left; (18) consolation to the inner circle; (19) didactic speech; and (20) ars moriendi. Kurz, like Michel, sees the farewell discourse functioning as a paraenesis.
elders of Ephesus (Acts 20:17-38) is a type of farewell speech; the Pastorals are a form of Pauline farewell (2 Tim. 3:1-4:8); and 2 Peter is a form of Petrine farewell; the eschatological discourses in the Synoptic Gospels have certain elements in common with this literary genre.

Brown lists 13 features that are common to the biblical and post biblical farewell speeches and John’s last discourses (1970:598-601). He is certain that the last discourses of John belong to the literary genre of the farewell discourse, with an appropriate summary of vantage point (cf. Jubilees xxxv.27 (Rebecca), xxxvi.17 (Isaac); Testament of Naphtali i.2): The speaker announces the imminence of his departure (cf. 13:33; 14:2, 3; 16:16); the announcement of departure normally produces sorrow, therefore some form of reassurance is necessary (cf. 14:1, 3, 18, 27; 15:11; 16:6, 7; 16:22); in the earlier Old Testament farewells the speaker tends to support his instructions by referring to what God has done for Israel previously. In later Jewish examples it became more customary for the speaker to recall his own past life (cf. 13:33; 14:10, 26; 15:3, 20; 16:14, 15); a command to keep God’s commandments is often part of the advice (cf. 14:15, 21; 15:10, 14); the speaker often also commands his children to love one another (13:34; 15:12, 13); the directive for unity occurs frequently (cf. 17:11, 21, 23); the speaker tends to look into the future in order to see the fate that will befall his children (cf. 16:13); while looking into the future the speaker curses those who persecute the just and rejoice in their tribulations (cf. 15:18, 20; 16:2, 3, 20); the speaker may call down peace upon his children and promise ultimate joy in next life (14:27; 16:22, 23); he may promise his children God’s closeness if they remain faithful (cf. 14:23); it is natural for a man who is dying to worry about the perpetuation of his name (cf. 14:13, 14; 15:16; 16:22, 33); such a person picks a successor, who in may ways will be like him (cf. 16:16); this person finally closes his farewell address with a prayer for his children or the people he is leaving behind (cf. chapter 17).

---

225 Brown (1970:601) thus mentions as follows: “It is very difficult to be certain about the mentality of the readers, but we think that the composition of the discourse can be better explained as an imitation of models well known in Judaism, without necessary recourse to pagan models.”

226 Segovia (1991:4), who underscores that the thought of Jesus’ impending death permeates the entire section, states as follows: “From beginning to end, chapters 13-17 concretely and directly anticipate the approaching end of Jesus’ life and ministry.” He goes on to say, “The introduction to the first unit
3.2.1.2. Multiplicity of the generic associations of the discourses

Given even the above brief list, Johannine parallels to the testament form are obvious, and the list of parallels could be expanded considerably (Parsenios 2005:12).227 This narrative section is indeed a good example of a recurrent episode in the lives of the biblical heroes – the testament or farewell of a hero who is about to die (cf. Segovia 1991:4ff.; Klauck 1996:236-250). Although there have been, and continue to be, scholars who read these chapters through other generic lenses, the thoroughgoing belief in the testament quality of the discourses continues. It defines the shape and content of the Johannine farewell discourses. The question arises, however, as to whether or not the testament classification can explain all of the generic influences that lie beneath the Johannine farewell discourses. Parsenios (2005:12) is right in pointing out that the testament cannot adequately do so, and that other literary springs

reveals Jesus’ awareness of what is about to take place - the forthcoming departure from this world to the Father (13:1-4). Similarly, in the second unit the act of betrayal, the first of the final series of events in Jesus’ life and ministry, is described as imminent - so much so, in effect, that Jesus himself takes a decisive part in its launching and execution (13:27). Finally, the long speech to the remaining disciples begins and ends with references to the coming glorification of Jesus by and with the Father (13:31-33; 17:1-5, 24-26).” As such, Segovia supposes that these chapters exemplify the testament or farewell-type scene, and the long speech pronounced at some point during the meal itself exemplifies a farewell discourse. He argues that toward the beginning of his last visit to Jerusalem, after a rejection by the crowds of Jerusalem and prior to his arrest by the Jerusalem authorities, Jesus shares a final meal with his disciples; in the face of their forthcoming separation and his own impending death, he bids farewell to them in a speech that is quite extensive for the Gospel (13:31-17:26). 227 Indeed, all of these farewell speeches conform loosely to the same basic pattern (see Talbert 1992:200-201): (1) A noteworthy figure knows he is about to die, gathers his primary community about him and tells them (e.g., T. Zebulon 10:4: “I am now hastening away to my rest”); (2) the hero gives a farewell speech to his primary community that includes a prediction of the future. It was a widespread belief in Mediterranean antiquity that one who was about to die had prophetic power; (3) the farewell speech also contains an exhortation about how to behave after the hero has departed; and (4) the farewell speech with its predictions and exhortations sometimes closes with a prayer for those the hero is leaving behind (e.g., Deut. 33; 2 Baruch, etc.). Many of these formal characteristics of the farewell speech are present in John 13-17: Jesus knows that his hour has come to be glorified (13:1, 3, 31-33); he predicts what will happen after his departure (e.g., persecution, 16:2-3) and exhorts his disciples to proper behaviour (e.g., love one another, 13:34; 15:12, 17); and he closes his last Testament with a prayer for his disciples (e.g., that God keep them, 17:11b; that God sanctify them, 17:17). To put this in another way: Jesus’ announcement of his imminent departure: 13:33; 14:2-4; 16:16; his assurance to his disciples: 14:1, 27; 16:6-7:22; his directive to the disciples to keep his commandments: 14:15, 21; 15:10, 14; and especially his commandments of mutual love: 13:34; 15:12, 17; his desire for unity among his followers: 17:11, 21-23; his prediction of future persecutions: 15:18-20; 16:2-3; his gift of peace: 14:27; 16:23; his promise of joy: 15:11; 16:22, 24; his assurance of the disciples’ prayers being heard: 14:13, 14; 15:16; 16:24, 26; his promise of sending the Spirit/Paraclete: 14:16-17:26; 15:26; 16:7-11, 13-15; his final prayer: 17:1-26. As Parsenios (2005:12)
flow into these chapters of the Gospel. The following section will introduce the additional genres that will be brought to bear on the discourses, and the final section will suggest how they compensate for the deficiencies of the testament.

While he still believes that the testament – particularly the biblical testament – is certainly the single most important literary influence on the Johannine farewell discourses, Parsenios argues that other literary options exist in antiquity, and the Gospel’s author takes advantage of them for the furtherance of theological and narrative designs. Following John’s typical patterns, he is convinced that the farewell discourses are not faithful to any singly genre, even the testament (see Attridge 2002:3-21). The Gospel’s purpose is to narrate the story and the significance of Jesus. To do this, as far as he is concerned, it makes use of several different literary forms depicting death and responses to death and departure. In response to insists, there seems to be no need to demonstrate every point of association between the farewell discourses and the testament form.

Scholars insist that the testament or farewell of a dying hero, a common feature of biblical narrative, is also present in both the extra-biblical Jewish literature and Greco-Roman literature. It is generally believed that this genre is known in the Hellenistic world, but is even more common in Jewish literature (see Segovia 1991:4; Carson 1991:480; Talbert 1992:200-201; Stibbe 1993:150-154; Ferreira 1998:63-66; Van Tilborg 1993:133). That is, scholars suppose that the Graeco-Roman tradition is perhaps less rich. In the testament, venerable figures follow a usual pattern of speech and actions on the brink of death. As has been mentioned above, Moses’ speech to the assembled Israelites in Deuteronomy 34 represents a paradigmatic example of the phenomenon in the Old Testament. The basic template appears in a variety of later Jewish texts, most notably the Testament of the Twelve Patriarchs. Investigations of this genre have led scholars to look beyond Jewish literature, however, and to notice similarities between the Jewish testaments and the farewell scenes from Greek and Latin texts. In classical literature, the death of Socrates in Plato’s *Phaedo* is the model farewell text, and, as in the case of Moses, Socrates’ example is copied in numerous later texts (Parsenios 2005:3-4). Kurz (1985:19) remarks that, apart from Socrates’ farewell in Plato’s *Phaedo*, the extant Graeco-Roman farewells are “merely ornamented narratives with ‘last words’ in the form of a short witty saying by their heroes”. In the farewell address in the tradition of Plato’s *Phaedo* the speaker (1) gives commands or names successors; (2) exHORTs, and urges his disciples to remember his teachings; (3) sometimes curses enemies; (4) proclaims innocence or fulfilment of acts; (5) defends what he did or why he is about to commit suicide; (6) reflects on his life; (7) sometimes seeks clemency; (8) shows courage facing death; (9) sometimes expresses sorrow; and (10) turns over his soul to the gods. Some similarities between *Phaedo* and John 13-17 are as follows (see Stibbe 1993:152-153): both heroes are on the point of facing their own death; both heroes embrace their death with confidence and fearlessness; both heroes are surrounded by a small number of disciples; the role of the narrator in telling the reader what was said is almost non-existent; both heroes have considerable confidence about where they are going to after death. However, there are two important or significant differences between two descriptions: the destination of Socrates’ death and departure (“the realm of the invisible, reserved in the main for the souls of good and wise people” vs “his Father’s house”); the basis for their beliefs in the hereafter (“philosophical logic” vs “experience”).

The viability of his effort is, as he himself acknowledged, strengthened by the fact that it is not entirely unique. According to Parsenios (2005:9-10), the farewell discourses have already benefited from being read against the backdrop of multiple genres simultaneously, most recently by Ashton
previous scholarship that understands the Johannine farewell discourses solely as a testament, Parsenios believes that the discourses interface with classical literature, specifically the following literary styles: Greek tragedy, consolation literature, and the literary symposium tradition. He supposes that the literary symposium influences certain parts of the farewell discourses, but in addition to the literary symposium are the exit to death in ancient drama and certain aspects of ancient consolation literature (Parsenios 2005:35-36). For Parsenios, whether or not the author of the Gospel consciously shifted from biblical and Jewish models to Greco-Roman ones is impossible to determine, and really not important. What is important for him is to see how the Gospel bends and twists the various raw materials that existed in ancient literature. The theory is that John has twisted the testament by joining to it the above three classical forms. The result is a different kind of testament (Parsenios 2005:36). 230

(1991). Parsenios recognises that his study is built upon many of Ashton’s important arguments about John 13-17, but in somewhat different directions. Ashton argues that John 14 is a combination of the testament and the related commission form, in order to show the particular way in which the testament has been twisted to fit the Gospel’s larger interests. But, where Ashton sees only Jewish literature at work, the study of Parsenios is more interested in John’s associations with classical literature. For Parsenios, Davie’s term “bilingualism” is very instructive (see Davie 1996:44). While he believes that the Gospel operates in a primarily Semitic framework linguistically and theologically, Davie still recognises in John the language of the Hermetica to which Dodd was so attuned (Davie 1996:45). According to Parsenios (2005:9-10), the farewell discourses reflect “bilingualism” in that they share similarities with the testament, and yet they also speak in several other ancient idioms of departure.

An understanding of distinctiveness of Johannine farewell discourse from other ancient farewell discourses is crucial for determining the purpose, and consequently for the interpretation, of the present pericope. Distinctiveness of the Johannine farewell discourses from the other ancient testaments has already been pointed out by Brown (1970:597-601; cf. Bammler 1993:103-106). Brown (1970:581) points out that whereas in the Book of Signs John’s tendency is shown to narrate first the story of Jesus’ sign and to follow this with a discourse that would interpret the sign, here it may be said that the explanation precedes the event (death-resurrection). The reason for this change of pattern is, according to him, easy to see: the post-resurrection perspective of the author makes such an inversion possible (cf. Thomas 1991:66). This is delineated by Brown (1970:581-582), in the following way: “The Jesus who speaks here transcends times and space; he is a Jesus who is already on his way to the Father, and his concern is that he shall not abandon those who believe in him but must remain in the world (14:18; 17:11). Although he speaks at the Last Supper, he is really speaking from heaven; although those who hear him are his disciples, his words are directed to Christians of all times. The Last Discourse is Jesus’ last testament: it is meant to be read after he has left the earth. Yet it is not like other last testaments, which are the recorded words of men who are dead and can speak no more; for whatever there may be of ipsissima verba in the last discourse has been transformed in the light of the resurrection and through the coming of the Paraclete into a living discourse delivered, not by a dead man, but by the one who has life (6:57), to all readers of the Gospel.” Carson (1991:480) remarks on the distinctiveness of the Johannine farewell discourses from the others in the following way: “In all the other instances, the person saying farewell was not expecting to come back. When John writes up these chapters, both he and his readers know the outcome of the issue: Jesus departed, as he said, but he came back from the grave, made himself present through the Spirit he bequeathed, and promised to return personally to his followers.” Thus, for him, in a certain sense this so-called “farewell discourse” is close to being
3.2.1.3. Presence in absence

Where scholarly consensus has typically seen only the testament genre as a template for the structure of these chapters, Parsenios argues for greater generic variety. The following study will build upon, in many ways, Parsenios’ important arguments about John 13-17 from the perspective of various literary associations. Rather than reading the farewell discourses solely as a testament, following Parsenios, the investigator adopts the multiplicity of the generic associations of the discourses. As Parsenios (2005:9) remarks, however, multiplicity is not an end in itself. Discovering generic association serves a larger purpose. The effort to multiply generic associations beyond the testament is intimately connected to the theme of presence in absence. Parsenios (2005:10) states, “A typical testament is primarily about the departure of a dying figure, emphasising absence and loss. But, in a variety of ways, the Johannine farewell discourses emphasise, not the lack of Jesus’ presence, but his abundantly continued presence.” His conviction is, as he acknowledges, built on the argument of Attridge, who insists that by emphasising Jesus’ abiding presence, the Fourth Gospel has bent the expectations of the testament genre \(^{231}\) (Parsenios 2005:10). \(^{232}\)

The hypothesis is that the pursuit of generic problems illuminates the constellation of themes in the farewell discourses related to Jesus’ continued presence after he has departed from his disciples and from the world. This means that the multiplicity of the generic associations of the discourses sheds new light on the nature of Jesus’ departure as well as on his continuing presence in spite of that departure. No longer designed to evoke only the themes of departure and absence, the testament of Jesus in John emphasises instead Jesus’ abiding presence. While the material from Greek tragedy will only further emphasise the theme of departure, the material from fundamentally misnamed. He argues that, on the face of it, this discourse was delivered not merely by one about to die, but (as John and his readers know) by one who died and rose again and who continues to make himself known to his disciples.

\(^{231}\) Attridge (2002:18) remarks: “If the farewell discourses are testamentary, they are substantially bent at this crucial point. Jesus foretells his absence, but hints at his presence, a presence made possible by the commanding example of how to love that constituted his departure.”

\(^{232}\) The multiplication of comparative genres in his study, therefore, is designed to illustrate how John bends and twists the testament form.
classical consolation literature and the literary symposium tradition will accentuate the theme of continuing presence. John has thereby transcended the usual expectations of the testament. What the investigator offers here is a summary of the arguments of Parsenios in this regard (2005:77-149)\textsuperscript{233}:

Consolation literature

Jesus’ farewell discourses include themes and techniques of classical consolation, reflected in writers such as Plutarch, Seneca, Cicero and others, as well as themes from Greco-Roman literature generally, to soften the disciples’ grief. In particular, in John, the consolatory function of the Paraclete is expressed.\textsuperscript{234} In the history of research, many Johannine scholars (e.g., Ashton, Brown, Schnackenburg and Segovia, to name a few prominent interpreters) view the Paraclete’s work in the Johannine community as consolatory in some form or another. However, it is necessary to provide a more appropriate framework for understanding the Paraclete’s role as a consoler. Arguments in favour of the testament character of the discourses emphasise that the Paraclete is Jesus’ successor just as Joshua is the successor of Moses. This is certainly accurate, but incomplete. The successor model does illuminate how the Paraclete will carry on the teaching and witnessing roles of Jesus. This activity, however, only partly defines the Paraclete and has little to do with the first Paraclete passage (14:16-17). The Paraclete is more than a successor, and the Paraclete’s role as Jesus’ double stands out clearly in the light of ancient consolation. The two insights of the Paraclete as Jesus’ doppelgänger and as a consolatory figure are more richly integrated when fused with the insights of classical consolation. Only then is it obvious precisely how the doppelgänger is consolatory. To counter the dread and sadness that will accompany Jesus’ absence, the Paraclete-Spirit will serve as a token of Jesus’ continuing presence until Jesus himself returns in the Parousia. More important, the Paraclete will remind the disciples of all that Jesus has said. Because consolation is a form of moral exhortation, and not merely the expression of sympathy, Jesus’ concern is not simply to cheer the disciples in the face of his departure, but also

\textsuperscript{233} The detailed explanation of this argument will be done in the detailed exegesis below.
to provide for their continuing association with him, and their continued instruction. The Paraclete accomplishes both tasks by making Jesus and his words of instruction present to the disciples. Until the teacher and Lord can be with the disciples again, the Paraclete serves as a token of the Lord’s presence (Parsenios 2005:77-109).

Literary symposium

The insight of Jesus’ presence leads to the literary symposium. The farewell discourses variously resemble the literary symposium tradition, and share certain of the cultural attitudes and practices of Greco-Roman meals (see Witherington III 1995:232-234). The behaviour of Judas sets the stage for the argument, because Judas serves as a flashpoint for several sympotic themes. As a character that opposes the love and friendship of the table, Judas in the first place accentuates the intimacy that Jesus shares with his disciples, an intimacy similar to that in other literary symposia. Judas’ early departure from the table is no less sympotic, and parallels the similar activity in the literary symposium tradition of characters who upset the concord for which the symposium strives. Further, Judas’ exit neatly divides the deipnon in chapter 13 from the discourses that dominate the scene until 18:1. Indeed, Judas’ exit instigates the discourses, since Jesus only begins speaking after Judas leaves, and ceases to offend the atmosphere of loyal friendship. But, even though Judas’ activity circulates around the deipnon, the meal itself receives little attention and is soon dwarfed and overwhelmed completely by the discourses of Jesus. The feast is a feast of words. A quotation from Plutarch suggests that this form has a particular function. Plutarch praises Plato for ignoring the food and entertainments common to the symposium, and depicting Socrates in a way that focuses on the speeches offered around the table. This format allows later generations to share bounteously in the feast of words. John, too, emphasises that his discourses are designed to include believers who no longer stand in the presence of Jesus. Verse 16:4b is particularly meaningful: “I would have said these things to you from the beginning, but I was with you.” This rich statement suggests that Jesus’ discourses are to serve his disciples when he is no

234 More detailed investigation of the meaning and function of the term “παρακλητός” will be dealt with the detailed exegesis of this Chapter.
longer among them. In a sense he is already somewhat displaced in this comment since he already speaks of a time when he is no longer present. Because his words are the words of God, they must be remembered and kept. The very writing of the Gospel – and especially of the farewell discourses – serves as a basic way in which the keeping of his words is accomplished. Consequently, Jesus continues to speak even after he has returned to the Father. His fleshly presence is replaced by his logical presence. The Word who became flesh is now present in his words (Parsenios 2005:111-149).235

In conclusion, in contrast to the common opinion that the Johannine farewell discourses represent only the Jewish genre of the Testament, the present study argues that features of the discourses, apart from Greco-Roman literature, have been misread or missed completely. While the material from Greek tragedy only further emphasises the theme of departure, the material from consolation literature and the literary symposium emphasises Jesus’ continuing and consoling presence, with particular attention to the Paraclete’s role as doppelgänger and to the words of Jesus as his replacement. Besides, the following section will argue that evidence from classical drama assists in reading Jesus’ return to the Father as a dramatic exit and, further, accounts for the puzzling delay of Jesus at 14:31 without recourse to redaction theories. John has thus twisted the testament by joining to it these three classical forms. The result is a different kind of testament. The main concern of the Johannine farewell discourses, therefore, is in clarifying Jesus’ consoling presence even after his departure to the Father.

235 For, Jesus discourse is not only delivered in the setting of his exit to death. They are delivered in the setting of an after-dinner conversation. The exit to death is simultaneously an exit from a deipnon. Therefore, Jesus’ testament is a tragic “Big Speech” delivered in the context of sympotic discourse. Jesus’ banquet, however, is not a deipnon of debauchery and excess, but rather a banquet of words in which Jesus lovingly prepares his disciples for his departure. Or, perhaps it is better to say that he speaks to his disciples from the perspective of one who has already gone, from the post-Resurrection perspective. Because of this perspective, his banquet of words is as nourishing for later generations as it is for those who heard it in his earthly life. The relevance of this is not at all clear when one notes merely that the testament can occasionally include a brief meal. John’s intentions become most clear in light of the classical logo-deipnon, in which Jesus announces, “I would have said these things to you from the beginning, but I was with you.”

120
Excursus: Meal in John 13

The narrative occurs during the meal in which Jesus participates with his disciples (13:3). Are the paradigmatic readers to understand this as the main Passover meal that began the week-long festivities, during which Jesus spoke about the bread and cup as his body and blood, as in the Synoptics? While some scholars such as Morris (1971:611) and Blomberg (2001:186-187) think that this meal is the Passover meal, many other scholars including Barrett (1978:435) and Lindars (1972:444) disagree. The seemingly innocuous statement of 13:3 has generated a storm of controversy. The variation is mainly reasoned from the different chronological records between John’s Gospel and the Synoptic sequence with regard to the hour and the day of the month of Jesus’ death (see Ball 1996:111; Carson 1991:460).

All four Gospels agree that Jesus was crucified and buried before sundown on Friday, that the empty tomb was discovered on Sunday morning, and that these events occurred at the time of the Jewish Passover (Culpepper 1998:199). However, in detail, the Gospel of John records the time of Christ’s death as 12 p.m. (the sixth hour) (cf. 19:14). The day of the

---

236 As Van der Watt (2001:339) mentions, it is commonly known that the meal fulfils a central role in ancient societies, especially as part of the process of socialisation. The Gospel of John remarkably refers to meals in many places apart from the imagery of eating and drinking (see): 2:1-12; 4:8, 27-31; 6:1-14; (10:9-10); 12:1-2; 13:1ff; (18:28); 21:9-14. According to Van der Watt, a meal forms the intimate context where Jesus prepares his disciples for their future. For him (2000:340), in the drama presented in this Gospel, meals form a central piece of décor. They present an intimate opportunity for Jesus to talk to his own people; they present him with the chance to show his glory and offer him the chance to teach his disciples to wash one another’s feet.

237 Blomberg (2001:186-187), who believes that a significant portion of this debate depends on the interpretation of 18:28; 19:14, 31, and 42, notes, “Because Passover began with a supper-time meal as its most central ritual, to hear then that the supper was being served (v. 2) would naturally suggest that the Passover had begun, not that this was some separate supper prior to the Passover.”

238 Origen and others think that the morsel given to Judas was the Eucharistic bread (Augustine, Homiletics on the Gospel of John 62.5 disagrees. Origen, Commentary on the Gospel of John 32.13.30/24.16, see G.C.S. Origenes IV, 468). Some modern scholars would think that they have an implicit reference to the Eucharist in John 13 (see Ford 1997). These “words of institution” never appear in John, but the rest of chapters 13-17 make it clear that this is the last night of Jesus’ life. And the paradigmatic readers suppose that John omits traditions that might be misused to promote an institutionalised sacramentalism (see Blomberg 2001:186-187). But even apart from the Eucharist, the meal context is important.

239 There is clear conflict between the Synoptics and the Fourth Gospel. Carson (1991:457) says that the Synoptic chronology is correct: Jesus and his disciples did indeed eat a Passover meal on Thursday, the beginning of 15 Nisan, and John’s Gospel, rightly interpreted, does not contradict this chronology in any of the seven verses alleged to do so (13:1, 27; 18:28; 19:14, 31, 36, 42). He (1991:455) argues, “Theologically, this means that the last supper cannot easily be construed as a Paschal meal, even if the link between Jesus' death and the slaughter of the lamb might be considered a significant gain (cf. 1:29, 34); historically, this reckoning introduces such a jarring contradiction with the Synoptic that most commentators have felt it necessary either to approve one scheme while condemning the other, or to propose some kind of resolution.” However, Culpepper (1998:201) thinks that, historically, the case can be made that John is more accurate because it is unlikely that the Jewish authorities would have arrested, tried, and executed Jesus on the day of the Passover.
week is Friday, the day of the month is Nisan 14\textsuperscript{240}, and the year is either AD 30 or 33\textsuperscript{241} (Grigsby 1995:77). In Synoptics, however, the crucifixion begins at 9 a.m. (the third hour) on Friday, and the date is not Nisan 14 but Nisan 15. Thus, according to the Synoptic accounts (cf. Mark 14:12; Luke 22:15), the last supper apparently coincided with the Passover meal during the early hours of Nisan 15 (reckoning the beginning of each day at sundown)\textsuperscript{242}: Jesus celebrated the Passover meal together with his disciples, went out to Gethsemane, was arrested, tried, crucified, and buried on the day of Passover. However, unlike the Synoptic Gospels, the last supper that the Johannine Jesus shares with his disciples is not the sacrificial Passover meal that is customarily eaten on the 14\textsuperscript{th} of Nisan. John instead schedules the last supper on the evening of the 13\textsuperscript{th} of Nisan, the day before the beginning of the Passover celebration (cf. John 18:28). How does John’s chronology of the passion narrative relate to the chronology of the Synoptic Gospels? This differentiation can be applied to the debate on the nature of the current meal. The Jews would not enter Pilate’s Praetorium because had they done so they would have been defiled and could not have eaten the Passover that night, and that year the Passover coincided with the Sabbath. This reckoning assigns Jesus’ crucifixion to Thursday afternoon (that is, on the afternoon of Nisan 14), at the very time the Passover lambs were being slaughtered at the temple in preparation for the Passover that lay just ahead (see Culpepper 1998:199-201). Thus there seems to be clear conflict between the Synoptics and the Fourth Gospel. It is most likely that the reason for John’s change of chronology is theological (Yee 1989:68; cf. Witherington III 1995:232-234). The paradigmatic readers recall that the Jews reckon their days from evening to evening. Pilate condemns Jesus at the sixth hour, or noon, of the 13\textsuperscript{th} of Nisan (19:14). Jesus is crucified and left to die during the preparations for the Passover meal that will be celebrated that evening which begins the 14\textsuperscript{th} of Nisan. Jesus’ death would thus

\textsuperscript{240} The phrase, παρασκευή του/ πασχά, refers to the day before the Passover, i.e., Nisan 14. This is confirmed in 18:28 where the crucifixion appears to antedate the Passover meal in the Johannine passion chronology. On the other hand, the term, παρασκευή., frequently means “Friday” (cf. 19:31, 42) (Grigsby 1995:77).

\textsuperscript{241} Although there have been advocates for every year between 21 and 36, according to Grigsby, 30 and 33 are the only two viable options. Grigsby (1995:77) explains this assumption as follows: “Years before 26 are eliminated because that was Pilate’s inaugural year as procurator. Other possibilities, namely 26, 28, 29, 32, 34, and 35, are eliminated because astronomical calculations have determined that neither Nisan 14 nor 15 occurred on a Friday during those years. Both 27 and 31 are tenuous on astronomical grounds. Conceivably, Nisan occurred on a Friday in 27, but only if the sighting of the new moon’s first, faint disc (normally spotted some 30 hours after actual appearance of the new moon) was delayed a day by clouds or atmospheric conditions. 31 is an option only if the year 31 was a leap year. Finally, the year 36 is eliminated because it runs into serious harmonization problems with the Luke-Acts chronology. Thus, the years 30 and 33 emerge as the most likely options.”
coincide with the priestly slaughter of the Passover lambs in the temple. For John, Jesus replaces these lambs as the true Lamb of God. The proclamation of John the Baptist at the very outset of Jesus’ ministry, "Behold, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world!" is fulfilled on Golgotha (1:29).\textsuperscript{243} In 18:28 the Jewish opponents prepare for their Passover meal. Jesus is not invited, and they prefer to crucify him instead. It seems as if they are eating their Passover meal without the real Lamb of God (Van der Watt 2000:339-340; see Witherington III 1995:232-234).\textsuperscript{244}

3.2.2. The literary unity of John 13:1-17:26

3.2.2.1. Definition of the problem

Traditionally, chapters 13-17 of the Gospel have been considered a literary unit: this is a congruent discourse presented in the form of Jesus’ farewell to his disciples (see Boyle 1975:210-222; Berg 1988:98; Keener 2003:893-895). Dodd (1953:399-400), for instance, argued that it was unnecessary to resort to hypotheses of sources, stages and the like. The differences, like the change from the dramatic scene in John 13 to the dialogue in John 14 and then to the monologue in John 15-16, are understandable given the standard Johannine pattern. In perpetuation of a well-established exegesis, Wilkens (1998:186) has held that the latter portions of the discourses should be considered the explanation of the former portions, and from the same hand. Haenchen (1984:128) has also insisted that the entire farewell discourse is the product of one hand, and a unified piece. According to him, the contradictions and conflicts are

\textsuperscript{242} In that particular year, the Passover ran from about 6.00 p.m. Thursday to about 6.00 p.m. Friday (see Carson 1991:455).

\textsuperscript{243} A sizable majority of scholars alleges that John has reshaped his traditions in order to have Jesus’ last meal with his disciples take place before the start of Passover, so that he can make the crucifixion appear to occur in the afternoon during which the Passover lambs would have been slaughtered for the celebratory meal that evening. This then becomes one more way to stress, theologically, that Jesus is the true Lamb of God who died for the sins of the world (see Blomberg 2001:186-187).

\textsuperscript{244} Like the Epicurean or (Neo-) Pythagorean meals, it is the natural setting for expressions of friendship, sympotic discourse, and a farewell speech (compare Socrates in Plato’s \textit{Apology}. See also Segovia 1991:1-48, for a critical survey of John 13-17 as a farewell speech in the Greco-Roman tradition). More importantly it makes the betrayal of Judas Iscariot as a guest and intimate friend the height of horrendous behaviour (Ford 1997:139).
simply the author’s profound use of irony and double entendre. If there is a reason for this judgement, it is the wording of 18:1:
ταυτα εις πονηρων ζητουμεν επεξεργαζεται συν του φασματα ου και συν τοι φασματα. The natural way to take this is, it is argued, that the discourses and the dialogues recorded in the first two chapters, John 13-14, are set in a certain room, while chapters 15-17 continue, historically, the dialogue along the road to the garden, culminating in the prayer of Jesus in John 17 (see Carson 1991:477; cf. Klauck 1996:236-250; Westcott 1954:197; Kerr 2002:270-271; Keener 2003:893-895; Boyle 1975:210-222).

The great majority of authorities, however, believe that this explanation of the texts is inadequate. There is too much, they feel, that militates against it (see Talbert 1992:202; Painter 1993:352-353): (a) It is strange that a long discourse follows the words of 14:30, “hereafter I will not talk much with you”; (b) it is perplexing that after 14:31b (“rise, let us go hence”) a discourse and a long prayer follow before Jesus and his disciples go out (18:1); (c) it is surprising that after 13:36 (Simon Peter says: “Lord, where are you going?”) and 14:5-6 (Thomas says: “Lord, we do not know where you are going”) Jesus should say in 16:5 “I am going …. Yet none of you asks me, ‘Where are you going?’”; and (d) it is interesting to note the frequent repetitions of subject matter in 13:31-14:31, 15:1-16:4a, and in 16:4b-33, although fresh emphases and thoughts do emerge (cf. Kysar 1986:235: cf. Brown 1970:589-593;

---

245 It should be noted that this portion of Haenchen’s commentary is the oldest and least revised of the entire work, published posthumously. The editor Funk assembled this portion of the commentary from Haenchen’s note that dated from 1954-1960 (see 1984:245).
246 Indeed, many contemporary scholars dismiss this option. The views of a few commentators may be mentioned: Barrett (1978:454) states, “It seems incredible.” Brown (1970:583) points out that this view overlooks the fact that the exit from the room does not occur until 18:1, which reads, “επεξεργαζεται συν του φασματα ου και συν τοι φασματα.” Painter (1981:523) argues that at this point (18:1) and not before (14:31) Jesus and his disciples actually leave. Moloney (1998:414) insists that despite Jesus’ command there is no movement, and the discourse and prayer continues from 15:1 till 17:26, and only in 18:1 is there a rising and going hence. Scholars suppose that John intended for the reader to think that the next three chapters take place as Jesus and the disciples are walking to the garden but this is likewise dishonest.
247 Painter (1981:528) argues, “It does not seem reasonable to suggest that the evangelist wrote 14:31, επεξεργαζεται απογοητευται επις του φασματα, with the intention of continuing the discourse in 15:1 as if there had been no break. Nor does the suggestion that what follows in 15:1-16:33 was spoken on the way, as Jesus walked with his disciples, solve the problems. There is no indication in 15:1 ff. that they are ‘on the way’. It is difficult to imagine John 17 as a prayer on the way. But conclusively, 18:1 indicates that only then does Jesus leave with his disciples.”
Keener 2003:893-895). The following diagram elucidates this argument.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>13:31-14:31</th>
<th>15:1-16:4a</th>
<th>16:4b-33</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Promise of Jesus’ return (14:1-3, 15-17, 18, 27-28)</td>
<td>Promise of Jesus’ return (as Paraclete, 1-7)</td>
<td>Power of asking (23-24, 26)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The way as a way of knowing (14:4-7)</td>
<td>Parables and knowing (25, 29-30)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faith as seeing (14:8-10, 19) (“little while”, mikros)</td>
<td>Faith as seeing (16-20) (“little while”, mikros)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Works as revelation and faith living (14:10-11)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power of asking (14:13-14)</td>
<td>Power of asking (15:7, 16b)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indwelling (14:15-17, 18-21, 23-24)</td>
<td>Indwelling of believers in Christ (15:1-10)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Love and obedience (14:21-24)</td>
<td>Bearing fruit, loving, obeying (15:1-10, 16a)</td>
<td>Peace (37)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peace (14:27)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ferreira (1998:65-67) points out that a number of the same elements are present not only in the farewell speeches (John 13-16) but also in the prayer of Jesus (John 17), for example, the themes of glory (13:31-32; 14:13; 15:8; 16, 14; 17:1, 4, 5, 10, 22, 24), life (14:6; 17:2, 3), revelation (14:9-10, 21, 24-25; 16:12-15; 17:6, 8), election (15:16; 17:2, 6-9, 12, 14-16), struggle with the world (14:17, 19, 22, 27, 30-31, 15:18-19; 16:11, 20-21, 33, 17:6, 9, 12-16, 25), belief (14:1, 11-12, 29, 16:9, 27, 30-31; 17:8, 20-21), joy (15:11; 16:20-22, 24; 17:13), and love (13:34; 14:15, 21, 23-24, 31, 15:9-10, 13, 11; 17:23-24, 26). According to him, the only important elements that are absent from John 17 are the atonement motif and the concept of sin. Thus he thinks that John 17 must be regarded as part of the farewell discourses in this Gospel. He notices, however, that though many themes of the farewell discourses are present in the prayer there are significant omissions, for example, the role of the Spirit is completely absent from the prayer. Furthermore, he argues that there is also new material in the prayer, such as the emphasis on unity, and the theme of sending. Therefore, for him, John 17 cannot be regarded as a simple summary of the farewell discourses, as it contains further reflection that goes beyond the thought of the previous farewell discourses. The following is a summary of his argument: a hypothesis concerning the Sitz im Leben of the prayer in John 17 when it was composed in its final form and inserted into the Gospel can be accounted for by the absence and presence of certain themes. The most reasonable explanation to account for the absence of the Spirit as the giver of revelation appears to be that the author is trying to curb the activity of Spirit-enthusiasts. Thus, John 17 was the last addition made to the farewell discourses, or, at least, contains the reflection of the author that took place after the situations that produced the farewell discourses. Moreover, the absence of the danger of apostasy (sin) and of any strong language against any who would leave the community, indicates that the prayer was composed before 1 John was written. The final form of John 17 was composed after the decisive break with the synagogue, but before the schism that occurred within the community. The Sitz im Leben of the prayer reflects the situation of the Johannine community after the split with the synagogue as the community defines its place in the “world”, but before 1 John (where the prominence of sin, that is, apostasy, is central). Thus the farewell discourses are presenting the struggle in the community’s reflection to come to terms with its position in the world.
Among all these substantiations for the literary obscurity of the present pericope, the most vexatious (or even the only) problem is created by the vague statement, \( \varepsilon \nu \gamma \epsilon \rho \varepsilon \sigma \theta \varepsilon( \alpha ; \gamma \omega \mu \epsilon \nu \varepsilon \nu \tau \tau \varepsilon / \theta \varepsilon \nu, \) in 14:31b (see Painter 1993:352). Other apparent obstacles are not so overwhelming (see Parsenios 2005:71-74). For instance, self-professed historical and narrative critics can both explain the peculiar comment of Jesus at John 16:5 without recourse to redaction theories. Jesus reprimands the disciples because none of them asks him where he is going, but he thereby seemingly contradicts verses 13:36 and 14:5 in which Simon Peter and Thomas both wonder where Jesus is going. Jesus has, therefore, been twice asked about his departure, and yet still claims that no one asks him where he is going. Many interpreters assume that the incongruence between the disciples’ questions and Jesus’ ignorance of those questions is a sign of editing, and very sloppy editing (Brown 1970:583; cf. Boyle 1975:210-222). But not all interpreters see so great a problem here, and this is true for more than just narrative critics. Although Schnackenburg (1982:126) sees editorial

---

249 Many scholars think that this is one of most glaring disjunctions (aporiae) in the Gospel (see Woll 1981:9-10).
seams in John 16, he does not believe that 16:5 contradicts 13:36 and 14:5.73. Jesus’ reproach about the disciples’ lack of curiosity is actually not about their lack of curiosity as such. Jesus’ larger concern is the disciples’ sorrow at his departure, their incomprehension and speechlessness. Immediately after his reprimand, Jesus adds, “But because I have said these things to you, sorrow has filled your hearts” (16:6). He then goes on to explain that it is better for him to leave. In noting that no one now asks where he is going, he admonishes the disciples for the terror that renders them speechless. They asked him earlier, but now their fear prevents them. It is the fear that Jesus rebukes.250 As with Schnackenburg, the real concern is 16:6, where Jesus recognises the disciples’ sorrow: “But because I have said these things to you, sorrow has filled your hearts.” The point of the above argument is that the conflict between 16:5 and 13:31/14:5 is not as insurmountable as 14:31 seemed to be. It can be explained by other than redactional arguments (Parsenios 2005:71-72).251

In the middle of the farewell discourses, the leaving of Jesus and his disciples is mentioned. The statement in this verse sounds like the closing words of the discourse (see Newman & Nida 1980:452). The consequences of Jesus’ departure seem to be repeated at 18:1 where the readers are told that εϖξη/λθεν συ.ν τοι/ϕ μαθηται/ϕ αυϖτου/ after the continual talking in two more chapters (John 15-16) and the prayer in another chapter (John 17). Thus John 15-17 are left “in mid-air” (Bultmann 1971:459). This breach, which may be ascribed to chronological and topographical differences, has led researchers to deny the unity of

250 Dodd (1953:412-413) similarly interprets 16:5 in relation to the earlier questions in 13:36 and 14:5. He writes, “... [T]he apparent contradiction does not perhaps go so deep as is sometimes supposed.” His reading relies on two steps. First, in 13:36 and 14:5 the disciples are concerned about where Jesus is going. Jesus tells them that they cannot know where he is going (13:36b) but they can know the path that will lead there (14:5). Jesus is himself the Way. Dodd writes, “What Jesus is saying is, you know the way, you do not need to know where it leads.” Second, in 14:28, Jesus finally informs the disciples that he is going to the Father. Now, the disciples know both the way (14:5) and the destination (14:28). Therefore, in 16:5, when Jesus mentions their lack of curiosity, he is not concerned about the fact that no one asks where he is going. He is more concerned about the fact that, even though they know where he is going (to the Father), they are still distressed. 16:5 then is not a reproach about a question not asked, but a recognition of the disciples’ misplaced distress.

251 Other factors further suggest the unity of 13-17. A certain logic, for instance, binds chapters 15-17. The chapters have a flow and coherence obvious even to historical critics like Brown and Schnackenburg. And Segovia has presented a thorough reading of the discourses that reconciles all of the competing tensions (see Segovia 1991:283-319). The point is to note that the one insurmountable
the farewell discourses (Segovia 1982:115). No matter how many ways one may overcome the theories that see disunity elsewhere in the discourses, 14:31 remains a notorious problem (Parsenios 2005:73). One cannot assume that the author penned John 14:31 with the purpose of continuing the discourse after a break (Du Rand 1990:83; De Smidt 1991:252). Then why would the author have left it in its present position? In the words of Carson (1991:477), what is the relation between the material before and after that break?

3.2.2.2. Some proposals to the resolution of this question

Although the farewell scene of Jesus appears to be an extended, single discourse stretching from 13:1-18:1, various seams have been discovered in the literary flow of these chapters. The discovery of these aporias has inspired claims that the unity of the discourses is only apparent and is the result of several stages of redaction. There have been notable deviations from the scholarly consensus about the editorial history of the text (Parsenios 2005:4). For some time the following harmonising suggestions have been put forward on this issue (see Segovia 1982:116; Painter 1981:528; Newman & Nida 1980:452; Schnackenburg 1975:100; Behler 1965:133; Boyle 1975:210-222).

1) The theory of disarrangement

Some scholars have attributed the disarrangement of the original sheets of the manuscript to mere accident. Bernard (1928a:xx; 1928b:557), for instance, proposed that chapters 15-16 originally preceded 13:31ff., which were followed by 14 and 17 (thus chapters 13-17 can be displaced as follows: 13:1-31a; 15; 16; 13:31a-38; 14; 17), while Bultmann (1971:459-461, 631) suggested the order as 13:1-30; 17; 13:31-35; 15; 16; 13:36-38; 14, thereby easing the perceived discordance between

---

252 Thus Segovia (1982:82) once said, “Nowadays hardly any exegete would vigorously maintain that John 13:31-18:1 constitutes a literary unity as it stands.” But in 1992 he showed a greater willingness to consider the literary unity of the Johannine pericope than some years ago (see Kerr 2002:270).

253 Various displacements of the text have been suggested, all of them with this in common, that 14:31 now comes much later in the discourse.
14:31 and 18:1. However, as Beasley-Murray (1987:224) points out, proposals of this kind have not met with favour, for they create fresh problems. For him, it is for example, a strange procedure to set chapter 17 before the discourses, since it seems so clearly to indicate their climax (see below). Carson (1991:477) also points out that these suggestions of displacement, like those put forward regarding John 5-7, introduce more problems than they resolve. According to him, John 14 is particularly full of questions from the disciples, but these questions become less intelligible if one is to suppose that the material of John 15-16 comes before them. Moreover, (he argues) it has often been noted that 14:16-17 reads like the introduction to the sayings about the Holy Spirit, the “Paraclete”. These two verses are somewhat incongruous if they succeed all the other passages in the discourse about the Paraclete (see Keener 2003:893-895).

2) The theory of multiple versions

Many modern scholars postulate that the author of the Gospel composed not one but several versions of Jesus’ farewell discourse (John 13-16) and later added chapter 17 that is new material and not another version of the discourse (see Brown 1970:581ff.; Schnackenburg 1982:48ff.; Lindars 1972:454ff.; Becker 1970:218; Keener 2003:893-895; Boyle 1975:210-222; Klauck 1996:236-250; Conway 2002:479-495; Lincoln 2002:3-26). This popular theory indicates that a single discourse has undergone revision and expansion not once but twice (or more), with the result that all

254 Many contemporary commentators (see Bultmann 1971:209-210; Schnackenburg 1980:5-9; Bernard 1928a:xvii-xix) argue that the sequential order of chapters 5 and 6 has been somewhat displaced: chapter 5 should be set between chapters 6 and 7. This inference depends on a geographical sequence that suggests that originally chapter 4 (which concludes when Jesus is at Galilee) is followed by chapter 6 (which begins with Jesus on the shore of the sea of Galilee) and is followed by chapter 5 (in which Jesus goes up to Jerusalem), and chapter 7. This suggestion, however, focuses too strongly on geography (Moloney 1998:193). In fact, no arrangement can solve all the geographical and chronological problems in this Gospel, and to rearrange on the basis of geography and chronology is to give undue emphasis to something that does not seem to have been of major importance to the author (Brown 1966:236; also see Barrett 1978:227). Rather, this projected rearrangement is attractive in some ways but not as compelling, for instance, as the development of the Mosaic theme (see Witherington III 1995:148-150; Ridderbos 1997:181-184; Lee 1994:129; Carson 1991:267).

255 Thus interpreters reconstruct their versions of the composition history of John 13-17, assign the various discourses to different hands, and explain each discourse on the basis of its assigned Sitz im Leben (Thomas 1991:64).
three versions found their way into this Gospel.\textsuperscript{256} Scholars who defend this theory present four lines of evidence and argument to support it (see Painter 1981:527): apparent dislocations or breaks; stylistic and word-thematic patterns of relationship and their bearing on the development of the discourses; historical reflections in the strata of the discourses; and correspondingly reformulated teaching material. Thus, apart from minor differences\textsuperscript{257}, they suppose that the author composed three versions of the farewell discourse (see Brown 1970:581-603).\textsuperscript{258} Apart from 13:1-30 where the setting of the discourses is mentioned and 17:1-26 where the prayer of Jesus is expressed, in chronological order\textsuperscript{259} these discourses are (see Painter 1993:417): (1) 13:31-14:31; (2) 15:1-16:4a; and (3) 16:4b-33.

Scholars who hold this theory suppose that the Gospel of John comes to us in the form it reached at the end of the first century C.E., from a community that consisted of people with a mixed background, including non-Jews and Jews (including Samaritans and Essenes) (see Charlesworth 2001:254). Furthermore, they believe that the Gospel of John was written in response to the expulsion of the Johannine church from the synagogue and the subsequent dialogue between these two religious parties. They propose further that different portions of the farewell discourses were written during different periods in the history of the community (see above).\textsuperscript{260} That is, according to them, there is an appearance of statements of counsel and encouragement to a community suffering abandonment and uncertainty soon after what might have been the division of the community from its Jewish home in the synagogue (cf. 9:22; 256 Culpepper (1998:198), for instance, argues that the farewell discourse of Jesus (13:1-16:33), apart from Jesus’ prayer (17:1-26), reflects at least two, and possibly three, stages of composition.

\textsuperscript{257} Some scholars suppose that, apart from the contextual statement (13:1-30) and the prayer (17:1-26), John 13:31-14:31 and 15:1-16:33 seem to be two different versions of one discourse, while others propose that there are three strata: 13:1-14:31 (some say 13:31-14:31 while others insist 14:1-31); 15:1-16:4a (some divide between 15:1-17 and 15:18-16:4a); and 16:4b-33.

\textsuperscript{258} Scholars who favour this theory argue that the hypothesis of various versions explains why the Paraclete/Spirit of Truth material is not consolidated in one block nor is it scattered at random. He regards this material as the core of the author’s teaching response to each crisis (see Painter 1981:528).

\textsuperscript{259} According to Kysar (1986:219-220), there is some evidence that the order of the three discourses in this Gospel reflects a chronological order of composition, for instance, the ever-increasing sense of a dualistic relationship with the “world” in each of the three.

\textsuperscript{260} For instance, Moloney (1998b:43-44) mentions that 13:1-17:26 is the end product of a process of compilation and that behind it stands: a story of events which took place on the evening before Jesus’ arrest, trial, and execution; several discourses on Jesus’ departure, the future mission, and the sufferings, joys, and obligations of his disciples; and a prayer of departure.
12:42; 16:2) (see Smith 1988:54; Conway 2002:479-495).

To put it more precisely, according to Painter (1993:425; cf. “Johannine recipient” in Chapter II), the first version of the farewell discourse reflects on the crisis presented by the departure of Jesus\(^{261}\), the second version reflects the bitter conflict with the synagogue\(^{262}\), and the third version was written after the complete separation of the Johannine community from the synagogue when the community again experienced with increased intensity the abandonment by Jews (cf. Ferreira 1998:62). According to this theory, the author (or members of the church) has interpreted and reinterpreted some traditional words of Jesus in an effort to address them to the critical situation of the community (Thomas 1991:64; cf. Ferreira 1998:33; Keener 2003:893-895).\(^{263}\) The author of the Gospel, according to this theory, might in this way provide the necessary teaching during times of crisis (De Smidt 1991:253).\(^{264}\) The farewell discourses thus constitute a unity, for them, but each of them emphasises its own nuances (cf. Du Rand 1990:92, 103; Smith 1988:54; Moloney 1987:40; Painter 1981:526, 1980:28; Keener 2003:893-895; Boyle 1975:210-222; Klauck 1996:236-250).\(^{265}\)

Although many Johannine scholars accept that John 13-17 is a final collection of a

---

\(^{261}\) Painter (1993:425) suggests that it dates no later than the ’50s.

\(^{262}\) Scholars who defend this redactional theory suppose that this section (15:1-16:4a) possibly reflects the period when the conflict between the Christian Jews and synagogue was at its fiercest. The build-up to this conflict was probably the sporadic confrontation between the Christians and the rulers of the temple and the synagogue. This probably gradually increased until those Jews who confessed Jesus as the Messiah were cast out of the synagogues (De Smidt 1991:254). This section is possibly one of the portions of Scripture in which the author of the Gospel endeavoured to re-interpret the traditional Davidic Christology to Jewish believers who had been cast out of the synagogue (Painter 1980:22). He provides the community with perspectives regarding their spiritual existence at a time when Jesus would be bodily absent from them and when they would encounter conflict. Unity (assimilation) is repeatedly emphasised. The departure of Jesus and the community’s consequent loneliness are placed in a framework of authoritative reassurance (Du Rand 1987:125).

\(^{263}\) Woll (1981:10), however, thinks that John 15-16 reflect the situation of the church after the departure of Jesus; John 14, on the other hand, still reflects the situation prior to the departure. So he concludes that 14:31 is a summons to the disciples to move from the one condition to the other.

\(^{264}\) Some scholars, such as Talbert (1992:211), interestingly insist that the repetition, with variation, of similar material in 13:31-14:31 and 15:1-16:33 conforms to the rules of Hellenistic rhetoric (see *Rhetorica ad Herrennium* 4.42.54).

\(^{265}\) According to this point of view there can be no breach between John 14:31 and John 15:1. Jesus’ statement οὐκέτι πολλα, λαλήσω μεθυ· in 14:30 just signals the conclusion of the complete discourse (that “much” is left to be said shows the original version of this discourse did not precede two more chapters of discussion).
number of different traditions that have been recalled, told and retold in various times and situations throughout the pre-literary stage of John’s Gospel, as Moloney (1998b:43) concedes, it obviously remains hypothetical. Indeed, why this should occur, contemporary readers could at best merely speculate. Carson (1991:478) is correct in arguing that there is no way of proving to the satisfaction of everyone the rightness or wrongness of any particular “solution”. The multiplication of sources and redactors ought to be treated with particular suspicion: most writers will frankly acknowledge that their roughest drafts are their first, and that successive polishing, by the original author or someone else, reduces the number of apparent aporias and enhances the smoothness. The only time this is not so is when the final editor is notoriously incompetent. Incompetent or not, there is precious little evidence in the text, solid evidence, that interpreters two thousand years removed from the events may seize on to distinguish believably amongst five layers of tradition and redaction (see Brown).

3) Some alternative suggestions

It would appear that John 13-14 forms a self-contained portrayal of the events in the upper room and Jesus’ farewell discourse, and that John 15-17 give a further representation of the Lord’s instruction on that occasion. The question arises how it came about that further farewell discourses are set side by side in the Gospel instead of being integrated as one discourse. Beasley-Murray (1987:224) proposes that the author so arranged previously existing material that was before him, or that a later editor added chapters 15-17 to an original farewell discourse consisting of chapters 13-14. He finds it difficult to believe that the author himself, who composed with

266 Scholars who defend this theory believe that these chapters constitute a narrative section and were not composed without design and reflection (see Kerr 2002:270-271). In this regard, the statement of Segovia (1991:288-289) is prominent when he argues that the canonical form of these chapters that the farewell speech leading up to the climactic prayer of John 17 can be regarded as a self-contained artistic and strategic whole which is highly unified and carefully developed from beginning to end. Indeed, the author of this Gospel did not compile these materials without any contemplation, but surely integrated his material in a very skilful way so that he looked forward to deliver his specific theological messages to the readers (Du Rand 1982:19; cf. De Smidt 1991:252). This is evident from the fact that the key words and themes that are occur in the subsequent chapters tie the whole section of the farewell together (see above). They convince us that the process of telling and retelling produced a Gospel that is thoroughly Johannine in all its parts.
meticulous care the earlier discourses in the Gospel, left the last discourses in their present order; it is altogether more comprehensible that a later editor left undisturbed the discourse that came from the author (in John 13-14), and then added the rest of his material as a self-contained whole. 267 Whereas some consider that the additions reflect a different theological viewpoint from that of the author, it seems to Beasley-Murray that one fundamental theological standpoint is maintained through all the chapters, and that the latter editor(s) utilised material from the same source as that available to the author.

Another alternative suggestion is presented by Carson (1991:479) who maintains that one can imagine at least two plausible scenarios: “First, it is possible that Jesus and his disciples did not in fact leave until after John 17. Anyone who has frequently invited home ten to twenty graduate students (as has the present writer) knows how common it is, after someone has announced it is time to go, for another half hour to slip past before anyone makes a serious move to leave. There is no concrete evidence against this view; the link between 14:31 and 18:1 might be taken to support it. The troubling question is why the Evangelist should have bothered to report 14:31b at all. Apart from appeal to the power of memory, it might be argued that the decision to record a delay in departure is the Evangelist’s attempt to depict yet again Jesus’ profound love for his disciples (cf. 13:1), his concern to drill into them certain stabilizing truths that would see them through the crisis ahead (cf. 14:29), his desire to place before them, through his final prayer (John 17), the cosmic sweep of the tragedy and triumph about to befall. Alternatively, one could imagine Jesus and his disciples actually leaving at this point, and continuing their conversation in the narrow streets of the old city. Some have suggested a pause at the temple; others have ventured that the presence of vines along the way, or of frescoes of vines at the temple or on the

267 Beasley-Murray (1987:223) proposes the structure of the farewell discourses as follows: (i) 13:1-30, the washing of the disciples’ feet and statement of the betrayal; (ii) 13:31-14:31, a discourse concerned primarily with the departure and return of Jesus, reaching its conclusion in 14:31 and finding its natural continuation in 18:1ff.; (iii) 15-16, a further discourse which subdivides into three; (a) 15:1-17, the allegory of the vine and its branches, (b) 15:18-16:4a, the world’s hatred for Jesus and his disciples, (c) 16:4b-33, the ministry of the Paraclete, and the joy of the disciples despite tribulation; (iv) chapter 17, the prayer of Jesus in light of his impending death.
gates of the wall\textsuperscript{268}, might have triggered ‘I am the true vine…..’. In this case, the departure in 18:1 is most likely departure from the city. Lest this approach to the interpretation of 14:31b sound like the desperate expedient of an unteachable conservative, it must be pointed out that Haenchen, who can scarcely be called a conservative, thinks 14:31b pictures the disciples leaving (even though his approach to 18:1 is rather independent), and does not see in 15:1ff. the beginning of a new farewell discourse or of a new version of the one farewell discourse.”

However, these suggestions are not satisfactory if one considers the contents of John 15-16 and even more the prayer of Jesus in John 17. Furthermore, these suggestions cannot explain the reason for numerous constellations of narrative constitutes and recurrent motifs in these chapters. There have been more alternative exegetical efforts to overcome this problematic passage. Particularly, recent narrative critics have made valuable contributions to the study of these discourses and have demonstrated that the chapters are far more unified than has been traditionally thought. However, because some aspects of the discourse defy efforts to see unity, the narrative critics themselves often stop short of marshalling a definitive defence of unity theories. They seem to concede that their pursuit of narrative unity is a contrived effort. Thus, even narrative critics are likely to refer to the redactional history of this or that verse, indicating that their own efforts do not come to grips with the actual editorial record of the text (see Parsenios 2005:4-5). Therefore, when scholars have attempted to push further to describe a distinct ideological or situational orientation that characterises 13:31-14:31 in contrast to the later material (according to them), opinion begins to diverge wildly.

3.2.2.3. The delayed exit and narrative unity

At the close of chapter 14, Jesus announces a departure that he does not complete until 18:1. The above discussion has shown that, although there are some different opinions, interpreters have typically viewed the delayed departure as a sign of sloppy editing. It has been indicated that, in the history of research, this delay is one of the

\textsuperscript{268} In particular, it is sometimes argued that the “I am the vine” metaphor was triggered by the golden vine overhanging the main entrance to the temple proper (Jos., Bel. v. 210; Ant. xv. 395; Mishnah
first features of the discourse suggesting to commentators that chapters 13-17 are not a united whole (see Ashton 1991:30). If the testament could have succeeded in explaining every literary move in the Fourth Gospel, then there would be no need to explore other literary genres. But there are several aspects of the Johannine farewell that the testament does not cover. Additional literary styles will fill the void that the testament exposes (see above). As Parsenios (2005:49-76) argues, if 14:31 is seen as a dramatic delayed exit, then one less obstacle separates 14 from 15-17. To put it precisely, “the material from ancient drama” will provide a means for resolving long-standing questions about the curious narrative seam that separates John 14 and 15.

Obviously, the crucial point at which John differs from the standard testament scene is its reliance on dynamic movement. The entire scene, stretching from 13:1 to 18:1, is centred around deeds, or rather, two dynamic exits: that of Jesus, announced at 14:31 and executed at 18:1, and that of Judas at 13:30. There are no such exits in the farewell scenes in the testaments. People who die in them typically wait for death to come to them on a deathbed (see, for instance, the death of Jacob at Gen. 49:33). The exits of Judas and Jesus add a dimension to the Johannine scene, therefore, that differs markedly from the typical testament. These exits are readily recognisable in ancient drama, however, where exits and entrances profoundly affect narrative development. Exits and entrances work in concert with various shifts in mode of expression (i.e., from spoken dialogue to lyric songs) to open and close the acts of a Greek tragedy. What the investigator offers here is the adoption of the argument of Parsenios (2005:14-16; 49-76).

The exit of Judas

The exit of Judas in John 13:30 provides a suggestive example of the likely gains to be had from comparing exits in John to ancient dramatic techniques. For Judas does not leave the supper of his own accord. Jesus orders him to exit, very much like masters and superiors in ancient drama order servants or messengers offstage to

Middoth 3:8; Tacitus, Histories V. v).
perform any number of errands. Such departures carry the labels “involuntary” and “forced” exits. These exits can be critical for the proper development of the plot, serving at least two functions. First, such an exit sends someone offstage to prepare for future action. If some deed needs to be accomplished in order for the tension of the play to properly resolve itself, a master will send an underling to carry out the necessary activities. Second, these involuntary exits remove from the stage a character whose presence would disrupt the natural flow of the scene. The departure of Judas at 13:30 is ordered by Jesus at 13:27 and serves both of the dramatic functions outlined above.\(^{269}\) In the first place, Judas’ departure sets in motion the events culminating in Jesus’ crucifixion. When Judas exits, the reader knows to expect trouble soon. Judas’ departure also fulfils the other common function of mid-scene exits. The exit keeps Judas from interrupting the present conversation between Jesus and his disciples. Immediately after Judas’ departure in 13:30, the narrator transitions with the phrase, “therefore, when he left, Jesus said, …. (13:31)”. Only after Judas departs can Jesus begin his speech to the disciples. Up to this point, Jesus has said nothing about his departure or his continuing presence with the disciples. Rather, from 13:18 until Judas’ departure in 13:30, the topic of conversation is Judas’ betrayal. Jesus’ testament to his disciples cannot proceed until Judas has left. Jesus’ expressions of love and intimacy and insight are not fit for the betrayer. Thus, Judas’ exit is a lynch pin in the scene. It removes from the stage a character whose continuing presence would interfere with Jesus’ intimacy with his disciples. And, in addition, it pushes the plot along, since this character has gone to prepare for future action, the arrest of Jesus. By performing these two functions, the exit draws a sharp line between the scene of the dinner (13:1-29) and the discourses that follow the dinner until 18:1 (Parsenios 2005:14-16).

The exit of Jesus

Even more than Judas’ exit, Jesus’ exit operates according to dramatic principles.\(^{270}\) It

\(^{269}\) The significance of Judas’ exit in 13:31 for Jesus’ comments in vv. 31b-32 is often ignored, as commentators view v. 31a as a redactional link.

\(^{270}\) The comparison of Jesus’ exit at 14:31/15:1 to ancient dramatic exits is an argument for seeing greater narrative unity in the farewell discourses. Furthermore, highlighting Jesus’ exit movement also
has already been noticed that a critical feature distinguishing John’s last supper discourses from other testaments is the dramatic action of the scene, specifically the fact that Judas and Jesus depart from the last supper like characters exiting the stage. Since Jesus ostensibly exits to his death, it is important to note that in ancient drama, the departure to death is a regular event with recurring characteristics. It could be argued that John’s last supper discourses can be profitably compared to the dramatic exit to death. This is but a preliminary step in the larger movement, however. Jesus’ exit to death is compared to tragic exits in general in order to argue further that Jesus’ departure resembles a particular type of tragic exit, the delayed exit. Ancient dramatic figures in all eras and in both tragedy and in comedy, commonly delay announced exits. This is particularly common among characters departing to delay. Viewing Jesus’ hesitation to depart at 14:31 as a dramatic delayed exit will provide new insight into critical issues typically associated with the text. Like the gradual counting down of the seven defenders that culminates in the last exit of Eteocles (see Aeschylus’ *Seven against Thebes*), Jesus marches to his death in a final exit that has been prepared for throughout the Gospel, slowly at first, but then with increasing intensity. The bloody plans of Jesus’ opponents are brought into clearer focus as the Gospel of John develops. A key gauge of the escalation is the dramatic progression of the theme of Jesus’ hour. When Jesus says at John 2:4 “my hour has not yet come”, the phrase means something more than “it [is] too early for me to begin my work.” The phrase “my hour” is a coded statement of the divine plan for Jesus. The term appears several times in the following chapters, each one building a sense of urgency as the reader understands that the hour is coming closer. The decisive “now” arrives at 13:1, where, just before the feast of Passover, the narrator informs the reader that Jesus knew clearly “that his hour had come to be taken from this world to the Father…..” The gradual association of his death with his hour reaches a high point in the Last Supper. The exit of Jesus, then, marks the culmination of carefully wrought themes, signalling the point at which related strands are finally united to mark a definitive narrative moment that leads to his death. A considerable theological point is also scored in Jesus’ exit from the Last Supper. Parallel to the increasing attention to Jesus’ eventual

draws to the fore the Gospel’s concern for Jesus’ presence-in-absence. The exit emphasises his departure, and therefore, his absence. Other literary styles address the question of his continuing
exit to death is the growing emphasis on Jesus’ identity as the descending and ascending redeemer. This descent/ascent scheme emphasises that Jesus is beyond the understanding of people of “this world”. The arrival of the Last Supper marks the climactic union of several themes and threads that push the narrative forward, clarifying for certain that when Jesus exits from the supper, he is exiting to his death/exaltation. Jesus takes this exit to death in the same way that Eteocles and Cassandra exit to death. Thus Jesus’ exit is strikingly similar to a dramatic exit in ancient tragedy. Like tragic characters whose exits mark critical developments in a dramatic plot, Jesus’ exit from the Last Supper marks a critical narrative shift. But to notice this is only a start. Drawing parallels to the exit to death still leaves unresolved the most troubling narrative feature of the discourses, the peculiar exit of Jesus at 14:31. In almost every era, in both tragedy and comedy, in both Greece and Rome, ancient dramatists employed a device that modern scholars call the “delayed exit”. A delayed exit takes place when an announced or actual exit movement is halted either by outside intervention or by second thoughts on the part of the character himself. A striking example of such a delay occurs in Aeschylus’ *Agamemnon*, when Cassandra makes her final departure from the stage to her death at the hands of Clytemnestra. Sophocles’ *Antigone* is another example that may explain Jesus’ delayed exit at 14:31. Antigone delivers a speech of farewell before her death. The shape of Jesus’ exit from the Last Supper roughly parallels the delay of the exit to death of dramatic characters. That is, the puzzling delay of Jesus at 14:31 appears to mimic tragic models. The delay of the exits of Antigone, Cassandra and others, as well as the contextual confusion surrounding their delays, serves to focus attention on the speakers, lifting them beyond their immediate surroundings. Their exits are thus made more significant, and the speeches that accompany the exits receive greater attention and total focus. Jesus’ exit, and the discourses that accompany it, share the same quality. Jesus’ exit is a critical point in the Gospel for a host of reasons, and so the progress of the narrative pauses immediately prior to the exit in order to reflect on and underscore the exit’s significance. The dramatic action of Jesus, which is nothing like what one sees in the testament form, is a critical theological concern in the Fourth Gospel. Because Jesus is the ascending and descending redeemer whose purpose culminates presence (see above).
in a return to the Father, and because Jesus is the one who gives his life for his friends, culminating in his death on the cross, Jesus’ exit from the farewell discourses is the completion of his life and work. Greek tragedy provides a ready literary form to emphasise and dramatise Jesus’ departure and return to the Father (Parsenios 2005:49-76).

In conclusion, in defence of the discourse’s literary coherence, following Parsenios, the investigator views the delay instead as a distinct feature of the Gospel’s reliance on dramatic modes of narration, and a signal of literary unity, not disunity. When read against the testament form only, John 14:31 appears to upset the ordered flow of Jesus’ departure and to justify redaction theories. When read in the light of additional literary possibilities, however, such as the dramatic exit to death, the narrative coherence of the scene is more obvious.\(^\text{271}\) To argue this is, as Parsenios (2005:73) insists, not to deny that the Gospel was unaffected by the historical circumstances that surrounds its production. But redaction theories insist that a previously pristine text was later interrupted, even if by the latter work of the original composer(s). However one understands the composer(s) of the Gospel, the final editing of the discourses need not be seen as the work of a later hand, but as part of the initial production of the Gospel (see Dodd 1953:407; Nicholson 1983:13ff.). The exit movement of Jesus further evokes tragic exits when he pauses his departure at 14:31. He engages in a series of discourses that reflect on the nature of his coming exit. Recognising that Jesus’ delay is similar in many ways to the delay of tragic figures helps to come to grips with the methodological divide that now separates Johannine scholars. Narrative critics seek to trace the synchronic flow of the narrative’s plot, but they struggle to interpret the delay at 14:31 without recourse to diachronic and redaction theories. Historians, therefore, reject synchronic literary arguments because such readings assume the unity of the text without proving it or arguing it. The delayed exit provides a means to argue for, not merely assume, the unity of the text. Therefore, the delay of the exit need not be seen as a sloppy set of footprints left by people who did not know how to cover their tracks. It is a legitimate literary move.

\(^\text{271}\) To compare the exit of Jesus in John 14 to exits in ancient drama is not to say that the Gospel of John is in fact a drama, but only that it employs a dramatic device (Parsenios 2005:18).
3.2.3. The internal organisation of John 13:1-17:26

It has already been indicated that the existence of the text in its final form suggests that it was regarded by author and readers alike as comprehensible and interpretable (see “method” in Chapter I). In other words, the text as it stands must have made sense to some group at a particular point in history. Furthermore, in the previous sections it has been argued that the Johannine farewell discourses are both more, and less, unified than traditional scholarship has seen them. They are more unified, in that the troubling departure of Jesus at 14:31 can actually support a synchronic interpretation. This huge obstacle in the middle of the discourses has been smoothed over by recourse to ancient tragedy (Parsenios 2005:151). Indeed, whatever its origins, the discourse’s final form, presumably the form in which it first appeared in the finished Gospel, is the form the final author presented as a finished product, and is available to the present analysis without speculation (Keener 2003:894-895; cf. Boyle 1975:210-222). In keeping with this trend of understanding the finished Gospel as a whole, it is reasonable to speak of “discourse” in the singular. One is not fully persuaded by repetition or “seams” that two discourses stand behind the present one (13:31-14:31), but even if they do, they provide one unified discourse in the context of the finished Gospel (Boyle 1975:210-211, 221-222; Keener 2003:895). This perspective of the text makes evident the legitimacy of the structural considerations of the passage that will be undertaken in this section (cf. Segovia 1991:288-289). The effort here is to discover the narrative strategies of the author to place the pericope (John 13:31-14:31) within the overall structure of the Johannine farewell discourses (John 13:1-17:26).

The internal organisation of John 13:1-17:26 can be arranged in four sub-sections,

---

272 What emerges from this pericope is that Jesus has withdrawn from the public and he talks to his disciples (cf. John 12). To put it precisely, Jesus has finished his public ministry of preaching and healing, and he turns to his own disciples, to complete their instruction in the little time that remains (Barnhart 1993:120). Here begins the second great division of John’s narrative, often called “the Book of Glory” (see “macro structure” in Chapter II).
owing to its literary style, syntax and content, as follows:\footnote{273}

The context of the farewell discourses (13:1-30)

The first farewell discourse (13:31-14:31)

The second farewell discourse (15:1-16:33)

The prayer of Jesus (17:1-26)

The following is an explanation of this proposal:

3.2.3.1. 13:1-30: The context of the farewell discourses

The first sub-section of John 13:1-17:26 starts from 13:1\footnote{274} and continues until 13:30, although some scholars insist that the demarcation should be made at 13:38\footnote{275}. The

\footnote{273} This suggestion is accepted by many scholars. For instance, Talbert (1992:202-203) insists that the materials in 13:31-17:26 (apart from 13:1-30) fall into the following three thought units: 13:31-14:31 is the first (as signalled by 14:31b); 15:1-16:33 is the second (which itself consists of three virtually self-contained components: 15:1-17; 15:18-16:15; and 16:16-33); and 17:1-26 is the third (as signalled by 17:1a). Thomas (1991:68-70) also proposes the following division: Part 1: Preparation through cleansing and predication of betrayal (13:1-30); Part 2: The first farewell discourse (13:31-14:31); Part 3: The second farewell discourse (15:1-16:33) - Part 3a: The true vine (15:1-17), Part 3b: The world’s hatred (15:18-16:4a), Part 3c: The work of the Spirit (16:4b-33); Part 4: Preparation through Jesus’ prayer (17:1-26).

\footnote{274} The beginning of chapter 13 marks a transition from the previous book of signs by most Johannine scholars (see “macro structure” in Chapter II). Schnackenburg (1982:1) notes, “After closing Jesus’ revelation to the world (12:36b) and emphasising this with a final reflection on unbelief (12:37-43), the evangelist opens a new part of the Gospel in chapter 13. In the form in which we have the Gospel today, this part begins with quite lengthy discourses by Jesus in the circle of his followers, culminating in the prayer of the departing redeemer (chapter 17).” Ridderbos (1997:451) also says, “13:1 forms a clear transition to a new section of the Gospel. Chapters 11 and 12 increasingly lead into the passion narrative, especially from 12:33 on, and here the narrative reaches the meal on the evening prior to the day of Jesus’ death. The focus is, at last, on Jesus’ revelation to his disciples, in regard to both what is about to happen (chapter 13) and the time following his departure (chapters 14-17). Thus, as in the Synoptics, the meal referred to in 13:2 is the opening act of the story Jesus’ death, but unlike the Synoptics, John has five chapters of Jesus’ farewell conversation with his disciples during the meal. These conversations are, in chapter 13, occasioned first by the footwashing and then by the identification and dismissal of the betrayer. But they continue and come to focus (chapters 14-17) on Jesus’ departure and the time thereafter. These chapters, as Jesus’ testament to his disciples, form a clearly distinct whole in the Gospel, the composition of which again calls for further discussion. Only in 18:1 does the narrative of Jesus’ death, begun in 13:1, continue.”

\footnote{275} For instance, Moloney (1998:371) finds the fact that the double “amen” formula (13, 16, 20, 21, 38) occurs more in John 13 than in any other chapter of the Gospel. He shows how the strategic positioning of the double “amen” functions as a structural marker, indicating the beginning and ending of 13:1-38. He says that there are three sections to the narrative of vv. 1-38: vv. 1-17, which close with a double amen in vv. 16-17; vv. 18-20 (the centrepiece of the chapter), which close with a double amen in v. 20; and vv. 21-38, which open with the double amen formula in v. 21 and close with the same expression in v. 38 (see Stibbe 1993:145). For more dissenting voices against the present view, see Barrett}
primary reason for the demarcation of these thirty verses as a separate unit is to be found in the fact that this section has a thematic coherence, which is “the constant love of Jesus for the disciples in their failure.” It is generally agreed that this section is divided into the following two parts: 13:1-20; and 13:21-30 (cf. Orchard 1998:160-162; Segovia 1991:62; Thomas 1991:78; Keener 2003:899). The first part (13:1-20) implies the love of Jesus for his disciples, while the second part (13:21-30) shows the failure of Jesus’ disciples. First of all, the first part (13:1-20) clearly illustrates the theme of “the love of Jesus for his disciples” (see Barnhart 1993:120-128; Orchard 1998:160; Segovia 1991:62; Grossouw 1966:124-131). This assumption is evident from the mention of the first verse where the reader is told that ἡμεῖς θαυμάσαμεν αὐτοῦ. This is a powerful expression regarding the Son’s love for his disciples (Van der Watt 2000:309). His disciples are called his own (τούς Ἰδίους), which refers to close group relations (Van Tilborg 1993:160). John includes the mention of εἰσίν τε λόγον (see Thomas 1991:82; Barnhart 1993:121). Thus as Miller (1976:49; cf. Van der Watt 2000:309) maintains, the language employed in 13:1 emphasises the intimate nature of the relationship between Jesus and those who belong to him. This love of Jesus is most vividly expressed in the subsequent action of Jesus in washing his disciples’ feet (see Van Tilborg 1993:130-132). Indeed, the

---

276 The author describes the occasions perhaps chronologically.
277 The aorist tense could be understood as culminative or constative.
278 The term “ἀγαπάω” is used (in John) to denote the love that Jesus has for the disciples (13:1, 34; 14:21; 15:9, 12; cf. 11:5), the love of the disciples for one another (13:34; 15:12, 17), and especially the love Jesus has for the Father (14:31). The concentration of ἀγαπάω terminology in the farewell materials serves to define the intimate dynamics of these chapters. The word τούς Ἰδίους reminds the reader of the discourse on the Good Shepherd in chapter 10. It refers to those who belong to him, who hear his voice and for whom he cares (10:3, 4, 12, 27) (Schnackenburg 1982:16).
279 Thomas (1991:82) indicates that it is possible to take εἰσίν τε λόγον temporally as “to the end (of his life)” or quantitatively as “fully”, “wholly”, or “completely”. However, more than likely John here intends εἰσίν τε λόγον to have a double meaning, “for Jesus loved his own until the end of his life and he loved them completely”, as his death indicates. Ford (1997:139), in another perspective, points out that εἰσίν τε λόγον forms an inclusio with τετελεσμένος (it is consummated or perfected) in John 19:30.
280 Du Rand (1990:368) states that, although the reader does not find the so-called semeion (Johannine signs) technically spoken in chapters 13-20 (cf. Brown 1966:524-532), the foot washing is narrated as a symbolic act to reveal the identity of Jesus - not a sign in the “technical” Johannine sense, but narratologically interpreted in the rest of chapter 13 as a symbolic sign of revelation. Ford (1997:138) also underscores that the foot washing is definitely a semeion (revelatory sign) and, like the other semeia, it manifests Jesus’ glory (cf. John 2:11).
The major premise of this section is to illustrate the love and gracious gestures of Jesus towards his followers, although the symbolism of the foot washing has been variously interpreted (Koester 2003:131; cf. Orchard 1998:161; Coloe 2004:400-415). To put it differently, this foot washing episode dramatises the inexpressible depth of the love of Jesus for “his own”, revealed in his death for them on the cross (cf. Koester 2003:130-134; Barnhart 1993:121-122; Hultgren 1982:539-546). The implication of the foot washing occasion is also indicated by Jesus himself from the perspective of the ethics of the disciple (13:8; 13:12-17). After all, in 13:1-20, the deep-seated love primarily refers to Jesus’ supreme act on the cross, which is foreshadowed in the foot washing (see Van Tilborg 1993:130-132; Coloe 2004:400-415). The second part (13:21-30), then, contains Jesus’ testimony that focuses on one of the disciples at the table who will betray him (see Moloney 1998:383; see Koester 2003:133; Barnhart 1993:126; Segovia 1991:62). Jesus predicts that one of his disciples is going to betray him (13:21). This prediction leads to a dialogue with the Beloved Disciple that matches his earlier conversation with Simon Peter in 13:6-11 (13:22-26a). Jesus then takes the initiative and gives Judas Iscariot the morsel and tells him to ποιεῖ/φι ποιησον ταχίον (13:26b-27). No sooner has he received the morsel and tells him...

281 For discussion of the various interpretations of foot washing see the work of Thomas (1991). Prominent theories have been: purification of believers, baptism for remission of sin, the Eucharist, an act of humiliation that the disciples should imitate, Jesus’ submission to death, his offer to the disciples of a share in his own “personality”, and his destiny and an act of eschatological hospitality (see 11-17 for details).

282 Beasley-Murray (1987:233) in this regard underscores: “The menial nature of footwashing in Jewish eyes is seen in its inclusion among works which Jewish slaves should not be required to do (Mekh Exod. 21.2.82am based on Lev. 25:39); the task was reserved for Gentile slaves and for wives and children. The action of Jesus in removing his outer garment and tying a towel around him underscores the humiliation of his action.” Nissen (1999a:201) also remarks that the character of love is specified in the Gospel of John not by an extended body of teaching, as in Matthew’s Sermon on the Mount, but by a single enacted parable: Jesus’ washing of the disciples’ feet.

283 Jesus’ own implication on his foot-washing occasion (vv. 12-17) is followed by Jesus’ brief discourse (vv. 18-20).

284 Thomas (1991:78), who regards the foot washing story to extend to v. 20, finds that John 13:1-20 includes a narrative introduction (vv. 1-5), a dialogue (vv. 6-11), and a discourse (vv. 12-20). According to him, this basic structure is found in a number of other places in this Gospel (e.g., 3:1-21, 22-26; 4:1-26; 5:1-47; 6). Mlakuzhyil (1987:117) also observes that many of the episodes in the Gospel of John have the dramatic sequence of action-dialogue-discourse, that is, often an episode begins with an action of Jesus that sparks off a dialogue between him and another character, which in turn, ends in a discourse by Jesus. He insists that this foot-washing episode may be said to follow the pattern of narrative-dialogue-discourse.

285 For Judas cf. 6:71; 12:4; and 13:2 above.

286 As Kysar (1986:214) remarks, John intends to let the readers see that Jesus has full knowledge of what is to happen but here extends a gesture of love and acceptance to the betrayer.
piece of bread from Jesus’ own hand than he immediately goes out
1993:120-127). As Kysar (1986:213) mentions, ironically, the moment in which
Jesus expresses his act of love is the occasion of the betrayer’s resolution to fulfil his
plans (expressed in the mythological symbol of Satan invading Judas’ will, cf.
13:27). The immediate context of the occasion is thus the failure of the
disciples. In conclusion, the prediction of Jesus of Judas’ betrayal in the second
section shows the example of failure regarding discipleship while the foot washing
occasion is an example of successful discipleship (see Koester 2003:133-134;
this regard is plausible: “John 13 is comprised of two pairs of narratives, each of
which gives expression to divine love, on the one hand, and human failure, on the
other. By these pairs John draws our attention to the last words Jesus shares with his
disciples before his crucifixion (14-17).”

Furthermore, as has been noted above, the Johannine farewell discourses are not
merely one more example of the biblical testament. They also resonate with Greek
tragedy, ancient consolation literature and the literary symposium. John differs from
the standard testament scene in its reliance on dynamic movement. The entire scene,
stretching from 13:1 to 18:1 is centred around deeds, or rather, two dynamic exits:
that of Jesus, announced at 14:31 and executed at 18:1, and that of Judas at 13:30.
There are no such exits in the farewell scenes in the testaments. People who die in
them typically wait for death to come to them on a deathbed (see, for instance, the
death of Jacob at Gen. 49:33). The exits of Judas and Jesus add a dimension to the
Johannine scene, therefore, that differs markedly from the typical testament. These

---
287 The betrayal of Judas is already indicated in 13:2, in the role which both the Devil and Judas play in
the betrayal (cf. Thomas 1991:84).
288 This is the only time John uses the term Satan. “Devil” is more common (cf. 6:70; 8:44; and 13:2)
(see Kysar 1986:214).
289 Segovia (1991:4) also points out that the forthcoming betrayal is alluded to twice in the course of
the washing (13:10, with an explanation by the narrator in 13:11,18) - by one of their own, with a
subsequent identification of Judas Iscariot as the betrayer and an immediate request for him to
undertake his mission.
290 13:31-38 also emphasises both the love of Jesus in the statement on his command to disciples to
love each other as Jesus has loved them and the failure of the discipleship when the betrayal of Peter is
predicted (see Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:217).
exits are readily recognisable in ancient drama, however, where exits and entrances profoundly affect narrative development. Exits and entrances work in concert with various shifts in mode of expression (i.e., from spoken dialogue to lyric songs) to open and close the acts of a Greek tragedy. The farewell discourses only begin when Judas departs: “Therefore, when he left, Jesus said…..” Because scholars have assumed that the phrase “when he left” is a redactional gloss, they have not adequately recognised the connection between Judas’ departure and Jesus’ speech. When one compares this exit to the exits of servants in Greek and Roman drama, the relevance of the exit is clear. Judas is ordered offstage in order to prepare for future action, in this case the betrayal of Jesus. And his departure removes from the scene a character whose continuing presence would prevent an important conversation among other characters, in this case Jesus’ discourses with his disciples (Parsenios 2005:131). This consideration suffices as a legitimation for looking upon John 13:1-30 as a unit. This section may be designated as “the context of the farewell discourses” because it provides the contextual elements, such as a setting (time and circumstance) and various themes (centring on Jesus’ love), for everything that is to follow (see Segovia 1991:64; Beasley-Murray 1987:244-245; Segovia 1991:62-64).

3.2.3.2. 13:31-14:31: The first farewell discourse

The second sub-section of John 13:1-17:26 naturally begins at 13:31 where the reader is told of the going out of Judas from the supper room (ἐπεκεῖνος ἐξῆλθεν) (see above). The section ends at 14:31 where the delay of the exit of Jesus is mentioned (ἐγείρεσθε ἀγωμεν εντευθεν), and which is the mark of the end of the discourse for most scholars (cf. Painter 1993:417). The section thus clearly contains the beginning account and the concluding statement, and accordingly the present demarcation seems to be proper. Furthermore, the present study has argued that the Johannine farewell discourses do not follow the model of the testament alone but are a composite of various literary

---

291 The statement in 14:31b is generally taken to be the break between chapter 14 and the following chapters. See Culpepper (1998:209); Ridderbos (1997:487); Du Rand (1992:31); Newman and Nida (1980:476).
forms, not one but many. In particular, as has been indicated above, the exit of Judas in John 13:30 provides a suggestive example of the likely gains to be had from comparing exits in John to ancient dramatic technique. In the first place, Judas’ departure sets in motion the events culminating in Jesus’ crucifixion. When Judas exits, the reader knows to expect trouble. Judas’ departure also fulfils the other common function of mid-scene exits. The exit keeps Judas from interrupting the present conversation between Jesus and his disciples. Immediately after Judas’ departure in 13:30, the narrator transitions with the phrase, “therefore, when he left, Jesus said, …” (13:31). Only after Judas departs can Jesus begin his speech to the disciples. Up to this point, Jesus has said nothing about his departure or his continuing presence with the disciples. Rather, from 13:18 until Judas’ departure in 13:30, the topic of conversation is Judas’ betrayal. Jesus’ testament to his disciples cannot proceed until Judas has left. Jesus’ expressions of love and intimacy and insight are not fit for the betrayer. Thus, Judas’ exit is a lynch pin in the scene. It removes from the stage a character whose continuing presence would interfere with Jesus’ intimacy with his disciples. And, in addition, it pushes the plot along, since this character has gone to prepare for future action, the arrest of Jesus. By performing these two functions, the exit draws a sharp line between the scene of the dinner (13:1-29) and the discourses that follow the dinner until 18:1 (Parsenios 2005:14-16).

Even more than Judas’ exit, Jesus’ delayed exit operates according to dramatic principles. Drawing parallels to the exit to death still leaves unresolved the most troubling narrative feature of the discourses, the peculiar exit of Jesus at 14:31. In almost every era, in both tragedy and comedy, in both Greece and Rome, ancient dramatists employed a device that modern scholars call the “delayed exit.” A delayed exit takes place when an announced or actual exit movement is halted either by outside intervention or by second thoughts on the part of the character himself. Thus, the puzzling delay of Jesus at 14:31 appears to mimic tragic models. The delay of the exits of Antigone, Cassandra and others, as well as the contextual confusion surrounding their delays, serves to focus attention on the speakers, lifting them beyond their immediate surroundings. Their exits are thus made more significant, and the speeches that accompany the exits receive greater attention and total focus. Jesus’
exit, and the discourses that accompany it, share the same quality. Jesus’ exit is a critical point in the Gospel for a host of reasons, and so the progress of the narrative pauses immediately prior to the exit, in order to reflect on and underscore the exit’s significance. Therefore the dramatic action of Jesus, which is nothing like what one sees in the testament form, is a critical theological concern in the Fourth Gospel. Because Jesus is the ascending and descending redeemer, whose purpose culminates in a return to the Father, and because Jesus is the one who gives his life for his friends, culminating in his death on the cross, Jesus’ exit from the farewell discourses is the completion of his life and work. Greek tragedy provides a ready literary form to emphasise and dramatise Jesus’ departure and return to the Father (Parsenios 2005:49-76).

The theme of Jesus’ departure is clearly announced in John 13; what follows in the following discourse (after John 14) is concerned with answering the problems raised by this departure – not the problems of what will happen to Jesus (his glorification is only mentioned), but the problems of what will happen to the disciples he leaves behind (Brown 1970:622; cf. Barnhart 1993:128; Orchard 1998:181ff.; Kerr 2002:274). Having himself been troubled by death in 11:33, Jesus encourages the disciples who obscurely realise their Lord’s impending death not to be troubled (14:1, 27). Jesus thus reassures the disciples throughout the discourse that he will not be separated from them and furthermore that he is going away to prepare for them the universal and permanent possibility of an abiding communion with his Father (Brown 1970:623; cf. Van der Watt 2000:347; Culpepper 1998:209; Moloney 1998:394; Van Tilborg 1993:132-137). Therefore the departure of Jesus is to the disciples’ advantage and the disciples are called to believe in the word of Jesus (14:2b; cf. 2:1-4:54). However, the multiplicity of the generic associations of the discourses sheds new light on the nature of Jesus’ departure as well as his continuing presence in spite of that departure. No longer designed to evoke only the themes of departure and absence, the testament of Jesus in John emphasises instead Jesus’ abiding presence.

292 Jesus’ speech is uttered during the evening before his departure and return to the Father (cf. 13:1). As such, the tone of his words is valedictory, the atmosphere solemn (Stibbe 1993:151).
293 This is the main theme of the present study, which will remain as the most important perspective throughout.
While the material from Greek tragedy will only further emphasise the theme of departure, the material from classical consolation literature and the literary symposium tradition will accentuate the theme of continuing presence. John has thereby transcended the usual expectations of the testament. The pericope should thus be read from the perspective of how John emphasises the ongoing presence of Jesus among his followers after his departure from the world. This section may be called “the first (or primary) farewell discourse” because there are further farewell discourses in the following chapters.

3.2.3.3. 15:1-16:4a: The second farewell discourse

Most scholars agree that the third sub-section of John 13:1-17:26 begins in 15:1. Indeed, as has been indicated above, there are several aspects of the Johannine farewell that the testament does not cover. Additional literary styles will fill the gaps that the testament exposes (Parsenios 2005:9). This accounts for the exit of Jesus in 14:31. If 14:31 is seen as a dramatic delayed exit, then one less obstacle separates 14 from 15-17 (Parsenios 2005:49-76). This evidently supports the structural demarcation between 13:31-14:31 and 15:1 onwards.²⁹⁴ However, there is little agreement among scholars as to the extent of this literary unit (see Mlakuzhyil 1987:223-226).²⁹⁵ Some scholars (see Brown 1970:709; Schnackenburg 1982:91-92; Kysar 1986:219) think that this second discourse ends at 16:4a and from 16:4b accordingly there is what might be the third discourse, while others are of the opinion

²⁹⁴ Viewing Jesus’ hesitation to depart at 14:31 as a dramatic delayed exit will provide new insight into critical issues typically associated with the text. Like the gradual counting down of the seven defenders that culminates in the last exit of Eteocles (see Aeschylus’ Seven against Thebes), Jesus marches to his death in a final exit that has been prepared for throughout the Gospel, slowly at first, but then with increasing intensity. The dramatic action of Jesus at 14:31, which is nothing like what one sees in the testament form, is a critical theological concern in the Fourth Gospel. Because Jesus is the ascending and descending redeemer, whose purpose culminates in a return to the Father, and because Jesus is the one who gives his life for his friends, culminating in his death on the cross, his exit from the farewell discourses is the completion of his life and work. Greek tragedy provides a ready literary form to emphasise and dramatise his departure and return to the Father (see above).

²⁹⁵ Mlakuzhyil (1987:221-228) singularly admits that 15:1-17 is a literary unit. That 15:1-17 is to be regarded as a literary unit is seen from the break between 15:17 and 15:18: “Not only is there a change of subject matter at 15:18 but there are also inclusions and parallelisms which indicate the limits of 15:1-17 and 15:18-16:4d. Again, not only the world’s hatred of the disciples mentioned at the beginning of 15:18-16:4d corresponds to the Jews’ persecution of the disciples foretold at the end
that John 15-16 form a single major division and thus the second farewell discourse extends to the last verse of John 16 (see Lindars 1972:486). Scholars who defend the first option argue that within the single verse at 16:4 there seems to be a clear change of thought. Jesus mentions that ταυ/τα λελα,ληκα υ⎯μι/ν… in the first half of 16:4 and this is immediately followed by the statement that ταυ/τα δε. υ⎯μι/ν εϖξ αϖρχη/ϕ ουϖκ ει=πον in the rest of the same verse. 16:4a repeats the sense of 16:1 and restates the words ταυ/τα λελα,ληκα υ⎯μι/ν (cf. 15:11). For them, the ταυ/τα of 16:4a looks back syntactically to the theme of persecution in 15:1-16:3 and thus closes 15:1-16:4a while the ταυ/τα of 16:4b looks forward to the theme of departure and thus opens 16:4b-33.

Determining the precise content of the ταυ/τα in this verse has generated some controversy. Do “these things” refer solely to the predictions about persecution in the preceding verses, or solely to the mention of Jesus’ departure in the following verse (16:5)? Poised directly between the two sections, ταυ/τα could point either forward or backward, to one theme or the other. This suggests that “these things” refer not to one or the other, but to both (Parsenios 2005:142-143). Going further, and perhaps more correctly, Moloney (1998:444) and Segovia (1991:225) view “these things” as a reference to the entire set of discourses. Thus, when Jesus says, “I would have said (16:2-3) but also 15:20ab (μνημονευ,ετε του/ λο,γου ου− εϖγω. ει=πον υ⎯μι/ν) corresponds to 16:4cd (μνημονευ,ητε αυϖτω/ν ο[τι εϖγω. ει=πον υ⎯μι/ν).”

296 The severity of the world’s hatred is emphasised by the overwhelming use of negative vocabulary. In this short section the readers have the following occurrences (Orchard 1998:183): μισε,ω (seven times); διω,κω (twice); αϖποσυνα,γωγοϕ (once); αϖποκτει,νω (once).

297 The term ταυ/τα appears in 16:1, 4a, where Jesus discusses persecution, but also appears later in 16:6, where Jesus discusses his impending departure: “But because I have said these things (ταυ/τα) to you, sorrow has filled your hearts. Nevertheless, I tell you the truth: it is to your advantage that I go away....” (16:6-7).

298 The reference ταυ/τα of 16:4a obviously indicates the threat of persecution that arises for the disciples only after Jesus is no longer with them. In particular, η⎯ ω[ρα αυϖτω/ν would seem to mean the hour of persecutors (Kysar 1986:246; Brown 1970:692). In addition, the reference ταυ/τα in 16:1 seems to point to the content of 16:18-27 and not merely to the promise of the Paraclete in 16:26-27 (Brown 1970:690). Now in 16:4b ταυ/τα appears again. Do “these things”, then, echoes the earlier use of the term in 16:1, 4a, or looks forward to the later usage in 16:6. To Brown, 16:4b should be understood with what comes before it. The dominant theme of 15:18-16:4a is the hatred of the world toward the followers of Jesus. The description of hatred comes to a head in 16:1ff., where the disciples are told that they will be thrown out of the synagogue. In 16:1 and 16:4a, Jesus refers to the message about persecution as “these things” (ταυ/τα). Therefore, when he repeats ταυ/τα again in 16:4b, Brown assumes that he again refers solely to the themes of persecution. For Brown, the fact that Jesus
these things to you from the beginning, but I was with you”, he is defining the place of the farewell discourses in the wake of his departure. While he is present, there is no need for him to say ταυ/τα. The words are necessary for a time when Jesus is no longer with his followers. As is true of the philosopher Nigrinus or the Apostle Paul (see Parsenios 2005:77-109), Jesus’ presence is valuable to his disciples and his absence is distressing. The disciples need their teacher and Lord. The Paraclete eases this distress, making Jesus present even in his absence. The banquet of words accomplishes the same thing, rendering Jesus present. Or, somewhat differently but more accurately, the banquet of words invites Jesus’ later disciples into his presence, drawing them into the feast of words that Jesus shared with his original followers on the night before his death. The Johannine logodeipnon, therefore, functions somewhat analogously to a philosopher’s instructional letter to his pupils, bridging the gap between teacher and student (Parsenios 2005:142-144).

uses the phrase “from the beginning” in a persecution context in 15:27 suggests that the same concern is at issue in 16:4 when he uses the same phrase. Thus, Jesus did not tell the disciples about persecution “from the beginning,” i.e., at the start of his earthly ministry, because he did not want to frighten them prematurely (“ἐϖξ αϖρχηϕ” appears as well in 6:64 and 15:27, and refers to beginning of the earthly ministry.). “Perhaps the idea is that as long as he was with them, all persecution was directed against him. Only when he departs is there a problem for his disciples, who will become the chief spokesmen of the word of God.” (Brown 1970:704). Kysar (1986:246) also states that 16:4b builds a bond with the previous discourse by means of some common terms (the beginning, 15:27, and these things, 16:1). This is consented by Beasley-Murray (1987:279) who argues that this word clearly refers to 16:1 and 4a, and relates to the persecution ahead of the disciples. For the same opinion, see also Schnackenburg (1982:126). But this reading is confusing in light of the traditional manner in which commentators separate the different sections of the farewell discourses. Almost all commentators divide the first few verses in chapter 16, so that 16:4a closes the previous section and 16:4b opens a new one (cf. Segovia 1991:174-178 for a review of the options in dividing this section). 16:4b, then, is better understood in light of what comes after it, not what comes before it. This fact makes it all the more puzzling that Brown reads the ταυ/τα in connection solely to the ταυ/τα of 16:1, 4a. Such a reading, as noted above, confines Jesus’ comments to the need to explain persecution as a result of his impending departure, and ignores the possibility that the disciples are distressed at the departure of Jesus per se. It also ignores the fact that ταυ/τα appears not only in 16:1 and 4, but also in 16:6. And in 16:6, ταυ/τα refers not to persecution, but to the general anguish surrounding Jesus’ departure: “But because I have said these things (ταυ/τα) to you, sorrow has filled your hearts. Nevertheless, I tell you the truth: it is to your advantage that I go away….” (16:6-7) (Parsenios 2005:142-143)

Carson (1991:532) points out, “Jesus has not earlier spelled out the full dangers of persecution because he was still with them, and could largely protect them by absorbing all opposition himself, thus deflecting it from them. Indeed, his arrest proves to be the last time he serves them in this way (18:8-9). At the same time, the words “because I was with you” bring up again Jesus’ imminent departure (a dominant theme in chapter 14), and thus prepare the way for what follows.”

The entire Fourth Gospel is a story about the past written for the benefit of later believers. The comment at 20:29 – “Blessed are those who have not seen and yet have come to believe” – emphasises that the Gospel intends not merely to record the past, but to influence future generations. This same concern is prominent in the farewell discourses. Jesus’ admonition at 16:4b insists that the sole purpose of his entire set of discourses is to allow his followers to hear his voice when they can no longer see his
This section is closely related in substance and expression to that of 13:31-14:31, and like the earlier discourse is dominated by the departure of Jesus (Beasley-Murray 1987:270; cf. Brown 1970:588-594; Schnackenburg 1982:123-125; Lagrange 1936:417; Mlakuzhyil 1987:225). However, this section is distinctive from the previous discourses. This is natural if one considers the generic associations of literature into the Johannine farewell discourses. As has been pointed out above, the delay of the exits of Antigone, Cassandra and others, as well as the contextual confusion surrounding their delays, serves to focus attention on the speakers, lifting them beyond their immediate surroundings. Their exits are thus made more significant, and the speeches that accompany the exits receive greater attention and total focus. Jesus’ exit, and the discourses that accompany it, share the same quality. Jesus’ exit is a critical point in the Gospel for a host of reasons, and so the progress of the narrative pauses immediately prior to the exit in order to reflect on and underscore the exit’s significance. Thus this section covers some new ground not least of all in a further delineation of the believers’ relationship with the world and the Paraclete (Kysar 1986:246; cf. Van Tilborg 1993:141-143).

In John 15:1-17, by means of the metaphor of the vine, Jesus powerfully delivers to his disciples his true identity (Van der Watt 2000:25-54; cf. Van Tilborg 1993:149-150). In fact, in the present passage, there is a more developed metaphor of the identity of Jesus as “the true vine” than the simpler “I am” sayings with the countenance. Jesus says, “I did not say these --thi ngs to you from the beginning because I was with you. But now I am going to him who sent me….“ (16:4b) Where Plutarch claims that Socrates’ dinner conversations are a feast for later generations not originally present with Socrates, Jesus similarly insists that his words from the Last Supper are spoken for a time when he will no longer be present. Preserved as they are in a logodeipnon, later generations can share in the feast long after Jesus departs. “I did not say these things (ταυ/τα) to you from the beginning because I was with you. But now I am going to him who sent me….“ Indeed, with this comment, Jesus is already partially being displaced by his words. His earthly presence in his flesh is already becoming a presence in his words;ταυ/τα (Parsenios 2005:142).

301 Scholars suppose that, like other ancient schools, the Johannine community developed its own esoteric teachings, symbols and metaphoric systems, which were well understood by its members (cf. Moloney 1987:46; Pamment 1985:119; see Culpepper 1975:262; Du Rand 1990:30; Johnson 1978:312).
predicate (Kysar 1986:236; cf. Barnhart 1993:129-131; Orchard 1998:182). The theme of this fertile Gospel is thus formulated in a nutshell, namely Jesus is the Son, the donor of the new order of life (Coetzee 1993:40-77, 55; cf. Van Tilborg 1993:149). Furthermore, this section places emphasis on the unity and solidarity between Jesus and his own and on reassurance and bonding (Du Rand 1987:108, 109; Laney 1989:55; see Ferreira 1998:62). In John 15:18-16:33, then, the author deals with the same theme of Jesus’ departure as in John 14 but mentions his warning to the group of trouble, while his attempt to offer clarification and encouragement is noted in John 14 (Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:229; Orchard 1998:182-184). This part can simply be identified as “the second (or further) farewell discourse” (cf. Culpepper 1998:216; Beasley-Murray 1987:269).

3.2.3.4. 17:1-26: The prayer of Jesus

The fourth or last sub-section of John 13:1-17:26 seems to start naturally from 17:1 and to continue to 17:26, since the reader obviously finds a demarcation marker in 18:1 (see above). Besides, the isolation of John 17:1-26 from the others is evident from the difference in literary genre between John 17 and what precedes and follows (see Barnhart 1993:133-134; Orchard 1998:188-189). That is, the preceding section (13:31-16:33) is commonly called the “farewell discourses” (Jesus is addressing his disciples before leaving them) and the following section (18-19) is the


303 John 15 could possibly be a reflection of the conflict between the synagogue vine (the false; Judaism) and the Jesus vine (the true; the believers) (De Smidt 1991:254).

304 Painter (1993:425-26) thinks that John 15:1-10 is addressed against the “secret believers” who do not abide in Jesus.

305 The distinctiveness of this section in comparison is well delineated by Thomas (1991:69-70) who thinks that this section gives more attention to provision for the believers as they encounter the world. They are as follows: (1) The Paraclete is reintroduced in order to present his role of proving the world guilty as well as that of providing additional guidance for the believers. (2) Although Jesus’ departure will result in deep sorrow for his followers, the suffering will be transformed into joy, as with a woman in labour whose pain turns to joy at delivery. In part, this joy is the result of the disciples’ direct access to the Father through Jesus’ name. (3) In addition, the disciples are encouraged by the fact that Jesus has overcome the world. They will share in this victory. Ironically, these promises are given with the knowledge that soon many of the disciples will desert Jesus.

306 This means that the form and genre of John 17 call for separate treatment.
Johannine passion account (see “macro structure” in Chapter II). Dividing these is John 17, whose literary genre is a prayer by Jesus to his Father, delivered in the presence of his disciples. Furthermore, in defining this pericope, the literary genre of the pericope needs to be borne in mind here. Typical features of this genre are found in this passage: Jesus looks up to heaven (v. 1) which is an attitude of prayer (cf. 11:41; Ps 123:1; Mark 6:41 par.; Luke 18:13); through the entire chapter, the Father is referred to in the second person singular and he is addressed with the vocative πα,τερ (vv. 1, 5, 11, 21, 24, 25), with imperatives (vv. 1, 5, 11, 17) and by means of the verb εϖρωτα,ω (vv. 9, 15, 20) (see Mahlangu 1999:229; Barnhart 1993:133). Thus the separation of John 17 from the others (both preceding and following) is proper.

307 The words ταυ/τα εϖλα,λησεν in John 17:1a connect the prayer to the farewell discourses.
308 Ferreira (1998:58) supposes that the Sitz im Leben of the prayer in this chapter is the struggle of the Johannine community with the synagogue. He finds that the prayer has didactic and apologetic purposes; it serves to strengthen the faith of the Johannine community in the face of opposition. According to him, John 17 is certainly not simply a summary or a synthesis of the farewell discourses but rather its climax; it is the end result of the community’s reflection on its purpose after the departure of the Redeemer.
309 The beginning of John 18 again signals the start of a new section with the expression, ταυ/τα ειϖπω.ν ςΙησου/ϕ (cf. Ferreira 1998:69).
310 The misunderstanding of Jesus’ exit at John 14:31 has led some Johannine commentators to reconstruct chapters 13-17 (see Ferreira 1998:60; Beasley-Murray 1987:223-224). For instance, Schnackenburg (1982:167), like Bultmann (cf. 1971:416) and the others, acknowledges the problem of the place of the high priestly prayer: “The three great discourses in John 14-16, which are usually but not very adequately grouped together under one title ‘farewell discourses’ are followed in chapter 17 by a great, solemn prayer that Jesus addressed to the Father, in the presence (presumably) of all the disciples. This new composition stands out clearly against the so-called farewell discourses as a distinctive genre of discourse and purely externally as Jesus’ prayer on his departure from the disciples. The most striking problem of all that arises in connection with this great prayer and its structure, content, literary genre and meaning is the mere fact of its inclusion in the Gospel of John.” Bultmann (1971:461) thus proposes that the prayer in John 17 falls between 13:30 and 13:31. According to him this prayer is suitably positioned where it precedes the farewell discourses. However, Schnackenburg (1982:167) negates Bultmann’s position and states that in the present configuration of the Gospel there is no suitable place for this pericope and there would also be no better place in a possible original form of the Gospel. For Schnackenburg, it would be out of the question to place it before the farewell discourse in chapter 14 (as it is asserted by Bultmann). Agreeing with Schnackenburg (above), Dodd (1953:417) supposes that the prayer has to come at the end of the discourses: “The resounding conclusion of the discourse, ‘courage! I have conquered the world’, forms also an effective transition to the prayer which follows, if we bear in mind that the fight is fought and the victory won upon the field of the spirit and by the power of God. The prayer gathers up much of what has been said, both in the book of signs and in the farewell discourses, and presupposes everywhere the total picture of Christ and his work with which the reader should by this time be amply acquainted. Almost every verse contains echoes.” Also arguing for the retention of this prayer after the farewell discourses before the crucifixion is Brown (1970:598; see Mahlangu 1999:240). He (1966:745) sees the prayer as an independent composition added later corresponding to the style of the Prologue. Likewise, both Painter (1981:256) and Schmithals (1992:401) regard John 17 as a later addition by the author. The investigator also thinks that the present order of the narrative is most natural and that proposals of this
The prayer of Jesus in this section focuses not on himself but on his disciples (see Orchard 1998:188-189; cf. Van Tilborg 1993:143-148; Van der Merwe 2003:169-190). This is evident by the description of contents according to its literary structure. Indeed, numerous suggestions on the internal organisation of this chapter have been proposed and defended but consensus has not yet been reached. The investigator adopts among others the suggestion of Becker (see 1969:56-61). According to Becker, kind have not met with favour, for they create fresh problems (e.g., it is a strange procedure to set chapter 17 prior to the discourses, since it seems so clearly to indicate their climax) (see Beasley-Murray 1987:224). Furthermore, one of the features of Old Testament and extra-biblical farewell discourses in that the speaker often concludes with a prayer for those who are left behind (e.g., Deut. 32-33; Ezr. 8:19-36; Jub. 22:28-30) (Brown 1970:600; Beasley-Murray 1987:293; Carson 1991:550-551). After he examined the fact that farewell discourses were widespread as a literary form in ancient times and that there are several examples from the Old Testament and in the New Testament (see below), Brown (1970:598) insisted that it is not unusual for a speaker to close his farewell address with a prayer for his children or the people he is leaving behind (cf. chapter 17). According to him, the Book of Deuteronomy is particularly instructive here. He states that, as a collection of Moses’ last discourses to his people, it offers an interesting parallel to the Johannine farewell discourses. In particular, it is noteworthy that near the end of Deuteronomy there are two canticles of Moses, one in chapter 32 where Moses turns from the people to address the heavens, the other in chapter 33 where Moses blesses the tribes for the future. (He argues) So also in John 17 Jesus turns to heaven and addresses the Father, but much of what he says concerns the future of his disciples. That is, the logical place for such a prayer is at the end of a farewell address, not before (Brown 1970:745). The climactic feature of this section confirms this proposal. John 17 is in many respects a summary of this Gospel from the first chapter through the sixteenth (Cadman 1969:203; Carson 1991:551; Dodd 1953:417; Käsemann 1968:3). Besides, the main themes in this chapter include the mutual glorification of the Father and the Son, the Son’s work of revealing the Father, the identity of Jesus as the Sent One, the importance of receiving the words of Jesus, the world’s hate, the love of God, Jesus’ departure to the Father, the gift of eternal life, the mission of the disciples, and mutual indwelling. In this regard, Van der Merwe (1995:325) notes that even if they differ about the exact place, they seem to agree that it is not free-standing but is intimately related and connected by themes and link words connected to it. Indeed, according to him, most of the themes from previous chapters are taken up again in this chapter (e.g., word, believe, ascension, love, Father/Son relationship, preservation; see above). He hence insists that this chapter may be the logical framework of the farewell discourses. Thus many scholars agree that this chapter is one of the most majestic moments in the Fourth Gospel, as well as forming a climax in the Gospel of John, precisely at the point where Jesus has ended his discourses to the disciples (cf. 17:1) and before he sets off on the way of the passion (cf. 18:1) (Schnackenburg 1982:167; Brown 1970:744; Barrett 1978:499; Dodd 1953:420; Carson 1991:550f.; see Van der Merwe 1995:326). These considerations suffice as a legitimation to look upon John 17 as a unit.  


312 According to Ferreira (1998:69), the reader can opt for the common threefold division of the text that is proposed by Becker for the following reasons: “Firstly, the division follows closely the time perspective of John. John is concerned not only with the past and present but also with the future. Jesus’ prayer concerning himself reflects on the past. His prayer concerning his disciples describes the present, whereas Jesus’ prayer for those who will believe through the disciples’ word prophesies about the future. Secondly, key structural markers suggest this threefold division of the prayer. The address
Jesus, raising his eyes to heaven, begins the prayer: Jesus prays for himself (vv. 1-8); he prays for his disciples (vv. 9-19); and he prays for future believers (vv. 20-26). Thus the prayer of Jesus in this section focuses on his concern for the disciples whom he leaves behind in the world and as well as future believers (see Van Tilborg 1993:143-148). Jesus’ deep concern for his followers is also emphasised by means of the inclusive character of the beginning of John 13 and the end of John 17. In these parts, the repetition of the theme of love is reinforced, as both insist upon love (see the term απαλλαγη in 13:1 and 17:26; cf. Orchard 1998:188-189). This last section can simply be called “the prayer of Jesus”.

3.2.4. Overview of John 13:31-14:31

The investigator now wishes to present a short outline of the underlying structure of the pericope. To outline the structure of the text at this stage is necessary if one is to determine the exegesis of the pericope in detail. The following analysis will deal with

to the Father, παρερχεται, in v. 1 opens Jesus’ prayer, then at v. 9 the expression, εσελεγεντον ερωτησεως, occurs indicating that Jesus is progressing to a new subject. Then again a similar expression occurs at v. 20, ουπερπεριτους οικονομων, indicating that another transition is made. Thirdly, the content also lends itself to a threefold division. In the first section Jesus prays for his own glorification and recounts his work on earth, especially revealing the Father to the disciples. In the second section the attention is on the disciples who are in need of protection and sanctification. In the third section the focus shifts to future believers, and the need for oneness and love. And fourthly, vv. 6 to 8 have been grouped with the first part of the prayer because no new request is made and the focus is still on what Jesus has done. Taking these verses with the first part of the prayer also allows for a more symmetrical division of the prayer.”

313 There are no breaks in the prayer except for some explanatory notes (see Culpepper 1998:219).
314 Culpepper (1998:219) insists that the author captures the inner self of Jesus in this chapter as it frames the farewell discourses between the foot washing and this sublime prayer. He (1998:219) goes on to say that the verb tenses here as in other parts of the farewell discourses alternate between the past and the future, as though it were the prayer of the risen Lord looking back on Jesus’ public ministry and looking forward to the next generation of believers.
315 Particularly, this is expressed in three petitions (see Becker 1969:56-67): “keep them in your name” (v. 11d), “keep them from the evil one” (v. 15d), and “sanctify them in the truth” (v. 17a).
316 Ferreira (1998:135) states that the author, in John 17, is very interested in the relationship between the community and the Johannine historical Jesus. Indeed, according to him, the author sets up the closest possible relationship between the community and Jesus. He remarks, “It is a community that consists of those who belong to the Father and who were given to Jesus. In other words, it is a community of given ones, elected and drawn by the Father. Therefore, the community exists theoretically even before the revelation brought by the Son. The Son called the community into active existence by giving the given ones life. As such, the origin of the community is traced to the earthly ministry of Jesus. Because the community belongs to the Father it does not have its origin from the world. In fact, the world hates it.”

155
the text section by section, in accordance with the structural divisions thus established. One of the basic assumptions of this study is that the text, as it now stands, makes sense (see above). This is based on the belief that the existence of the text in its final form suggests that it was regarded by author and readers alike as comprehensible and interpretable. In other words, the text as it stands must have made sense to some group at a particular point in history (cf. Thomas 1991:75-76). This furthermore implies that all potential readers would be aware that the author of the Gospel arranged each narrative or discourse with consummate artistry, rather than spontaneously. This perspective of the text supports the legitimacy of the present examination (cf. Segovia 1991:288-289).

There have been various and numerous efforts to organise the division of the present pericope. One would expect a greater degree of scholarly consensus concerning this issue, but a review of the existing exegetical literature shows a great deal of disagreement (Segovia 1991:64; see Mlakuzhyil 1987:221-226). Thus Brown mentions that “the internal organization of chapter 14 is not easy to discern” (1970:623), and that “in chapter 14 it is difficult to know where one unit ends and another begins” (1970:652). Segovia (1985:471) also notes that “hardly any

agreement exists with regard to the delineation of these subsections in the respective categories.” 319 Indeed, many commentators have confessed the considerable theme of the Paraclete is introduced. He argues that even this break is not sharp; for the Paraclete comes at Jesus’ request, and vv. 13-14 have been concerned with asking in Jesus’ name, the inclusion that exists between the beginning and ending of vv. 1-14 lends support to the suggestion that these verses are a unit: the challenge to believe in Jesus is shared by v. 1 and vv. 11-12; the theme that Jesus is going to the Father is shared by v. 2 and v. 12; verses 13-14 are a problem - they are related to v. 12 and probably should be kept with that verse, but they also offer a transition to v. 15. According to Brown, the reader may see here an instance of the Johannine technique of overlapping, where the conclusion of the unit is the beginning of the next. (He observes) The next unit seems to consist of vv. 15-24, for there is an inclusion between v. 15 and vv. 23-24 in the theme of loving Jesus and keeping his commandments and words. Thus, in his view, this leaves a third unit of vv. 25-31.

319 However, Segovia in 1991 wrote: “In terms of its overall thematic flow, the farewell speech that leads up to the climactic prayer of John 17 can indeed be regarded as a self-contained artistic whole that is highly unified and carefully developed from beginning to end. He proposes (1991:64-68), agreeing with Becker’s proposal in principle (cf. Becker 1970:215-246), the following subdivision: (13:31-38) “Introduction to the discourse”; vv. 1-27 “The main section of the discourse” (vv. 1-3 “Departure and return”; vv. 4-14 “Jesus’ departure”; vv. 15-27 “Jesus’ return”); vv. 28-31 “Conclusion to the discourse”. According to him, this proposal is caused by the literary clues of inclusio in John 14. To put it precisely, (according to him) Becker’s organising principles for the proposed structure are based on certain major literary clues within the chapter and thus remain fundamentally sound. He argues that all of these clues are to be found in vv. 1-3, which thus become for both Becker and Segovia the key to both the structure and the fundamental meaning of the chapter and the discourse. According to Segovia, the first such clue is the inclusio formed by the repetition of the command of v. 1a (“μη, ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α”) in v. 27d. He adds that the second such clue lies in the overall importance of the themes of departure and return presented in the saying of vv. 2-3. These two themes are said to provide the basic concerns not only of the proposed middle section but of the entire discourse as well. In addition, he states that the two themes are also said to be developed sequentially within the middle section and thus provide the key to its basic structure. Finally, Segovia mentions that Becker concludes that the saying of vv. 2-3 presents a traditional expectation of the Parousia which is then systematically reinterpreted in the remainder of the discourse, which thus explains the latter’s essentially polemical character. Segovia sees in the two central sections a highly intricate structure (cf. Beasley-Murray 1987:244-245). Firstly, vv. 4-14 (departure of Jesus) consists of a threefold series of three elements: (1) a beginning Christological statement (in vv. 4, 7, 10), (2) a statement concerning the belief of the disciples (vv. 5, 8, 11), and (3) an expansion of the beginning Christological statement (vv. 6, 9, 12-14). The exposition presents therefore a series of three parallel cycles: vv. 4-6; 7-9; 10-14. Within each series the expansion and development of the beginning Christological statement is accomplished through the central statement concerning the disciples. Secondly, vv 15-27 (the return of Jesus) has a fourfold series of three elements: (1) a definition of love for Jesus (vv. 15, 21a, 23ab, 24); (2) promises to those who do love Jesus (vv. 16-17a, 21bc, 23cd, 25-26); (3) a differentiation between those who love Jesus and “the world” (vv. 17b-d, 18-20, 22, 27a-c). According to Segovia, the exposition thus presents a series of four parallel cycles: vv. 15-17; 18-21; 22-23; 24-27. In all four series the definition of love for Jesus is followed by a promise or a number of promises made to those who do love him; those who keep his commands or words. All of these promises centre on the theme of Jesus’ return and thus develop and expand directly the idea of the return, which was already explicitly disclosed in the promise of vv. 2-3. The concluding section (vv. 28-31) contains three basic elements: (1) an instruction concerning the proper attitude of the disciples with respect to Jesus’ openly announced and impending glorification (vv. 28-29); (2) an explanation concerning the proper interpretation of that coming glorification as an encounter between Jesus and “the ruler of the world” (vv. 30-31c); (3) a command to arise and depart (v. 31d). Each of these basic elements performs a fundamental function within the discourse. On the other hand, Beasley-Murray, in principle, contests Segovia. He (1987:244-245) insists that the division of vv. 4-14 into three cycles of three themes and of vv. 15-27 into four cycles of three themes is artificial and requires some very implausible interpretations of the text. He argues that particularly the structure in vv. 4-11 is controlled by a
difficulties in the demarcation of this chapter. The primary reason for this perplexity lies in the fact that many of the attempts seem to have been done without giving serious consideration to the methodological basis of the analysis (cf. Tolmie

dialogue between Jesus and the disciples: Jesus speaks, and the disciples twice question him, thereby evoking clarifications of Jesus’ meaning. Vv 7-11 should not be brought under the rubric of the departure of Jesus but rather focuses on the revelation of God through the knowledge to Jesus. The main emphasis of vv 12-14 is on the continuing mission of the disciples in the future when Jesus will be with the Father. For the striving of this achievement, then, the first promise of the Paraclete is set at vv. 16-17. Thus, Beasley-Murray (1987:244-245), with a slight modification of the proposal of Segovia, suggests the following division: (13:31-38 Introduction); vv. 1-26 (The discourse proper - vv. 1-3 The departure and return of Jesus; vv. 4-6 Jesus, the way to God; vv. 7-11 Jesus, the revelation of God; vv. 12-14 Jesus, the power of the disciples’ mission; vv. 15-17 The coming of another Paraclete; vv. 18-20 The coming of Jesus at Easter; vv. 21-24 The coming of Jesus to the believer; vv. 25-26 The Paraclete teacher); vv. 27-31 Epilogue: the bequest of peace.

One of the prominent suggestions on the structure of this chapter is the use of inclusio and parallelism. For instance, Stibbe (1993:154-156), who thinks that the teaching of the Paraclete in John 14 is not only central in terms of form, but also central in terms of narrative structure, proposes that the use of inclusio and parallelism provides some clues concerning the structure of John 14 and that these should be taken into account in any analysis of its literary design. He begins by noticing the inclusion and parallelism between vv.1-4 and vv. 27-31. According to him, both units are of roughly equal length and both have exactly the same words, “μη. ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α (v. 1; v. 27). He also finds a thematic inclusio between these two units. According to him, in the former the theme of departure (“εϖγω. υ⎯πα,γω”) and return (“πα,λιν ε;ρχομαι”) are announced and, in v. 28 Jesus harks back to this theme by quoting his earlier remarks at the beginning of the chapter (“ηϖκου,σατε ο:[τι εϖγω. ει=πον υ⎯μι/ν∴ υ⎯πα,γω και. ε;ρχομαι προ.ϕ υ⎯μα/ϕ”). Thus he proposes through this use of both inclusio and parallelism that vv. 1-4 is supposed to function as the overture to the chapter (that is, introduction), and vv. 27-31 as its conclusion. In vv. 5-26, Stibbe discovers another use of parallelism in the statements made by the three disciples. In v. 5, before the content of Thomas’ question is mentioned, the narrator comments that “λε,γει αυϖτω/| Θωμα/ϕ.” A similar construction is again found in v. 8 where Jesus’ words break off and another question of a new disciple is mentioned. The narrator states that λε,γει αυϖτω/| Φι,λιπποϕ and this is followed by the direct speech of Philip that κυ,ριε( δει/ξον η⎯μι/ν το.ν πατε,ρα( και. αϖρκει/ η⎯μι/ν and this is followed by the narrator’s remark that “μη. ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α” (v. 1; v. 27). Thus the reader may infer that vv. 5-7 is the second narrative unit of the chapter, and that a third begins at v. 8. The third and final example of this parallel construction is in v. 22 where the narrator states that λε,γει αυϖτω/| Φι,λιπποϕ κυ,ριε( ηϖκου,σατε ο:[τι εϖγω. ει=πον υ⎯μι/ν∴ υ⎯πα,γω και. ε;ρχομαι προ.ϕ υ⎯μα/ϕ. The departure and return (”εϖγω. υ⎯πα,γω”// v. 27). This should indicate to the reader that vv. 5-7 (Jesus and Thomas) and vv. 22-26 (Judas) are parallel and complete sections. He adds that the central section (vv. 8-21) has another inclusio between the opening sentences (vv. 9-10) and the concluding sentences (vv. 20-21). According to Stibbe, both the first and the last words of this section are to do with “showing” or revelation. He suggests that these two parts take up with the themes of “seeing the Father through Jesus”, “the oneness of Jesus and the Father” and “indwelling”. Thus he proposes the structure of chapter 14 as follows: vv. 1-4 (“Introduction”: Do not let your hearts be troubled); vv. 5-7 (“Dialogue with Thomas”: The disciple come to the Father through the Son); vv. 8-21 (“Dialogue with Philip”): a. vv. 9-14 (“The Father is in me and I am in the Father”), b. vv. 15-21 (“I am in the Father and you are in me, and I am in you”); vv. 22-26 (“Dialogue with Judas”: The Father and the Son come to the disciple); vv. 27-31 (“Conclusion”: Do not let your hearts be troubled). However, although parallelism and inclusio obviously furnish clues on the internal organisation, he believes, division of the text according to dialogues is overlooked in consideration of some significant thematic indications, such as “departure and return”, “belief”, “the command to love”, “seeing the Father and doing his works”, “the Paraclete” and “the gift of peace”.

158
In other words, scholars have attempted to discuss the structural principles organising the discourse without explaining the basis for their subdivisions (see Woll 1981:21).

“Discourse analysis” that has been developed specifically in South African scholarship will be employed to divide the present passage (see “method” in Chapter I). This method contributes to more reliable pericope divisions in cases where major differences of opinion occur as well as being useful in examining the basic development of the train of thought in the discourse. The investigator proposes the following division of the pericope.

---

**Part I: The introduction of the farewell discourse (13:31-38)**

13:31a: The going out of Judas
13:31b-32: The mutual doxology of Jesus and God
13:33: The temporary separation of Jesus from his disciples

---

321 For instance, Moloney (1998:391-392) argues that a variety of syntactic elements and details of content suggest a threefold division and further subdivisions as follows: vv. 1-14 (“Jesus speaks encouragingly of his departure”): vv. 1-6 (“departure to the Father”), vv. 7-11 (“to see the Father and his works”), vv. 12-14 (“to believe and to do the works of the Father”); vv. 15-24 (“Jesus instructs the disciples on the fruits of belief and love”): vv. 15-17 (“the Paraclete and the world”), vv. 18-21 (“the revelation of the oneness of Jesus and the Father”), vv. 22-24 (“loving Jesus and keeping his word”); vv. 25-31 (“Jesus speaks encouragingly of his departure”): vv. 25-26 (“the Paraclete and the disciples”), v. 27a (“the gift of peace”), vv. 27b-31 (“departure to the Father”).

322 Two attempts which have been made according to this method can be mentioned: the first is the proposal of Van der Watt. He (1986:637-638; cf. 2000:344-350) suggests the following structure: vv. 1-4 (Gerussstellende vermaning: Glo in God en Jesus): (God is in beheer) - Jesus gaan weg en kom weer; vv. 5-6a (Die vraag en openbarende stelling oor Jesus as die weg, die waarheid en lewe); vv. 6b-11 (WEG: Jesus is die weg, waarheid en lewe); vv. 12-17 (WAARHEID: Gelowiges doen wat Jesus doen m.b.v. die Gees van die waarheid); vv. 18-21 LEWE: (Gelowiges sien Jesus omdat hulle lewe a.g.v. ’n eenheid tussen die Vader, Jesus en die mense); vv. 22-26 (Die openbaring en kenbaarheid van Jesus is deur sy openbaringswoord deur die Gees); vv. 27-31 (Jesus se vrede bly, hoewel Hy weeggaan. Sy weeggaan is ’n oorwinning oor die Satan). Another example is the proposal of Tolmie, which is as follows (see 1991:279): vv. 1-14 (“the presentation of Jesus as the way to the Father”); vv. 15-24 (“the promise that Jesus, the Father and the Paraclete will come to those who love Jesus and keep his commandments”); vv. 26-31 (“the conclusion of the discourse in which various themes which have been scattered throughout the discourse, are collected”).

323 The main purpose of this investigation will be to determine the overall theme and thought pattern of the text, which will be considered in detail in the subsequent detailed exegesis. The overall colon analysis of the underlying pericope can be seen in the appendix of the present work.

324 The reasons of this demarcation and pivotal points of the sections will be discussed in the following detailed exegesis.
owing to his impending departure
13:34-35: The commandment of mutual love
13:36-38: The prediction of Peter's denial

Part II: The departure of Jesus (14:1-14)

14:1: The call to courage and faith
14:2-3: The purpose of Jesus' departure
14:4-6: Jesus as the way to God
14:7-9: Knowing and seeing the Father in Jesus
14:10-11: The mutual presence of Jesus and the Father in one another
14:12-14: The presence of Jesus by means of the disciples' mission

Part III: The return of Jesus (14:15-24)

14:15: The ethical implications of being his follower
14:16-17: The coming of Jesus in the perspective of the Spirit
14:18-20: The coming of Jesus
14:21-24: The ethical implications of being his follower

Part IV: The conclusion of the farewell discourse (14:25-31)

14:25-26: The Paraclete replaces Jesus' physical presence
14:27-28: The gift of peace and joy
14:29-31a: The purpose of the discourse
14:31b: The ending remarks of the discourse: a command to arise and depart

3.2.4. Concluding summary

The contextualisation of the present pericope has thus been determined throughout the above examination. While the testament – particularly the biblical testament – is
certainly the single most important literary influence on the Johannine farewell discourses, other literary options exist in antiquity and the Gospel’s author takes advantage of them for the furtherance of theological and narrative designs. Following John’s typical patterns, the farewell discourses are not faithful to any single genre, even the testament. The Gospel’s purpose is to narrate the story and the significance of Jesus. To do this, the author uses several different literary forms depicting death and responses to death and departure. The discourses interface with classical literature, specifically the following literary styles: Greek tragedy, consolation literature, and the literary symposium tradition. While the material from Greek tragedy will only further emphasise the theme of departure, the material from classical consolation literature and the literary symposium tradition will accentuate the theme of continuing presence. John has thereby transcended the usual expectations of the testament. He deviates from the standard expectations of the testament by emphasising Jesus’ continuing presence with his disciples, and not merely his impending absence. Furthermore, “the material from ancient drama” will provide a means for resolving long-standing questions about the curious narrative seam that separates John 14 and 15. When read against the testament form only, John 14:31 appears to upset the ordered flow of Jesus’ departure and to justify redaction theories. When read in the light of additional literary possibilities, however, such as the dramatic exit to death, the narrative coherence of the scene is more obvious. The broader context in which John 13:31-14:31 occurs may be schematised as follows: 13:1-30; 13:31-14:31; 15:1-16:33; and 17:1-26. The entire discourse is dominated by the theme of “the constant love of Jesus for the disciples” (cf. 13:1-30). This analytical perspective accounts for the discourses which follow and the prayer. That is, the focus of the following discourses (15:1-16:33) falls on the unity and solidarity between Jesus and his own, and the provision for the believers as they encounter the persecution of the world respectively. Besides, the prayer of Jesus in 17:1-26 focuses on Jesus’ concern for his disciples whom he leaves behind in the world and as well as future believers. One might gain some insight on the place and function of 13:31-14:31 within 13:1-17:26 in that, between two units of the farewell discourse (i.e., 13:31-14:31; and 15:1-16:33), John 13:31-14:31 occupies the first and primary position. John’s primary concern in the underlying pericope (13:31-14:31) is above all to provide a basis for
the disciples’ (and all believers’) continuing community with Jesus, in spite of the imminent separation, and to strengthen the future Christian community in its believing existence (Thomas 1991:67; Schnackenburg 1982:4). John emphasises here that Jesus will not be separated from his disciples and furthermore that he is going away to prepare for them the universal and permanent possibility of an abiding communion with his Father. The departure of Jesus is thus to the disciples’ advantage and the disciples are accordingly called to believe in the word of Jesus (14:2b; cf. 2:1-4:54). The disciples do not therefore need to trouble their mind (cf. 14:1, 27). The last part of the contextual investigation is devoted to an overview of the present passage. The first farewell discourse can be grouped into four clusters in the following way: “the introduction of the farewell discourse” (13:31-38); “the departure of Jesus” (14:1-14); “the return of Jesus” (14:15-24); and “the conclusion of the farewell discourse” (14:25-31). It seems at first glance appropriate to consider that John does not emphasise the departure of Jesus from his followers but rather his return to them, and his ideas are presented systematically.

3.3. The exegesis of John 13:31-14:31

The investigator now turns to a discussion of the detailed exegesis of John 13:31-14:31. The exegetical study will be based on the examination of context that has been discussed in the previous section. This means that the study of context is an introductory step to the concrete analysis of the given text. Throughout the preliminary examination of context of the pericope crucial aspects that exegetes must consider are that Jesus will not be separated from them and, furthermore, that he will return to them. This is the main theme of the present study. Thus the primary task of the exegesis in this section is to uncover the main theme of the study. That is, the question of how the risen Jesus continually presents himself among his followers after his departure from the world through this particular narrative section will be answered by means of the exegetical method employed (see “method” in Chapter I). Thus it should be noted at the outset that the current section does not intend to provide a detailed discussion of all the questions presented by the text. Instead, on the basis of the justification provided in the last chapter, and according to the purpose of the study,
the investigator will consider the first farewell discourse in terms of the presence of the risen Jesus in and among his followers. It should also be mentioned here that the present study only focuses on the final form of the text. Thus whatever the source of the materials or the date at which various pieces were incorporated into the Gospel of John, the exegesis will focus mainly on the final form, not its historical development. The verse-by-verse format allows for extended discussions on particular literary themes and concepts at various points in the analysis, since the investigator is convinced of the composite nature of the section. The passage 13:31-14:31 may be viewed as consisting of the following four parts with their highlighted headings, which rely on the flow of argument and contents of the text: (1) Part I, “the introduction of the farewell discourse” (13:31-38); (2) Part II, “the departure of Jesus” (14:1-14); (3) Part III, “the return of Jesus” (14:15-24); and (4) Part IV, “the conclusion of the farewell discourse” (14:25-31). The following analysis of 13:31-14:31 will therefore be structured in accordance with these sectional divisions.

3.3.1. Part 1: The introduction of the farewell discourse (13:31-38)

Within the context of chapters 13-17, 13:1-30 constitutes the context, with 13:31-16:33 (13:31-14:31/15:1-16:4a/16:4b-33) representing the actual farewell discourse, and chapter 17 serving as the closing prayer. As has been indicated

Scholars have not agreed as to where the farewell discourse begins (see Carson 1991:476-477; Keener 2003:891). Some scholars (e.g., Moloney 1998:391) insist that 13:1 continues to 13:38 and accordingly the demarcation should be made at 13:38, with the farewell discourse beginning in 14:1. Some other interpreters (e.g. McCaffrey 1988:144) argue that 13:31-35 form the introduction and from 13:36 where the dialogue between Jesus and his disciples occurs, the farewell discourse properly begins. Moreover, still others (e.g. Talbert 1992:200-210), in accordance with the above view, see that 13:1-35 focus on Jesus’ provision for his own and the farewell discourse starts from 13:36. Thus the question concerning the demarcation of the beginning of the farewell discourse is not easy to answer. Although there are a number of dissenting voices on this issue, following the majority of commentators, the present study might suggest that the farewell discourse begins with 13:31 (see Brown 1970:608; Segovia 1991:64; Beasley-Murray 1987:244-245; Dodd 1953:402; Countryman 1994:100; Barnhart 1993:127; Strachan 1941:277). This means that this pericope should be joined to what follows rather than what precedes. The most important reason for this assumption is found in the fact that from 13:31 the focus has certainly shifted from the context of the farewell discourse (13:1-30) to the discourse itself (cf. Caron 1991:476). To put it precisely, immediately upon the departure of the betrayer from the company of the disciples at Jesus’ request, with a solemn announcement of Jesus’ glorification, the farewell discourse begins to address those who will in the long term be faithful to him (cf. Carson 1991:477; Segovia 1985:479; Morris 1971:630; Nicholson 1983:42; Brown 1970:560; Thomas 1991:62; Schnackenburg 1980:411, 1982:1; Bultmann 1971:111). This shift makes evident the
above, the whole farewell discourse is dominated by the theme of Jesus’ constant love. Jesus is indeed concerned about his disciples and thus gives lengthy instruction to prepare for his departure from them. Jesus begins by speaking of his imminent “glorification,” that is, his cross-death, and notes that his time with his disciples prior to this event is short. This raises the spectre of misunderstanding, since Jesus’ followers still fail to grasp the import of his oblique references to his “glorification.” Peter becomes the foil for exposing this misunderstanding (Köstenberger 2004:422; Witherington III 1995:248). According to its contents and syntax, the exegesis will proceed under the following headings: “the going out of Judas” (13:31a/colon 1.0); “the mutual doxology of Jesus and God” (13:31b-32/cola 1.1-1.4); “the temporary separation of Jesus from his disciples owing to his impending departure” (13:33/cola 1.5-1.8); “the commandment of mutual love” (13:34-35/cola 1.9-1.11); and “the prediction of Peter’s denial” (13:36-38/cola 2.0-5.4.1).

3.3.1.1. The going out of Judas (13:31a/colon 1.0)

The previous section (13:1-30), which functions as the context of the farewell discourse (see above), ends with an account of Judas leaving the room (see Dodd 1953:402; Berg 1988:101-103; Segovia 1991:69; Keener 2003:915-920). John describes Judas’ departure with utmost sobriety, but in a very telling way. No sooner had he received the piece of bread from Jesus’ own hand than “he immediately went out” (ἐξῆλθεν εὐθύς) (Ridderbos 1997: 473; Parsenios 2005:14-16). The reader is not told where or to whom he went. He was on the way to his own place (cf. 1:5; 3:19-21; Acts 1:25) (see Barrett 1978:374). Furthermore,
the author mentions that “it was night” (η=ν δε. νυ,ξ), about which Howard (1952:690) earlier remarks, “Yet the paschal moon was shining at the full” (cf. Beasley-Murray 1987:239; Countryman 1994:100; Barnhart 1993:127; Strachan 1941:277). This is doubtless a temporal reference (that is, historical reminiscence) since normally in Palestinian the main meal was eaten in the late afternoon, not in the evening, but the Passover meal could be taken only during that night and only until midnight (cf. 1 Cor. 11:23; Jeremias, EWJ: 44-46; Brown 1970:576; Barrett 1978:374; Keener 003:920). However, this reference is more than a note of time (Tenney 1976:205). As many scholars point out, it is profound theology (cf. Matt. 8:12; 22:13; 25:30) (Carson 1991:476; cf. Parsenios 2005:14-16; Culpepper 1991:133-152; Bultmann 1971:482-483; Lee 1962:35). The words contrast Judas’ treacherous deed with the light of impending glorification. His selfishness stands in stark contrast to the divine selflessness of Jesus. Judas’ exit is a departure engulfed in darkness. Night always falls on the person who turns his back on God’s love.

John now starts the discourse with the reiteration of Judas’ departure (¸οτε ου=ν εϖξη/λθεν) at the outset of the discourse (13:31a/colon 1.0) (see Schnackenburg 1982:49; Stibbe 1993:147-149; Tolmie 1995:201; Keener 2003:920-921; Culpepper 1991:133-152). As has been argued above, the exit of Judas...
in this passage provides an evocative example of the likely gains to be had from comparing exits in John to ancient dramatic technique. It removes from the stage a character whose continuing presence would interfere with Jesus’ intimacy with his disciples (see Parsenios 2005:14-16). Furthermore, from a syntactical perspective, this statement shifts the focus from the context of the farewell discourse (13:1-30) to the discourse itself (cf. Caron 1991:476; Dodd 1953:402).

John has already described Judas’ departure in the previous verses, but here, by means of repeating this, he wishes to encourage the reader to recognise certain implications of the following discourse (Moloney 1998:385; cf. Morris 1971:630; Segovia 1991:69; Tolmie 1995:201). Two primary allusions may be offered through this short but significant phrase (see Parsenios 2005:13-16). On the one hand, since the departure of the traitor would set the actual machinery of arrest, trial and execution in motion, the reader expects that the following chapters will be associated with Jesus’ suffering and lament (cf. Van der Watt 2000:310; Carson 1991:482; Koester 2003:73-75).

331 Judas’ departure (v. 30) leads logically to Jesus’ proclamation in v. 31 onwards (cf. Bruce 1983:293).
332 Carson (1991:476) also states that the departure of Judas is much more of a turning point in the plot, and it enhances the link between the end of chapter 13 and the beginning of chapter 14 (see below). He adds, however, that this solution does not make a major impact on the interpretation of the farewell discourse.
333 As has been stated above, the exit of Judas in John 13:30 provides a suggestive example of the likely gains to be had from comparing exits in John to ancient dramatic technique. For Judas does not leave the supper of his own accord. Jesus orders him to exit, very much like masters and superiors in ancient drama order servants or messengers offstage to perform any number of errands. Such departures carry the labels “involuntary” and “forced” exits. These exits can be critical for the proper development of the plot, serving at least two functions. First, such an exit sends someone offstage in order to prepare for future action. If some deed needs to be accomplished in order for the tension of the play to properly resolve itself, a master will send an underling to carry out the necessary activities. Second, these involuntary exits remove from the stage a character whose presence would disrupt the natural flow of the scene. The departure of Judas at 13:30 is ordered by Jesus at 13:27 and serves both of the dramatic functions outlined above. In the first place, Judas’ departure sets in motion the events culminating in his crucifixion. When Judas exits, the reader knows to expect trouble soon. Judas’ departure also fulfils the other common function of mid-scene exits. The exit keeps Judas from interrupting the present conversation between Jesus and his disciples. Immediately after Judas’ departure in 13:30, the narrator transitions with the phrase, “therefore, when he left, Jesus said, …” (13:31). Only after Judas departs can Jesus begin his speech to the disciples. Up to this point, Jesus has said nothing about his departure or his continuing presence with the disciples. Rather, from 13:18 until Judas’ departure in 13:30, the topic of conversation is Judas’ betrayal. Jesus’ testament to his disciples cannot proceed until Judas has left. Jesus’ expressions of love and intimacy and insight are not fit for the betrayer. Thus, Judas’ exit is a lynch pin in the scene. It removes from the stage a character whose continuing presence would interfere with Jesus’ intimacy with his disciples. And, in addition, it pushes the plot along, since this character has gone to prepare for future action, the arrest of Jesus. By performing these two functions, the exit draws a sharp line between the scene of the dinner (13:1-29) and the discourses that follow the dinner until 18:1 (Parsenios 2005:13-16).
334 Strachan (1941:277) notes, “The betrayal of Judas is the first step in the glorification of Jesus.”
other hand, the discussion is prefaced with the announcement that Judas is no longer privy to the matters of the family of faith, specifically this discourse and the ones that follow in chapters 14-16 (Kysar 1986:215; cf. Tenney 1976:205). That is, this statement forces the reader to recognise that Jesus now turns exclusively towards his followers (see Segovia 1985:471; Nicholson 1983:42; Brown 1970:560; Thomas 1991:62; Schnackenburg 1980:411, 1982:1; Bultmann 1971:111; Culpepper 1991:133-152).335

Immediately after the departure of the betrayer from the company of the disciples at Jesus’ request, the farewell discourse begins, with a solemn announcement of Jesus’ glorification, to address those who will in the long term be faithful to him (cf. Carson 1991:477; Segovia 1985:479; Bultmann 1971:111; Morris 1971:630; Orchard 1998:178; Keener 2003:920).336 The question must now be asked: Why does Jesus’ departure only come to pass when Judas has gone out? As Haenchen (1984:117) insists, it is because this surrender to death, this extreme love, does not apply to everyone, but only to those whom God and Jesus have chosen. God may indeed love the world – that does not imply that the whole world will be saved, even if God sacrifices himself for it in Jesus. John knows about the mystery that not everyone comes to faith. At the very moment Jesus is speaking these words, he is convinced that no one really believes in him, not even those who have been chosen. If Jesus treats them as though they do believe, that is in anticipation of the future when the Spirit will be given to those who are truly chosen (Haenchen 1984:117). Therefore John seems to stress at the outset that the farewell discourse is not for all people but for his specific group only.337 In other words, the eschatological presence of Jesus is applied only to the selected disciples (or believers). The statement in this verse thus functions literally as the setting (time and circumstance) for everything that is to

335 What emerges from this pericope is that Jesus has withdrawn from the public and he talks to his disciples (see above).
336 The going out of Judas from the supper room was specifically mentioned in 13:30 and now in colon 1.0 it is restated by the mention of οτε ου=ν εϖξη/λθεν at the outset of the discourse. In other words, Judas’ exit and Jesus’ proclamation in the following discourse are closely linked by means of words {οτε ου=ν εϖξη/λθεν (Moloney 1998:385; cf. Strachan 1941:271; Berg 1988:101-103).
337 This reaction of Jesus to the departure of Judas into the night is to be compared with his reaction to the arrival of the Greeks desiring to see him (cf. 12:20-32) (Beasley-Murray 1987:246).
Excursus: Passover in John's Gospel

The time of the occasion is before the Feast of the Passover. There are three occurrences of the Passover in John's Gospel while the Synoptics record only two. John situates Jesus’ two previous Passovers in the Book of Signs where he directs his works and sayings to a wider audience (see Yee 1989:67). The first reference of this feast is found in 2:13. This mention simply marks the first of three journeys of Jesus from Galilee to Jerusalem (cf. 5:1; 7:10) because Passover was one of the annual pilgrimage festivals, when thousands of faithful Jews travelled to Jerusalem (Culpepper 1998:132). The second mention of the Passover is found in 6:4. The Passover reference here is not just a time indication but is also intended to evoke the content of the narrative that follows. That is, the discourse of Jesus in John 6 must be read in the light of Passover lessons (Ridderbos 1997:210; Bruce 1983:142-143; cf. Schnackenburg 1980:14). This is the reason that, in John 5-10, the narrator organises the narrative in relation to the Jewish feasts. This means that, in this section, the narrative plots are unfolded with particular reference to the Jewish feasts and this seems the way in which the narrator presents the personality of Jesus. This implication obviously extends to John 11-12, in which John 5-12 belong to the same narrative unit (see “the macro structure of the Gospel of John”). In 11:55 the narrator tells that

+ην δὲ εὐγγύς το πασχα των ιουδαιων. The build-up to the Passover in John begins after the raising of Lazarus, as Jesus withdraws to a town in Ephraim (see Ball 1996:110-111). In 12:1, the narrator mentions that

∼ο ου=ν ιησου=φ προ η=λθεν ειϖϕ Βηθανιαν, in which

338 This cluster has only one colon thus it is impossible to consider reciprocal relationships of cola. The pivotal point of the cluster may be formulated as “the going out of Judas”.

339 To put it precisely, “the statement as to the nearness of the Passover (6:4), the identification of Jesus as the prophet who should come (cf. Deut. 18:15), and the discussion on the bread from heaven within the discourse (vv. 31-33) combine to indicate the hope of a second Exodus.” (Beasley-Murray 1987:88).

340 This includes the following: the Sabbath (5:9); the Passover (6:4); the Tabernacles (7:2) and the Dedication (10:22).

341 In this regard, Culpepper (1998:148) states, “At each festival Jesus does or says things that show that He is the fulfillment of what is celebrated during the particular festival. Therefore the analysis of each text must be done according to the reciprocal relations between the significance of the feast and the fulfillment of Jesus.” Moloney (1998:165) argues, “As both the ‘Jews’ and the Johannine Christians grappled with the loss of the Temple and the celebrations of the presence of God centred upon that sacred place, the author tells the story of Jesus’ presence at feasts of ‘the Jews’ to articulate the Johannine understanding of how God is present to God’s people.”
the passing of days in this chapter (cf. 12:12) keeps this sense of anticipation alive.

Now, as chapter 13 opens, the reader is told that προ. δε. τη/ϕ ε⎯ορτη/ϕ του/ πα,σχα (v. 1). 342 John places the last Passover significantly in the Book of Glory, which is directed primarily at those who have come to believe in Jesus (see Kysar 1986:90; Yee 1989:67). It has already been noted in the discussion of the first and second Passovers how John unfolds the theme of faith. This theme reaches its fullest exposition in the Book of Glory which begins thus: Now before the feast of the Passover, when Jesus knew that …. (John 13:1). The more general term εϖγγυ.ϕ used in 2:13 and in 6:4 is replaced by προ., a preposition that suggests a greater sense of imminence (Stibbe 1993:145). In the light of the countdown to the Passover (11:55; 12:1), and in the light of the description of his death on the day of preparation for the Passover (19:31), mention of the Passover propels the death of Jesus into view and ties in with what follows. As Witkamp (1990:48) remarks, the references to Passover function as sign-posts for Jesus’ death in John’s gospel (cf. 2:13; 11:55; 12:1; 13:1; 18:28, 39; 19:4). Closely associated with this idea is the acknowledgement that Jesus’ hour has come, in which the “hour” is loaded with theological content to describe Jesus’ mission in terms of incompleteness or completeness (cf. 2:4; 8:20; 12:23; 17:1) (Thomas 1991:80-81). Thus it is the time that God has fixed and Jesus fulfils by going to his death on the cross (see Delling 1964:678). 343

To put it precisely, in the first chapter of this Gospel, John the Baptist declares of Jesus

ι;δε ο⎯ αϖμνο.ϕ του/ θεου/ ο⎯ αι;ρων τη.ν α⎯μαρτι,αν του/ κο,σμου (1:29). This significant indication foreshadows the destiny of Jesus: giving His life for His people. The narrator reflects this aspect in the first sign (“the changing of water into wine,” 2:1-1) and more particularly in the fourth sign (“the feeding of the multitude,” 6:1-15). In the first sign, the narrator ends the story by revealing Jesus’ glory (cf.

342 The first phrase (προ. δε. τη/ϕ ε⎯ορτη/ϕ του/ πα,σχα) at once places the event at a particular time (before the Passover feast) and advances the Johannine interest in the Passover feast (cf. 2:13, 23; 6:4; 11:55; 12:1; 18:28, 39; 19:14, 31). In the light of the countdown to the Passover (11:55; 12:1), and in the light of the description of his death on the day of preparation for the Passover (19:31), mention of the Passover propels the death of Jesus into view and ties up with what follows. Closely associated with this idea is the acknowledgement that Jesus’ hour has come. The hour, which is one of the main temporal indicators, is loaded with theological content. In the Fourth Gospel nothing is thrust upon Jesus without the Father’s approval, and the ω[ρα is God’s appointed hour before whose coming no one can take any decisive salvation history (Thomas 1991:80).

343 Thus, as Culpepper (1998:203) believes, two systems of time are set in relation to each other in this introduction: the calendar of Jewish festivals (2:13, 23; 4:45; 5:1) and the approach of Jesus’ hour (2:4; 4:21, 23; 7:30; 8:20; 12:23, 27).
The glorification of Jesus implies His death and resurrection in this Gospel, that is, the atonement of Jesus. More specifically, at the fourth sign, the narrator clearly arranges the miraculous process to recall the Eucharistic association, even if one cannot be sure of every detail. This Eucharistic association of the narrative may enhance the author’s pivotal theological point. That is, this sign has a certain relationship with the Last Supper where Jesus is symbolically associated with the Passover Lamb, and may be linked to the Passover motif in 6:4. The “hour” of his death, resurrection, and ascension, the most complete manifestation of the Father’s glory, has now come. This hour is set during Passover. The mention of the betrayer, Judas Iscariot, in 13:2 links this third and final Passover with the second (6:70-71). Like Judas, those who reject Jesus will soon find him and bring about his dishonourable death. At this Passover, however, Jesus focuses upon those who believe in him by teaching them in an extended discourse the meaning of his “hour” and their own discipleship in faith (Yee 1989:67). The climax to the Passover theme is the citation of Scripture in 19:36 (cf. Exod. 12:46; Num. 9:12; Ps 34:20) where Jesus is seen as the Passover Lamb (Ball 1996:110-111). Thus Jesus is identified as “Lamb of God” who comes down from heaven and gives life to the world (cf. 6:25-58).

This assumption is eventually apparent when the reader learns that Jesus’ hour is the time for his departure from this world and his return to the Father, noted in the subsequent statement in 13:1 (Culpepper 1998:204). This first verse of John 13

344 It should be noted that the Book of Revelation, a work with many Christological affinities to the Fourth Gospel, presents Christ as a slain lamb (5:6), whose blood serves cultically as a ransom (5:9) (Grigsby 1995:76).
345 One detects further Passover symbolism in John’s account of Jesus’ death. Unlike the Synoptics, John records the detail that a sponge full of vinegar is held up to Jesus on a branch of hyssop (19:29). Hyssop is used in the Exodus story to sprinkle the doorposts with the blood of the lamb (Ex. 12:22). Moreover, only John narrates that Jesus’ legs were not broken, fulfilling the Scriptures regarding the Passover lamb that “you shall not break a bone of it” (Ex. 12:46). Finally, as the blood of the sacrificed lamb is poured out upon altar in the temple, so also is Jesus’ blood poured out (with water) from his pierced side (19:34). John’s story, however, does not end in death but in life. Jesus rises from the dead and makes his glorious appearances to his followers. Nevertheless, John does not ignore his theme of faith that is so characteristic of his previous Passover accounts and, indeed, his gospel as a whole (see Yee 1989:68). The faith demanded of the people and of his disciples is now demanded of us, the reader, as John will write in 20:30-31: Now Jesus did many other signs in the presence of his disciples, which are not written in this book. But these are written so that you may come to believe that Jesus is the Messiah, the Son of God, and that through believing you may have life in his name.
346 Kysar (1986:220) also says that the setting for the beginning of the first discourse would seem to be the departure of Jesus mentioned in 13:33. But that explicit setting is broadened by an implicit one – the sense of the absence of Jesus from the community and the delay of the Parousia. That is, in the original setting the departure of Jesus might have been the crucifixion, but in the church’s interpretation it has become the more general sense of abandonment that the Johannine Christians felt acutely in the schism with the synagogue. On the other hand, Du Rand (1991:68) states that the practice
makes clear that in the Johannine conception Jesus approached his death as an act of love for those who believed in him, and “the hour” in John’s Gospel implies the death of Jesus. It also makes clear that his death is a victory because it is a return to his Father. These two ideas of love for the disciples he is leaving behind and of a return to the Father intertwine to form the Leitmotif of the Book of Glory. The author stresses Jesus’ awareness of all that would happen to him, a theme repeated in v. 3 and in 18:4, 19:28 (Brown 1970:563; Caird 1968:265-277).  

3.3.1.2. The mutual doxology of Jesus and God (13:31b-32/cola 1.1-1.4)

Judas’ going out furnishes a double scope of implications, providing a telling example of the likely gains to be had from comparing exits in John to ancient dramatic technique (see Parsenios 2005:13-16). On the one hand, when Judas has gone out to perform his deed, Jesus is alone – apparently – with his faithful followers. From now on, as far as to the end of the farewell discourses, he speaks only to and with them (Haenchen 1984:117). On the other hand, Judas’ departure to betray Jesus sets in motion the final events that will bring Jesus to the cross (Burkett 1991:125; Orchard 1998:178; Segovia 1991:70; Köstenberger 2004:422). This indicates that Jesus himself has set in motion the process of his passion and death (Barnhart 1993:127). The immediate context of the statement in 13:31b-32 (cola 1.1-1.4) therefore indicates that the means of Jesus’ passion may be that he has identified the betrayer and has simultaneously sent him out to perform his deed, and in so doing, has caused

of foot washing always conveyed the idea of preparation in the early Mediterranean world. Thus, preparation for departure is one of the primary reasons for a farewell discourse.

the betrayal and thus the passion to become inevitable (Haenchen 1984:117; Segovia 1991:70; Tolmie 1995:201).

Jesus solemnly announces his glorification that νυ/ν επεξοξα,σθη ο⎯ υι⎯ο.ϕ του/ ασινθρωπο,που (13:31b/colon 1.1). The temporal reference νυ/ν, particularly in first place in the sentence, signals the “imminence” (cf. Liddell & Scott 1968:537). This word may involve Judas’ departure (Holwerda 1959:13), but only because it foreshadows the cross (17:5; cf. “now” in 12:27; 13:1) (Keener 2003:920; Schnackenburg 1982:49-50). The vocabulary of “glorification” (δοξα and δοξα,ειν) in this context, which is used five times in this

348 The second sub-unit (cola 1.1-1.4/13:31b-32) is demarcated as a separate unit, as the structure marker δοξα,ζω is dominantly featured (five times) (see Stibbe 1993:150). Jesus’ solemn announcement of his glorification is mentioned (colon 1.1), and the glorification of the Father as the result of Jesus’ glorification is provided (colon 1.2). This order is then reversed in the subsequent cola (cola 1.3-1.4). The mutual doxology is thus emphasised by means of this skilful arrangement (cf. Blomberg 2001:194; Brown 1970:610; Ford 1997:151). Besides, it is the only part of the discourse where Jesus is referred to in the third person, and as ο⎯ υι⎯ο.ϕ του/ ασινθρωπο,που (McCaffrey 1988:145). Thus the current demarcation is plausible.

349 There is a debate as to the mixture of tenses of the verb “to glorify” in 13:31b-32 (cola 1.1-1.4) – a string of four aorists followed by two futures (see Brown 1970:610; Schnackenburg 1982:52; Carson 1991:486-487; McCaffrey 1988:146; Zerwick 1993:329; Bultmann 1971:401; Dodd 1953:403; Bernard 1928b:524; Lindars 1972:426; Bruce 1983:293; Keener 2003:920-921; Burkett 1991:125; Segovia 1991:70-73). Some scholars see the reason for this complexity of time sequence as John’s perspective. For instance, according to Barrett (1978:375), “The true setting of these chapters is the Christian life of the end of the first century, but from time to time John, whose intention it is to bind the life of the church in his own age to the history upon which it was founded, consciously brings back his narrative to what is ostensibly its original setting, the night in which Jesus was betrayed.” Newman and Nida (1980:446) also argue that John writes not only from the time perspective of the actual historical setting, but also from that of the actual time of his writing, toward the end of the first century. That is, according to them, John narrates the historical situation, but at the same time he makes it relevant to his readers by introducing them into the time perspective. In this regard, Dodd (1953:403) explains the use of the aoristic tense here as follows: “The past tense of the verse (επεξοξα,σθη) is chosen because Jesus is in effect already accomplishing his passion. He has been devoted to death by vote of the Sanhedrin (11:47-53), and has accepted death by a voluntary act of self-oblation to the glory of God (12:28); and Judas is already on his way to perform his fatal act of treachery. In all that follows it is Christ crucified who speaks, the living Christ who has already passed through death, although dramatically he speaks on the eve of death.” However, as Carson (1991:487) correctly insists, verbs in the aorist tense, even when in the indicative mood, can be past-referring, present-referring, and even future-referring, as well as omnitemporal and atemporal. A consistent aspect-theory of the Greek verb finds little difficulty here. Future tenses commonly express expectation, whether or not there is a temporal factor demanded by the context. Even traditional approaches to Greek grammar can successfully navigate the difficulty, however, by arguing that these aorists are “proleptic” (i.e., future-referring!), viewing the decisive death/exaltation as virtually accomplished, since the decisive steps have already been taken and the redemptive purposes of God are secure. Carson (1991:483) believes that the future tense does not refer to some event at the end of time, for (John reports) the Father expects to glorify the Son “at once,” i.e., in the death/exaltation now impending.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textsuperscript{350} The noun occurs 19 times (compare Matt.: 8; Mark: 3; and Luke: 13), and the verb 23 times (compare Matt.: 4; Mark: 1; and Luke: 9) in this Gospel.
\item \textsuperscript{351} Since there is broad consensus about the link between glorification and the cross events (inclusive of the cross, resurrection and in some cases the ascension) in the various instances it is not necessary to argue that in detail again. See Van der Watt (2005b:468-472); Bratcher (1991:401-408); Wilkens (1998:340-341) for more discussion.
\item \textsuperscript{352} After his survey on the semantic potential of the term δοξα/δοξαζω, Van der Watt (2005b:467) remarks that there is a basic semantic potential of status, importance, weightiness, depending on the context in which δοξα/δοξαζω are used. According to him, this touches on important values in the times of Jesus, namely honour and shame (see Malina & Neyrey 1991:25-65, 1993:45; Pitt-Rivers 1977:1; Gilmore 1987:3; Collins 1995:101; Neyrey 1996:113-137; Caird 1968:265-277). It deals with (public) acknowledgement of what a person is or does. In John’s Gospel, according to Van der Watt (2005b:468; cf. Bratcher 1991:401-408; Caird 1968:265-277), the word group is mostly used in connection with the Father and Jesus and indeed with different shades of meaning: (a) God has δοξα (11:40). He is glorified by or in his Son (13:31, 32; 14:13; 17:1, 4), through the actions of people (15:8; 21:19) or by what is happening with them (11:4). He (9:24) or his name (12:28) is also glorified. (b) Jesus had δοξα before his incarnation (17:4, 22, 24). This glory is recognisable through his wonders (2:11). People (1:14) and even Isaiah could see his glory (12:41), since the Father (8:50, 54), the Paraclete (16:14) and the believers (17:10) glorify Jesus. Perhaps the most characteristic of the use of δοξαζω is the reference to the cross-events (7:39; 12:16; 23; 13:31; 32; 17:1, 4-5 – only the verb [δοξαζω] is used). Van der Watt (2005b:468; cf. Botha 1991c:1-40) thus properly argues that the word group δοξα/δοξαζω is not only used for the divine in this Gospel, but also in connection with humans. He says that people have, give and seek glory of their own (5:41, 44; 7:18; 12:43). He thus concludes that the use of δοξα/δοξαζω is not limited to a single type of context or object. For him, the different contexts play an important role in actualising the semantic potential of δοξα/δοξαζω in each case, allowing for the possibility of \textit{double entendre}.
\item \textsuperscript{353} According to Carson (1991:482), outside the New Testament the title is associated with glory (Dan. 7; 1 Enoch); within the Synoptics, the title is as frequently associated with suffering. In John’s Gospel, according to him, the two are dramatically brought together (see Brown 1970:611). Ridderbos (1997:473) notes that the title “the Son of God” refers to Christ’s (pre-existent) personal relation to God (cf. 1:51), but “the Son of Man” is associated with the earthly suffering of Jesus. However, according to Ridderbos, the change from one to the other of the two titles of majesty does not create tension (cf., e.g., 13:31 with 17:1ff.). For a full discussion on this topic, see Burkett (1991).
\item \textsuperscript{354} The glorification of Christ is connected with what appears to men as the very opposite of glory. Jesus is looking to the cross as he speaks of glory (see Morris 1971:631).
\end{itemize}
seen below, Jesus comments, εἰς τιμήν μεθ γνώσιν (v. 33a/colon 1.6), indicating once more that the time of departure/death is close (see Orchard 1998:178). Thus John emphasises here that the glorification of Jesus is impending and that his glorification is not that of an earthly triumph, but that of the passion (cf. Haenchen 1984:117; Beasley-Murray 1987:246; Barrett 1978:376; Segovia 1985:480; Keener 2003:920-921; Culpepper 1991:133-152; Collins 1995:100-109; Bratcher 1991:401-408).

The following remark by Jesus, in 13:31c (colon 1.2), indicates that glorification of the Son results in the glorification of the Father (και ο θεοφ εδοξασθη εν αυτω/). That is, Jesus declares that the Son of Man has been glorified and through it God has been glorified. Jesus then, in the subsequent verse (v. 32/cola 1.3-1.4), reverses this order: εις θεοφ εδοξασθη εν αυτω/(και ο θεοφ δοξασε αυτον εν αυτω/ (και ευθυφ δοξασε αυτον) (και ευσθοφ). The mutual doxology is thus emphasised by means of this skilful

355 Stibbe (see 1993:150-151) states that the theme of glorification is linked with the death of Jesus, a death referred to as “the lifting up” of the Son of Man (with the sense of exaltation as well as elevation) and concomitantly as the moment of revelation (8:28). According to him, these themes are given full expression in 13:31-33.

356 Schnackenburg (1982:49) remarks that the statement “now has the Son of Man been glorified, and God in him” echoes the heavenly voice in 12:28. Hence, for John’s eyes of faith, Jesus’ darkest hour is transformed into the hour of his glorification (cf. Köstenberger 2004:422).

357 In view of the parallelism in the successive clauses of verse 31 that states the glorification of God in Jesus, according to Metzger (1994:206), a majority of the Committee of United Bible Society (“the UBS committee” hereafter) preferred to adopt the reading of P66 a B 2148 syh, pal ms cop m, bo, ach, fay, and to use the smooth breathing on ου/. Metzger (see Morris 1971:631) also points out, “Despite what appears to be Hellenistic usage, a minority of the UBS committee strongly preferred to use the rough breathing on ου/.” The phrase ου/ probably refers to the Father, i.e., “in God the Father himself”; the entire clause has much the same force as 17:5 (Carson 1991:483). The glory achieved by Jesus in his death on the cross is sealed by his exaltation to the glory that he had with the Father before the world was (17:5) (Barrett 1978:376; see Brown 1970:606).

358 The reference ευσθοφ at the end of 13:32, which as reference to 13:30 connecting Jesus’ glorification with Judas’ betrayal, signals the imminence of the crucifixion-resurrection (cf. v. 33 below) and implies perhaps that, as distinct from some future eschatology, the glorification of Christ need not be postponed until the Parousia but occurs on Good Friday and Easter (Kysar 1986:216; cf. Barrett 1978:376; Köstenberger 2004:422).

359 It is difficult to decide whether εις θεοφ εδοξασθη εν αυτω is a secondary intrusion into such witnesses as a A C K ΔΘ

The cross events are evoked through the use of “glory.” Glorification should be understood in the light of the events initiated by the cross and the cross events should be understood in the light of glorification (Van der Watt 2005b:472). Jesus does not seek his own honour and “glory,” but according to the virtue of righteousness

\[ \Psi j^{13} 28 \text{ } 33 \text{ } 565 \text{ } 700 \text{ } 892, \text{ followed by the Textus Receptus (cf. Barrett 1978:376). However, according to him, the absence of the words can be accounted for either as the result of (a) transcripthonal oversight because of homoioteleuton (εϖν αυϖτω/|| εϖν αυϖτω/) or (b) deliberate deletion because of supposed redundancy of thought (yet there is a logical connection rightly expressed between the earlier and subsequent glorification, and the step-parallelism is characteristically Johannine) (cf. Beasley-Murray 1987:242; Bruce 1983:293). Faced with this dilemma a majority of the UBS committee preferred to retain the words in the text but to enclose them within square brackets. This decision seems to be correct in terms of the fact that the phrase repeats the sense of v. 31c and makes the glorification reciprocal (see Bernard 1928b:525; Beasley-Murray 1987:242). Kysar (1986:216) in this regard underscores that its loss is more easily imagined than its addition. Brown (1970:606) also argues that it is easier to explain why it may have been lost than why it would have been added. Carson (1991:483; also see Bruce 1983:293) consents that the clause is probably authentic, saying that even if omission were favoured some such clause as this must be understood to make sense of the flow of the passage. Bernard, Lagrange and Bultmann are among those who accept the clause.

In this regard, Carson (1991:483) mentions, “If God is glorified in the Son, it is no less true to say that God will glorify the Son in himself.” According to Schnackenburg (1980:323), the mutual glorification of the Father and the Son is a dominant theme in Johannine Christology. John emphasises this issue in this passage again, which is evident from the semantic relationships within this sub-unit, as follows: the semantic relationship between cola 1.3 and 1.4 is an additive equivalent relationship. The mutual doxology of the Father and the Son is emphasised by means of the statement in these two cola (cf. Blomberg 2001:194; Brown 1970:610). To this colon 1.2 is linked by means of a logical condition-result semantic relationship. These three cola are linked to colon 1.1 by means of a logical reason-result semantic relationship.

In this passage, according to Morris (1971:631-632), Jesus is expressing three certainties (cf.): the first is that God is glorified in Jesus. The second is that God will glorify Jesus in himself. This appears to be that the resurrection will follow the crucifixion, and that it will be the Father’s seal on the work of the Son. The third is that God will do this without delay. Jesus is looking into the immediate future, not discussing a remote prospect.

Ridderbos (1997:387) states, “It is in the sending of the Son that the glory of God, that is, God’s reality in the power and majesty of his presence, manifests itself (cf. 13:31; 14:13; 17:4), and that constitutes the all-controlling motive of the miracle that now follows.” John avoids references to the suffering of Jesus, as Synoptists did (cf. Mark 14:32-45 par.; Luke 22:44), and does not want to refer to the process of suffering in a negative way. He interpreted the shameful and painful side of the cross events in terms of glory (Van der Watt 2005b:477).
seeks what rightfully belongs to his Patron Father who sent him. He is not, then, acting out of love of honour or ambition (Neyrey 1996:119). Jesus has glorified the Father by submitting to the cross, and the Father will turn Jesus’ death into a glorification of the Son by exalting him right away (ευϖθυ.ϕ). Indeed, the Father delights in granting the Son’s requests because the Son always pleased the Father (8:29; 11:42) (Keener 2003:921). God is glorified in Jesus’ temporal obedience, sacrifice, death, resurrection and exaltation – one event; Jesus is glorified in the same event, in the eternal presence and essence of his heavenly Father, partly because by this event he re-enters the glory he had with the Father before the Word became incarnate (1:14), before the world began (17:5) (Carson 1991:483).365

The concept of the mutual doxology can be painstakingly understood in the context of the first century Mediterranean world. In first century Mediterranean societies, honour was the value of a person in his own eyes, but also in the eyes of his society. It was his estimation of his own worth, his claim to pride, but also the acknowledgement of that claim, his excellence recognised by society, his right to pride (Pitt-Rivers 1977:1; Malina 1993:45; see Gilmore 1987:3; Collins 1995:101). By this one means that people presented themselves to their peers and neighbours as worthy. This might be an individual claiming respect because of some prowess or benefaction or a family claiming for its offspring the same regard in which the family itself was held. Yet claims meant nothing unless acknowledged by the public; for honour came down precisely to this public grant of worth and respect. If claims were publicly acknowledged, then a grant of honour was bestowed. Should claims be rejected or challenged, shame became a possibility. Shame refers to the denial of respect and worth or to its loss (Neyrey 1996:107-124). How does one get public respect and

365 Brown (1970:606) remarks that the passion, death, resurrection, and ascension are looked on as one brief action (also the “only a little longer” of verse 33) leading to future glory in the Father’s presence. Morris (1971:631) expresses it this way: “The two are one in the essential purpose of saving mankind. The glory of Christ as he stoops to save mankind is the glory of the Father whose will he is doing. The cross shows us the heart of God as well as that of Christ.” Kysar (1986:216) asserts the reference of θεο.ϕ εϖδοξα,σθη αυϖτο.ν εϖν αυϖτω/| in 13:31c (colon 1.2) as God’s powerful and loving presence that is manifested in Jesus’ death. He proposes that glorification in the cross is found in the divine love that is expressed there (cf. Haenchen 1984:117). Moloney (1998:385) notes, “On the cross Jesus is glorified, but his death will also reveal the glory of God.” He also mentions, “Crucial to Jesus’ self-gift in love is his being ‘lifted up’ to make God known (cf. 3:14; 8:28) and to draw everyone to himself (12:32-33).”
worth? According to Malina (2001:52), honour is ascribed or acquired, with the following description: “Ascribed honour befalls or happens to a person passively through birth, family connections, or endowment by notable persons of power. Acquired honour is honour actively sought and garnered most often at the expense of one’s equals in the social context of challenge and response.” Although the technical term “honour” does not occur in this passage, equivalent expressions focus the challenge-riposte dynamics in terms of assessing Jesus’ glory earlier in the narrative (see Van der Watt 2005b:468-472; Bratcher 1991:401-408). In John 7:18, Jesus himself articulated a key principle in the game of honour:

ο⎯ αϖφς ε⎯αυτου/ λαλω/ν τη.ν δο,ξαν τη.ν εσιδι,αν ζητει/∴ ο⎯ δε. ζητω/ν τη.ν δ
ο,ξαν του/

The term “glory” (δο,ξα) is often and correctly translated as reputation or fame; it means “public opinion” quite simply, that is, “honour” (Neyrey 1996:119; see Van der Watt 2005b:466-467; Caird 1968:265-277).

Therefore, as Keener (2003:920) argues, God had promised to glorify his own name (12:28), but his glory is inseparable from the glory of his Son (13:31-32; cf. 11:4, 40; 12:41; 14:13; 17:1, 5, 22, 24). Indeed, Jesus will share the honour of God (his Father). It was common ancient social practice that all the members of the family shared the honour of the family, since individuals were seen as part of groups and were treated accordingly (Van der Watt 2000:332). Thus the Father will also give honour to those who serve Jesus. If the father gives the honour, the family gives honour. In the context of the dying seed that produces many other seeds, the person who sacrifices his or her earthly existence will receive eternal life (12:25), which implies that the Father will give that person honour (12:26). Living as a member of the family of God in obedient service will result in honour from the Father of the family (Van der Watt 2000:332). Therefore, although the appointed “hour” for the Son of Man to depart has finally arrived, the disciples do not need to be troubled in their hearts (cf. 14:1). They

366 For δο,ξα/glory as a synonym of honour, see Rom. 16:25-27; Eph. 3:20-21; Jude 24-25; 2 Peter 3:18.
367 A detailed discussion of this imagery will be given below.
are members of the family of God and accordingly will share this glory. Furthermore, this will lead to the experience of heavenly life, the ongoing presence of the risen Jesus. In other words, the sharing of the honour among the family of God will lead to the experience of heavenly life, the ongoing presence of the risen Jesus. The death of Jesus on the cross thus opens this new level of life to the believers (see Segovia 1985:479; Stibbe 1993:150; Schnackenburg 1982:49-52; Lightfoot 1956:275; Witherington III 1995:247-248; Morrison 2005:598-603; Bratcher 1991:401-408; Caird 1968:265-277; Collins 1995:100-109).368

Jesus’ self-gift in love is his being “lifted up” to make God known (cf. 3:14; 8:28) and to draw everyone to himself (cf. 12:32-33). God would be glorified in Jesus, hence would glorify Jesus, and would do so “immediately” (ευσθε.φ). People would see that Jesus really is doing the works of the Father (5:19ff.) and the Father would glorify Jesus. The presence of God becomes powerful through the glorification of Jesus. Thus the cross events cannot be regarded as the “death”: rather, they display the saving sovereignty of God, God’s dawning kingdom (Carson 1991:483). Indeed, consistent with the author’s use of the word “δο,ξα” to refer to revelation (cf. 1:14; 2:11; 5:44; 7:18; 11:4, 40; 12:41, 43), as the “δο,ξα” of God was made visible at Sinai, the cross is the time and place where God will be revealed (Moloney 1998:385).

3.3.1.3. The temporary separation of Jesus from his disciples owing to his impending departure (13:33/cola 1.5-1.8)

368 Therefore the phrase in these two verses merits a special word of attention. It stands apart, even within this introduction. Moreover, it is important for an understanding of the discourse as a whole and the text in particular (McCaffrey 1988:145).
Jesus’ glorification is an appropriate opening theme for the farewell discourse explaining his “hour.” This glorification involves his return to his Father and, therefore, his departure from his disciples (Van der Watt 2005b:468; cf. Brown 1970:609; Keener 2003:920-923; Orchard 1998:178; Bruce 1983:293). It has been indicated that the glory of Jesus will eventually lead to the experience of heavenly life, the ongoing presence of the risen Jesus in and among them. However, Jesus now mentions that he will stay with them only “a little longer” and they will seek him but not find him because they cannot follow where Jesus is going. How can the paradigmatic readers understand this contradictory statement? The suggestion will be made that, although the third sub-unit (cola 1.5-1.8/13:33) can be regarded as a separate unit from the previous verses since there is a shift in focus from colon 1.5 onwards (see McCaffrey 1988:146), the present verse is closely related to the previous one in terms of the immediate and practical consequences of Jesus’ departure for his disciples. To put it differently, explicit mention of Jesus’ impending glorification in the above verses prompts Jesus to embark on one of the dominant themes of the discourse: his concern to prepare his disciples for his departure (Carson 1991:483; Ashton 1991:448-449; Segovia 1985:479). The topic that Jesus chooses in this sub-section is the temporary separation from his disciples owing to his impending departure (Ridderbos 1997:422; Köstenberger 2004:422).


369 This word is an address of endearment found only here in this Gospel but seven times in 1 John by the same author when he addresses his reader (2:1, 12, 28; 3:7, 18; 4:4; 5:21; see Carson 1991:485; Morris 1971:632). Segovia (1982) supposes that its occurrence here might reflect the fact that the final discourse of John’s Gospel underwent some revision at the hand of the author of 1 John. However, Brown (1970:607) claims that no definitive answer is possible. According to him, there is only evidence that a Jewish teacher might well address his disciples as “children” (StB II:559). He goes on to argue that, moreover, in the synoptic Gospels, Mark 10:24 records that Jesus addressed his followers with what is rendered in the Greek by the cognate τεκνα (instead of the Johannine diminutive τεκνια).
genre whose scenario features the departure of a parent (see Collins 2001:167; Ashton 1991:448-449). According to Brown (1970:611), “Examples of particular interest in view of the context in John are found in the Testaments of the XII Patriarchs, a Jewish work with Christian interpolations, or perhaps a Christian work dependent on Jewish sources. ‘My children, beware of hatred … for hatred is not willing to hear the words of God’s commandments concerning the love of one’s neighbour’ (Gad iv 1-2). ‘Now, my children, let each one of you love his brother …… loving one another’ (Gad vi 1)” (see also T. Zebulun v 1, viii 5; Joseph xvii 1-2; Issachar vii 6-7; Simeon iv 7). However, although this is a form of address in formal speech, it is also true that the disciples (as well as contemporary readers) are certainly permitted to hear an assertion of deep emotional attachment, especially in view of this final farewell and departure (Ridderbos 1997:474; cf. Newman & Nida 1980:448).370 As such it is charged with affection and tenderness. It softens the harsh announcement of departure in the same verse (McCaffrey 1988:146).371

Jesus mentions that ε;τι μικρο.ν 372 μεθς υ⎯μω/ν ειϖμι 373 (colon 1.6). This is followed by a period of absence (ζητη,σετε,) (colon 1.7). The author then announces a parallel situation of the Jews and the disciples: και. καθω.ϕ ει=πον του/φ ςΙουδαι,οιϕ ο[τι ο[που εϖγω. υ⎯μει/ϕ ουϖ δ υ,νασθε εϖλθει/ν( και. υ⎯μι/ν λε,γω α;ρτι (colon 1.8). The statement in this verse contains an explicit quotation (McCaffrey 1988:147; cf. Moloney 1998:385; Brown 1970:611; Bruce 1983:293; Segovia 1991:74). It directly evokes 7:33-34 and 8:21 where Jesus was warning the Jews that they would not find him because they did not believe in him. A comparison of these texts will help to explain the deeper spiritual import of the journey of Jesus referred to in 13:33 and 14:2-3; and reveal the subtlety and delicacy with which the author constructs 13:33. There are clear verbal links between all three texts (13:33; 7:33-34; 8:21-22) (see McCaffrey 1988:147-148).

and in Matthew 18:3 and 19:4 Jesus admonishes the disciples to become like little children (cf. Blomberg 2001:194).

370 Moloney (1998:385) also notes that Jesus’ unconditional love for his failing disciples is captured by his caring address of τεκνι,α.

371 This is a standard title for disciples in John’s circle (see 1 John 2:1; 12, 28; 3:7, 18; 4:4; 5:21).

372 For “μικρο.ν” cf. 7:33 and 12:35 as well as 14:19 and 16:16-17 below (see Barrett 1978:376; Morris 1971:632).
Besides, the phrase ὀπου εἰπω. ὑπαγω ὑμει/φ ουδενας ελθειν/ν of 8:21-22 (2x) is repeated verbatim in 13:33, and initiates the development of the dialogue leading up to 14:2-3. There the dialogue is a direct variation of the same theme. So, too, the variation of the phrase ὀπου εἰπω. γεγαγω. of 8:21-22 (2x) that the reader finds in the ὀπου εἰπω. γεγαγω. of 7:34 (also in 7:36) is again repeated verbatim in 14:2-3. John thus shows that the situation of the disciples after Jesus’ departure is explicitly likened to that of the Jews in general: these same consequences apply to both groups (Segovia 1985:479; see Schnackenburg 1982:52; Keener 2003:921-923). The disciples are indeed told that they will find themselves in a similar position, and they too are puzzled, but there the similarity ends (Beasley-Murray 1987:246; Brown 1970:612; Dodd 1953:403-404; Culpepper 1991:133-152).

The comparison of the present passage with 7:33-34 and 8:21 indicates, however, that in the former passages Jesus was warning the Jews that they would not find him because they did not believe in him; but in the present passage the same words spoken to his disciples are a preparation for his departure and return. That is, the similarity of 13:33 to 7:33-34 and 8:21 is not in the fact that all are warnings, but in the misunderstanding that greets both the promise of 13:33 and the warning of 7:33-34 and 8:21 (cf. 16:4ff.). Although the disciples are told that their master is leaving them and, like the Jews (that is, unbelievers), they will not be able to come where he is going, Jesus does not say that the disciples do no better than the Jews and that their faith and knowledge are both inadequate nor that they are still of this world (cf. Barrett 1978:376; Keener 2003:923; Moloney 1998:385; Segovia 1985:479; Marrow 2002:90-102). To put the matter another way, although Jesus’ followers must come to grips with his departure, the tone of this announcement to them is vastly different from the two passages where the Jews are informed that they will not be able to find

---

373 Jesus proceeds to unfold a little more of the meaning of the preceding words (Morris 1971:632).
374 The idea that verse 33 is also a warning because it prepares for the prediction of Peter’s denial in 13:36-38 is not correct. The salutation, “my little children,” gives the verse a tone of tenderness; and certainly Jesus’ words in 13:36 interpret the statement of 13:33 as a promise of ultimate happiness (“you will follow me later”) (Brown 1970:612).
him (7:34) and they will die in their sin (8:21) respectively (Carson 1991:483). In fact, neither of these consequences applies to the disciples (Culpepper 1998:208; see Keener 2003:923; Ashton 1991:448-452). In this statement Jesus does not say that the disciples will not be able to find him (cf. 7:34) or that they will die in their sin (cf. 8:21). The disciples could not yet follow Jesus because they are not yet prepared to die; but they would follow him in death later (13:36-38; cf. 21:18-19). Jesus had been “with” them for a time (12:8, 35; 14:9; 16:4); in contrast to his enemies, however, who would never find him, his disciples would find him in a new way when he returned – that is, he would be with them in a new way (Keener 2003:923).

Furthermore, the discourse that follows sets out promises that are the reverse of those warnings (Beasley-Murray 1987:246-247; cf. Dodd 1953:403-404): Peter is told that

375 Jesus is just affirming that the disciples as they are go with Jesus neither to death nor to the glory beyond (Morris 1971:632).
376 Mkuzhyil (1987:328) notes: There are a number of similarities between Jesus’ words to the Jews and to the disciples (as he himself explicitly reminds the latter: “as I said to the Jews…..” 13:33): 1) he is going to be with them only a little while (7:33; 13:33; 16:16); 2) for he is about to go away (to the one who sent him) (7:33; 8:21; 13:33); 4) but where he is going they cannot come (7:34; 8:21; 13:33). There are also some remarkable differences: 1) whereas Jesus’ statements about his going away in John 7-8 are made in the context of a controversy with the unbelieving Jews, his words to the disciples are spoken in the context of bidding farewell to his own, which is indicated by the endearing way he addresses them as “little children” (13:33); 2) whereas he tells the Jews that, in spite of their search for him, they will not find him (7:34) and that they will die in their sin (of unbelief) (8:21); in the case of the disciples he limits the impossibility of following him to the present moment and affirms the future possibility (13:36). In fact, at 16:16 he promises them that after a short interval of absence they will see him again (cf. also 14:3). The reactions of the Jews and those of the disciples to Jesus’ enigmatic words about his departure are also quite different. While both the groups are puzzled by his words (7:36; 8:22; 16:17-18), the Jews (mis)understand them or wonder whether he plans to go and teach the Diaspora Jews (7:35) or to commit suicide (8:22), whereas the disciples fail to understand (but do not misunderstand) their master’s mysterious words (13:36; 16:17-18; cf. also 14:4). Again, while Jesus leaves the unbelieving Jews in their misunderstanding, he explains the enigma to his receptive disciples in two parallel discourses (14:1-7; 16:19-29): his departure is a return to his Father (14:2; 16:28) to prepare a place for them in his home (14:2) and to send them another Paraclete (16:7). Furthermore, Jesus promises the disciples that he will come back to them (14:3, 18; 16:22). This refers not only to his post-Resurrectional appearance to them (cf. 20:19; 20:26; cf. also the disciples’ joy at seeing the risen Jesus at 20:20 as he had foretold at 16:22) but also to his coming to them and entering into a deeper communion with them (“and I will take you to myself”, 14:3) in and through the Spirit (14:16-17, 25-26; 15:26-27; 16:7-15; 20:22) and with the Father (14:23).
377 Semantic relations of the statement also make clear that the situation of the disciples is different from that of the Jews. That is, the passage ζητησετε με (colon 1.7) is linked to the passage και κηθοσω ειπον των άνω οθονοι οτι οπου εγω υπαγω υμιν λεγω αρτι (colon 1.8) by means of a dyadic contrastive semantic relationship and to this the passage ετι μικρον μεθυ υ μων εισαχ (colon 1.6) is linked by means of a qualificational character setting
although he cannot follow Jesus now, one day he will (13:36); the whole disciple group is assured that the departure of Jesus has in view the goal of their being with him in the Father’s house forever (14:2-3); they will shortly see him again, for he will live, and so will they (14:19); this experience of the Easter revelation is to be extended to all who believe (14:21), which will be no less than an anticipation of the presence of Jesus in the Parousia (14:23) (Carson 1991:483; Schnackenburg 1982:52-53; Brown 1970:611-612; Barrett 1978:376; Morris 1971:632; Keener 2003:923; Tenney 1976:211; Segovia 1991:74-75). Indeed, Jesus and the Father will subsequently come to them (cf. 14:23). Only a very few hours now separate him from his death, and an only slightly shorter interval from his reunion with his own (Haenchen 1984:117).

3.3.1.4. The commandment of mutual love (13:34-35/cola 1.9-1.11)

The disciples cannot accompany Jesus as he leaves this life. Thus, for the direction of their life in this new situation (a messianic community living between the advents of the Messiah) Jesus leaves a commandment379 (Barrett 1978:377; Brown 1970:612;)

(time and circumstance) relationship (see above). Thus it is indicated that the disciples cannot come where Jesus is going but “for a short period”.

378 The departure mentioned here might refer either to Jesus’ death or to his ascension. Both departures are addressed in the chapters that follow (Carson 1991:483; Barrett 1978:376; Brown 1970:611; Morris 1971:632). Indeed, as Kysar (1986:216) argues, the reference “υπαγω” (cf. 7:33) in this verse captures the whole process of Jesus’ departure, the crucifixion-resurrection-ascension by which Jesus moves into the divine realm. This word is relatively more common in the last discourses than in the rest of the Gospel (Barrett 1978:376).

379 The term ἐντολή, often in the plural form, means “order”, “commission”, “command” and the usual sense is the command of a king, official or general (Schrenk 1964:545; cf. Louw & Nida
Keener 2003:923-927). Since the theme of these verses is further elaborated in 15:9-16, many scholars have argued that its presence here is the result of an awkward bit of redactional manipulation (see Schnackenburg 1982:53). On the contrary, however, it makes perfectly good sense (see Beasley-Murray 1987:247; Keener 2003:923; Bruce 1983:294). Carson (1991:483) explains this accord as follows: “Having announced his departure, and having insisted that his disciples cannot now come with him (13:33), Jesus begins to lay out what he expects of them while he is away. Unfortunately, they still cannot get over the unambiguous insistence that Jesus’ departure is imminent, and so Peter interrupts and presses the point (13:36-38). This in turn prompts Jesus to embark on an extended and comforting explanation regarding his departure, before returning to more detailed descriptions of what is expected of them, and what is promised to them, during the time he is absent from them.” Keener (2003:923) also argues that this commandment is relevant to the context, for it includes readiness to die: to love as he did would require laying down their lives for one another (13:34). The foot washing (13:3-10) illustrated this love, because it foreshadowed the salvific work of the Suffering Servant (13:1-2, 31-38). The commandment also articulated how believers could represent the most vital aspect of Jesus' presence among themselves after his departure: by loving one another, they would continue to experience his love. Therefore there is no reason to consider it to be an editorial intrusion (see Beasley-Murray 1987:247).  

The commandment of Jesus is described as καινο,φ, which is in an emphatic...
position in the Greek (Morris 1971:632; Schnackenburg 1982:53-55; cf. Collins 1990:252-253; Keener 2003:923-927; Rensberger 1992:297-313; Tolmie 1995:201). However, this new command is not “new” because nothing like it had ever been said before (Carson 1991:484). The Mosaic covenant had mandated two love commandments (see Blomberg 2001:194; Brown 1970:613; Nissen 1999a:201-203; Neudecker 1992:496-517): “You shall love the LORD your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your might” (Deut. 6:5); “You shall not take vengeance or bear a grudge against any of your people, but you shall love your neighbour as yourself: I am the LORD” (Lev. 19:18). Jesus taught that all the law and the prophets were summed up in these two commands (Mark 12:28-33; cf. Rom. 13:8-10; Gal. 5:14). John himself can elsewhere recognise that in certain respects this commandment is not new at all (cf. 1 John 2:7-8). Why, then, should he here report that it is “new” (Carson 1991:484)? In what sense is the commandment to love one another a “new commandment” (see Brown 1970:613; Schrage 1996:314-317; Durand 1981:171-175; Furnish 1973:138; Segovia 1991:76; Culpepper 1991:133-152)?

Brown (1970:614) is correct in pointing out that the newness of the commandment of love is really related to the theme of covenant at the Last Supper – the “new commandment” of John 13:34 is the basic stipulation of the “new covenant” of Luke 22:20. According to him, both expressions reflect the early Christian understanding that in Jesus and his followers the dream of Jeremiah was fulfilled (31:31-34): “The days are surely coming, says the LORD, when I will make a new covenant with the house of Israel and the house of Judah.” (For Jeremiah this was more a renewed covenant than a totally new covenant, and this was probably the earliest Christian interpretation as well, with emphasis on the radical and eschatological nature of the renewal.) Brown continues that this new covenant was to be interiorised and to be marked by the people’s intimate contact with God and knowledge of him – a

---

383 Brown (1970:613-614) notes that although some scholars have often sought to explain the newness by contrast with the Old Testament attitude toward love of one’s neighbour, such a contrast with the Old Testament casts little light on the newness of the commandment to love in John. Schnackenburg (1982:54) also mentions that the newness in the New Testament generally and the Johannine writings in particular cannot be explained simply as an antithesis to the Old Testament to love one’s neighbour (see Lev 19:18) and the interpretation of that commandment in Judaism. He is convinced that there is no support for this.
knowledge that is the equivalent of love and is a covenantal virtue. The themes of intimacy, indwelling, and mutual knowledge run through the farewell discourse. Therefore, what is “new” about this commandment is not found in the injunction itself but in the source and function of the love, wherein the model and source of love is Jesus’ death, the supreme expression of love (cf. 15:13) (see Nissen 1999a:201-203; Collins 1990:252-253; Rensberger 1992:297-313; Ford 1997:151; Tolmie 1995:74; Du Rand 1981:171-175; Kysar 1986:217; Keener 2003:923-927; Barnhart 1993:122; Bruce 1983:294; Segovia 1991:75-77l; Hoskyns 1947:451).

The new commandment is “to love one another” (αἈγαπᾶτε αλληλου). Words for “love” occur twelve times in John 1-12 and forty-five times in John 13-17 (Köstenerberger 2004:423). Indeed, in the course of the whole passage in the farewell discourses the love theme is predominant, mentioned repeatedly with different foci – no less than sixteen times to be exact: 13:34, 35; 14:15, 21, 23, 24, 31; 15:9, 10, 12, 13, 17; 16:27; 17:23, 24, 26 – with some of the references a verbatim or an almost verbatim repetition of a former (Rousseau 2003:156). Love forms a pivot within familial relations in this Gospel (Van der Watt 2000:304; Collins 1990:217f.; Malherbe 1995:121). Indeed, it forms the focus in the ethics of John (Houlden

384 Carson (1991:484; cf. Morris 1971:633-634; see Strachan 1941:278-279) also notes that its newness is bound up not only with the new standard (καθωμερινοὶπνευματικοὶμυθος) but also with the new order it both mandates and exemplifies. Like Brown, he believes that there is an indirect allusion to the new covenant that was inaugurated at the Last Supper (I Co. 11:25; cf. Luke 22:20), the new covenant that promised the transformation of heart and mind (Jer, 31:29-34; Ezk. 36:24-26). He claims, “Whether or not that allusion can be sustained, this commandment is presented as the marching order for the newly gathering messianic community, brought into existence by the redemption long purposed by God himself (cf. vv. 31-32).” Thus, according to him, “It is just not that the standard is Christ and his love; more, it is a command designed to reflect the relationship of love that exists between the Father and the Son (cf. 8:29; 10:18; 12:49-50; 14:31; 15:10), designed to bring about amongst the members of the nascent messianic community the kind of unity that characterizes Jesus and his Father (cf. John 17).” Beasley-Murray (1987:247) is also of the opinion that its newness would appear to consist in its being the Law of the new order, brought about by the redemptive power of God in and through Christ, intimated in vv. 31-32. According to him, the establishment of the new covenant is integral to the traditions of the Last Supper (cf. Mark 14:24ff.), which were perpetually remembered in the celebrations of the Lord’s Supper, and therefore will have been assumed in this record of the last discourse of Jesus. He continues that the commands of the law were issued to Israel as their part in God’s covenant with them, involving their response to his taking them to be his people whom he had “redeemed” from the slavery of Egypt (cf. Exod. 19:3-6). So, according to him, the “new command” may be viewed as the obligation of the people of the new covenant in response to the redemptive act of God and his gracious election that made them his new people.

385 While the Greek word αἈγαπᾶω is used here for love, the author could as easily have used φιλεω without a change of meaning (e.g., 16:27) (see Kysar 1986:217).
1973:36; Brown 1966:497; Furnish 1973:135; Wendland 1975:109; Segovia 1991:76; Keener 2003:923-924; Tolmie 1995:201). The vocabulary of love is a general term to indicate affection and an intimate relation (of different kinds, ranging from the physical to the intimately spiritual) between various people like man and wife (cf. Col 3:19; Eph 5:25, 28), friends (cf. 11:3, 5, 11, 36; 15:13-15), and lovers (cf. *Phaedrus*). The terminology for love in this context is specifically used in familial contexts, so that it can be said that familial love is intended. Furthermore, love functions within the metaphorical context of familial relations. This indicates its metaphorical status (Van der Watt 2000:304). Love will form the norm of their attitude and action (Roloff 1993:302; cf. Schrage 1982:301; Tolmie 1995:127).


---

386 See the discussion between Phaedrus and Socrates in Plato’s *Phaedrus* where Lysias’ speech on homosexual love is discussed.

387 The Johannine commandment is hardly novel, but it is “new” precisely because of the new situation Jesus has inaugurated. The basis is not Scripture but Christ’s own love signed in the addition, “as I have loved you”. The new commandment rests on a new reality: the new imperative is based on a new indicative, the love of God in Christ and the love of Christ in his own (Nissen 1999a:202-203; see Furnish 1973:138). Indeed, as Ridderbos (1997:476) mentions, in Jesus’ love the commandment comes into play in a new salvation-historical way and receives a new grounding and, by his Spirit, a new possibility of fulfilment and, in content, a characteristic definition.

388 13:34a (colon 1.9) is an exhortation of mutual love and 13:34b (colon 1.10) is to provide a practical method on how to love. As has been mentioned above, these two cola are perhaps linked by means of a substance generic-specific semantic relationship.

389 As Keener (2003:924) argues, John’s terms of personal comparison, particularly καθωσφηϖγα underline the force of the demand; it applies both to Jesus’ relationship with his Father (5:23; 12:50), and to that of his disciples with himself (15:12; 17:14), the latter often modelled after Jesus’ relationship with his Father (6:57; 10:15; 15:9-10; 17:18, 21, 23; 20:21).
Dunn 1970:247-252; Weiss 1979:298-325). Thus it is once more apparent that John's supper discourse as a whole, from the end of chapter 13 through to the prayer of chapter 17, is an explication in words and symbols of the new economy of communion which Jesus is about to inaugurate (Barnhart 1993:122). Furthermore, Jesus in 15:13 uses the example of death for (on behalf of) a friend as evidence of what love really is (cf. Ridderbos 1997:476; Morris 1971:633; Tolmie 1995:201). Thus this in its turn points to the death of Christ: this last must be regarded as the ultimate standard of the love of Christians (Barrett 1978:377; Carson 1991:484; Schnackenburg 1982:54-55; Stibbe 1993:150; Keener 2003:925). This must be the nature of their love for one another. A member of the family should act according to the pattern that identifies that family. Jesus has given this pattern. Only in

---

390 The episode of the foot washing has two dimensions: the first part of the story reveals that the crucifixion was Jesus’ consummate act of complete self-giving love. In the washing of his disciples’ feet, as in his death, he gives himself completely. The second part of the passage elaborates the significance of the act as an example for the disciples to follow. The commandment to love another must be seen within this context (Nissen 1999a:201).

391 According to Keener (2003:924), ancient writers regularly invoked positive models that invited imitation as well as warning against negative examples; sometimes this included attention to examples of brave death (e.g., Aeschines False Embassy 75; Lysias Or. 2.61, § 196; Theophrastus Char. proem 3; Cicero Sest. 48.102; 68.143).

392 The washing of the disciple’s feet, placed immediately before the passion narrative, prefigures the death of Jesus. Similarly, Jesus’ laying down of his life for his followers (15:13) serves as an act of love and servanthood. Thus, his death is depicted by John as an act of self-sacrificial love that establishes the cruciform life as the norm of discipleship: Those within the community may be called upon literally to lay down their lives for one another (Nissen 1999a:202). In this regard, Culpepper (1998:208) properly asserts that Jesus’ new command has taken on additional significance following the foot washing. According to him, the close association of love with the footwashing and Jesus’ death conveys the implication that Jesus was charging his disciples to love one another even if such love requires that they lay down their lives for the community. This inference will later be reinforced by the association of keeping the new commandment (15:12, 17) with laying down one’s life for one’s friends (15:13) and bearing fruit (15:16; cf. 12:24).

393 The author of the Fourth Gospel uses love amongst the believers as in the family setting. Therefore love is recommended to be a common attitude between the members of God’s family. Love indicates affection and an intimate relation between the members of the faith. The Son commands the believers to love each other according to the example he has set (13:34; 15:12, 17). This will identify them as his disciples (13:15). Their identity will be determined by their love. In 13:1-17 therefore, Jesus sets an example of love (13:15) by washing his disciples feet and in (15:13) he uses death for (on behalf of) a friend as an indication of what love is. This is commanded to be the nature of their love for one another. A member of the family should thus act according to the pattern that identifies the family (Van der Watt 1997:24).

394 Moloney (1998:385; see Carson 1991:484) states, in this regard, that the foot washing is marked by the gift of an example (υ⎯πο,δειγμα γα.ρ εδωκα υ⎯μι/ν, v. 15) and the sharing of the morsel is marked by the gift of a new commandment (ςεντολη.ν καινη.ν δι,δωμι υ⎯μι/ν, v. 34a). According to Moloney, both the example and the commandment are closely associated with Jesus’ demand that his disciples follow him into a loving self-gift in death. This was implied in the command that the disciples do to one another “as Jesus had done for them” (καθω.ϕ εϖγω. εϖποι,ησα υ⎯μι/ν, v. 15b), and it
relation to Jesus can they experience love and live according to that love. The Father is the source and Jesus the example of love for the believer (Van der Watt 2000:313; Stauffer 1974:53; Tolmie 1995:201; Culpepper 1991:146-147). 395

Jesus says on the function of the Paraclete in 14:26 that the Paraclete will teach the believers everything, and remind them of all that Jesus has said to them. Indeed, as will be discussed later, the Paraclete will replace Jesus’ physical presence, teaching them all things and recalling for them everything he has said (Moloney 1998:410; cf. Brown 1970:653). The mission and purpose of the former Paraclete, Jesus (cf. 14:13-14), who speaks and teaches “his own” will continue into the mission and purpose of the “other Paraclete” (cf. 16) who teaches and brings back the memory of all that Jesus has said (Moloney 1998:410; Haenchen 1984:128; Countryman 1994:104; Morris 1971:656; Tolmie 1995:209-210; Culpepper 1998:212-213). Jesus had obeyed the Father’s command in all that he spoke (12:49) and in laying down his life (10:18; 14:31); disciples now would share this obedience (Keener 2003:924). The disciples can recall their master’s example by way of the Spirit when they strive to practise love. The Holy Spirit will enable the disciples to experience the presence of Jesus in their remembering. It should be noted at this point that the presence of Jesus does not mean only his physical presence in front of people, but also in their memory.

Verse 13:35 (colon 1.11) starts with the mention of εϖν του,τω| (see Barrett 1978:377). This indicates a unique quality of a new commandment of mutual love (see Moloney 1998:386; Morris 1971:633; cf. Tolmie 1995:201; see Ford 1997:151). There will shortly be a time when Jesus will no longer be with them and they will not be able to go where Jesus is (cf. v. 33). During that time of absence they are to repeat the love of Jesus and thus render present the lifestyle of Jesus: if the disciples love one becomes explicit in the new commandment that they love one another “as Jesus has loved them” (καθω.ϕ ηϖγα,πησα υ⎯μα/ϕ, v. 34b).

395 Keener (2003:923) notes: the exhortation to “love one another” (13:34-35) implies unity in the face of diversity (17:21-23), such as Jewish, Gentile, and Samaritan believers in Jesus might experience (4:39; 10:16). Representatives of various social groups now constituted together a new “in-group” and frequent early Christian exhortations to mutual service seem directed toward blending such diversity. In the Johannine community, love is partly cohesiveness to the community; secessionists lack such love (1 John 2:19; 3:14). Ethnic and other forms of reconciliation within the Christian community are
another, everyone will know that they are the disciples of Jesus (cf. 1 John 3:23; 4:7f., 11f., 19ff., etc.) (Moloney 1998:386; Van der Watt 2000:312). Therefore, as Ridderbos (1997:477) expresses, “Everything will depend on whether as disciples they love one another.” Besides, as Ridderbos (1997:477) goes on to say, “In this mutual love lies the criterion of the identity by which they will be known to the world, not in order to win the world’s admiration by their irreproachable conduct as a separatist group, but so that, by their mutual acts of service and self-denial (cf. v. 15), they may evoke the image of Jesus in this self-sacrificial love for sinful humanity.”

In this passage, the emphasis of the commandment is on a love “within” the community (cf. 15:12) and nothing is said of loving those outside the community (contrast Matt. 5:43-45) (Kysar 1986:218; Rensberger 1989:124; Haenchen 1984:117-118; Meeks 1972:44-72; Culpepper 1991:146-147). Given the situation of the Johannine church, it is not surprising that what is nurtured here is a kind of sectarian love (Kysar 1986:218; cf. Nissen 1999a:195-196; Keener 2003:925; Meeks 1972:44-72; MacRae 1970:13-24). Only in the fulfilment of this rule is fellowship with their glorified Lord maintained and the ground and meaning of their existence indicated to the church that remains behind (Ridderbos 1997:476). It should not be forgotten, however, that the believers are “sent” into the world for others – a world God loves (3:16; cf. 20:21) (Kysar 1986:216; Nissen 1999a:195-196; Meeks 1972:44-72; MacRae 1970:13-24; Perkins 1994:106; Lindars 1972:463; Ford.

---

396 Keener (2003:927) notes, “From the standpoint of Johannine theology, one cannot persevere as a true disciple of Jesus without learning to love other true disciples. Given the First Epistle’s polemic against the secessionists, persevering in love includes remaining part of the community of faith (1 John 2:9-11; 3:10, 14; 4:20).”

397 The restriction in 13:34-35 has been explained by a comparison with the Old Testament concept of a covenant community. Sometimes the similarity to Leviticus is stressed, since Leviticus is also concerned with relations among the people of God (Nissen 1999a:203). Thus, Collins (1990:252-253) suggests that the limitation derives from its similar focus on the members of a covenant community. He also argues that in the farewell discourse genre interest always centres on relations among those being left behind, not on the world at large. However, considerations of genre and addressees alone cannot explain the distinctive character of the Johannine commandment (Nissen 1999a:203; cf. Rensberger 1992:304).

398 The following are the semantic relationships within this sub-unit: Colon 1.9 is an exhortation of mutual love and colon 1.10 is to provide a practical method on how to love. These two cola are perhaps linked by means of a substance generic-specific semantic relationship. To this colon 1.11, where a
Therefore it is indicated that, after Jesus’ departure, the mutual love of the community is a way of still presenting Jesus to the world. In other words, as Beasley-Murray (1987:248) mentions, “Such a community of Christly love will be a revelation to the world of the reality of Christ’s redemption, a witness to the presence and power of the kingdom of God in the midst of the world (cf. 17:21, 23).”

The rule of self sacrificial, self-giving, selfless love, a unique quality of love inspired by Jesus’ own love for the disciples, will serve as the foundational ethic for the new messianic community (Köstenberger 2004:423-424; cf. Schlatter 1948:289; Keener 2003:925-927; Culpepper 1991:146-147). Jesus indeed stresses in his last discourse that mutual love is the proof of Christian discipleship (see below; cf. Barrett 1978:377; Ford 1997:151). This theme has already been presented to the disciples.
when Jesus indicates the death of Jesus as well as that of his disciples through the metaphorical expression of the “seed” (12:24) (Van der Watt 2000:108). No direct or explicit application is made to the death of Jesus (cf. Brown 1966:471; Bruce 1983:294). The implications in the context are, however, that it not only refers to the death of Jesus (12:23) but also to that of his disciples (12:25-26) (Van der Watt 2000:108). Therefore, given its immediate context, this new command of Jesus is meant to serve as a replacement for Jesus’ presence in the midst of the disciples, as a counterbalance to their anticipated behaviour of “seeking” after him by redirecting their attention toward one another, and as the sign to all outside the group of their own status as disciples of Jesus in the world (Segovia 1991:77; cf. Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:28; Tolmie 1995:201).

3.3.1.5. The prediction of Peter’s denial (13:36-38/cola 2.0-5.4.1)

402 In the words of Brown (1970:612), “Since the disciples cannot follow Jesus as he leaves this life, they receive a command that, if obeyed, will keep the Spirit of Jesus alive among them as they continue their life in this world.”

403 By this mutual love of the community, “the world may believe” (cf. 17:20-26). John’s distinctive treatment of the love community does not license hatred of the enemy or of the neighbour; rather, it focuses on the fulfilment of God’s love within the community. “Love – even God’s love, even agape – seeks a response, an answering love. It seeks mutual love, and where it finds it, the heavenly realm is entered.” (Nissen 1999a:203)
The theme of Jesus’ departure was mentioned from the beginning of this Gospel (cf. 1:14), but is now brought to a climax in the first farewell discourse. At the beginning of the first farewell discourse (in 13:31-35/cola 1.0-1.11), Jesus announces his departure from his disciples. The beginning of this discourse stresses that Jesus’ departure opens the possibility of his continuing presence among his followers. Furthermore, he does not speak of his “permanent” absence from his followers but of a “temporary” separation from them. This explicit declaration is exposed throughout the discourse in various ways. However, Peter does not understand what the sayings of Jesus mean. Thus, in this fifth sub-section, asks Jesus that κυ,ριε( που/ υ⎯πα,γειϕ (13:36a/cola 2.1-2.2), which clearly picks up on 13:33 (cola 1.5-1.8) (see Morris 1971:634; Barrett 1978:377; Newman & Nida 1980:450; Stibbe 1993:147; Barnhart 1993:123-124; Van Tilborg 1993:136; Keener 2003: 927-929; Orchard 1998:178; Segovia 1991:77; Witherington III 1995:248). Peter reveals an inability to understand the nature and goal of Jesus’ departure. He has no idea whatever about what Jesus’ departure entails or where it is that he proposes to go (Segovia 1985:480; Culpepper 1983:120-121; Koester 2003:70-71; Tolmie 1995:201-202, 2006:359; Schnackenburg 1982:55; Haenchen 1984:118; Orchard 1998:178). His misunderstanding is just like the Jews in 7:35 who think of a physical, geographical going (cf. Tenney 1976:211-212; Orchard 1998:178; Culpepper 1991:146-147; Tolmie 2006:359). Hence Peter, as he has done more than once in the Synoptics, asks for clarification (e.g., Matt. 15:15; Luke 12:1) (Blomberg 2001:194; cf. Strachan 1941:278-279; Tenney 1976:211-212; Newman & Nida 1980:450; see Brown 1970:614-616; Dodd 1953:403-404; Keener 2003:927-929;

404 The fifth sub-unit (cola 2.0-3.2/13:36) clearly consists of the dialogue between Jesus and Peter. The obvious difference in the literary genres (discourse and dialogue) between the previous part and the current part supports the current separation.

405 Jesus has, to be sure, already spoken to “the Jews” (7:33), but – as Peter evidently tries to say – certainly he and the other disciples are not to be equated with “the Jews” (Ridderbos 1997:477).

The theme of misunderstanding (or partial understanding) is inseparable in the discourse from the Johannine use of the question (see Leory 1968). It provides a valuable indication of the whole purpose of the discourse, which is designed precisely to correct this misunderstanding. It points to the meaning of the text at the first level of understanding. But it also indicates by contrast with this misunderstanding how the text is to be reinterpreted in its immediate context at a second, deeper spiritual level of understanding (McCaffrey 1988:152). According to Culpepper (1983:161), John’s recurrent use of misunderstanding follows a common pattern in which eighteen passages follow a common pattern and several others contain variations of this pattern and may be considered as related passages. He has developed the lists of misunderstandings provided by Leory (1968) to highlight the ubiquity of this device in the Gospel of John. This tabulation shows the distribution of the misunderstandings, their relation to characterisation and significant themes, and the variations regarding the explanation or resolution of the misunderstandings (Culpepper 1983:162; see Stibbe 1993:156-158):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passage</th>
<th>Ambiguity</th>
<th>Partner</th>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Explanation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:19-21</td>
<td>“this temple”</td>
<td>the Jews</td>
<td>death and resurrection</td>
<td>by narrator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:3-5</td>
<td>“born anew”</td>
<td>Nicodemus</td>
<td>how one becomes one of the children of God</td>
<td>restatement in other terms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:10-15</td>
<td>“living water”</td>
<td>the Samaritan woman</td>
<td>the revelation or spirit which comes from Jesus</td>
<td>deferred (cf.7.38)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some scholars think that John 16:5 demonstrates the likelihood that 13:36 came from a different source and/or was introduced into this Gospel at a different stage of editing than the third form of the farewell discourses (see Kysar 1986:218). However, there is no reason to consider it to be such an editorial intrusion.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verse</th>
<th>Narration</th>
<th>Scene</th>
<th>Content</th>
<th>Source</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4:31-34</td>
<td>“food”</td>
<td>the disciples</td>
<td>Jesus’ relation to the Father</td>
<td>by Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:32-35</td>
<td>“the bread from heaven”</td>
<td>the crowd</td>
<td>Jesus’ origin, identity, and mission</td>
<td>by Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:51-53</td>
<td>“my flesh”</td>
<td>the Jews</td>
<td>Jesus’ death</td>
<td>by Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:33-36</td>
<td>“I go…..where I am you cannot come”</td>
<td>the Jews</td>
<td>Jesus’ glorification</td>
<td>no explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:21-22</td>
<td>“I go away…..”</td>
<td>the Jews</td>
<td>Jesus’ glorification</td>
<td>no explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:31-35</td>
<td>“make you free”</td>
<td>the Jews</td>
<td>the freedom conferred by Jesus to those who receive him</td>
<td>implied by contrast of “son” and “servant”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:51-53</td>
<td>“death”</td>
<td>the Jews</td>
<td>eternal life</td>
<td>no explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:56-58</td>
<td>“to see my day”</td>
<td>the Jews</td>
<td>Jesus as the fulfilment of God’s redemptive activity (?)</td>
<td>no explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:11-15</td>
<td>“sleep”</td>
<td>the disciples</td>
<td>death and eternal life</td>
<td>by the narrator then by Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:23-25</td>
<td>“your brother will rise again”</td>
<td>Martha</td>
<td>Jesus as the source of resurrection and eternal life</td>
<td>by Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:32-34</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>no explanation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Phrase</td>
<td>Group or Person</td>
<td>Event</td>
<td>Explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13:36-38</td>
<td>“lifted up”</td>
<td>the crowd</td>
<td>Jesus’ death and glorification</td>
<td>no explanation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:4-6</td>
<td>“I am going”</td>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>Jesus’ glorification</td>
<td>metaphorical explanation by Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14:7-9</td>
<td>“where I am going”</td>
<td>Thomas</td>
<td>Jesus’ glorification</td>
<td>by Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16:16-19</td>
<td>“you …. have seen him”</td>
<td>Philip</td>
<td>Jesus’ revelation of the Father</td>
<td>by Jesus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>“a little while”</td>
<td>the disciples</td>
<td>Jesus’ death and return to the disciples</td>
<td>metaphorical explanation by Jesus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

It is the interplay of dialogue, question and answer, which brings out precisely this lack of understanding. Something that Jesus says is taken up in a material (or physical) sense by one of his disciples. A question on one of the disciples’ lips then gives expression to some misunderstanding. As yet the disciples cannot grasp the deeper spiritual sense of Jesus’ words without the Spirit. The disciples and Jesus are on two entirely different planes of thought (McCaffrey 1988:152; Bruce 1983:295). This is again apparent from the Peter’s question κύριε, ποῦ/ ὑπάγει (where are you going?) (13:36a/cola 2.1-2.2). Peter is indeed dissatisfied with the command of love and desires to follow Christ (Barrett 1978:377; see Koester 2003:70-71; Keener 2003:927-929).<sup>407</sup> In other words, knowledge of the master’s plan and continued intimacy with him are more attractive than obedience (Carson 1991:486; cf. Barrett 1978:377; Stibbe 1993:148; Segovia 1991:78; Tolmie 1995:201-202; Culpepper

---

<sup>407</sup> Peter, and doubtless others amongst the Eleven who are slower to respond, are certainly less interested in the new commandment than in the threatened departure of their master (Carson 1991:486; cf. Culpepper 1998:208-209).
Jesus answers that

ο[που υ⎯πα,γω ουϖ δυ,νασαι, μοι νυ/ν αϖκολουθη/σαι (13:36b/cola 3.0-3.1)


(13:36c/colon 3.2).

Peter will “follow” Jesus only “later”. This has a similar implication to the “afterwards” (μετα. ταυ/τα) in 13:7 (see Ridderbos 1997:478). When Jesus tells Peter that he cannot “follow” Jesus at this point (13:36), he refers to death. Earlier he told his enemies that they could not go where he was going (7:34; 8:22); instead they would die “in sin” (8:21). Despite their initial misunderstanding (7:35), they recognise the second time that Jesus’ going involves dying, yet not in sin (8:22). In this context, Jesus is going to the Father by way of the cross (13:3; 14:28; 16:5); the disciples can come to the Father through him (14:4-6), but eventually following him will involve their sharing his cross, as he has already warned them (12:25-26) (Keener 2003:927). The term αϖκολουθη,σειϕ means discipleship (cf. 1:37ff.) but with the implication here of martyrdom. To be a disciple has just been described as a following that may lead to death (12:25-26) (Kysar 1986:218; Keener 2003:927; Culpepper 1983:120-121; Orchard 1998:178-179; Schnackenburg 1982:57; Reese 1972:321-331). Peter will not follow Jesus now, but he will follow him in martyrdom

408 The following are the semantic relationships of cola within this sub-unit: the semantic relationship between colon 2.0 and cola 2.1-2.2 is a qualificational substance content. Colon 3.1 is linked to colon 3.2 by means of a dyadic contrastive semantic relationship. To this, colon 3.0 is linked by qualificational substance content. Cola 4.1-4.2 is linked to colon 4.3 by means of an additive different consequential semantic relationship (an “unfolding” structure). To this, colon 4.0 is linked by means of a qualificational substance content semantic relationship. Cola 5.2-5.4.1 is also linked to colon 5.1 by means of an additive different consequential semantic relationship (an “unfolding” structure). To this, colon 5.0 is also linked by means of a qualificational substance content semantic relationship. Cola 2.0-3.2 and cola 4.0-5.4.1 have a subordinate logical cause-effect semantic relationship. The following argument is based on the present semantic relationships.

409 As in his earlier dialogue with various Jewish leaders, Jesus does not directly answer the question about where he was going (see Blomberg 2001:194).
later (21:18-19).\textsuperscript{410} This statement implies furthermore that only Jesus, the Lamb of God, can offer the sacrifice that deals with the world’s sins. Only Jesus can reveal the Father perfectly, and be glorified in the presence of the Father with the glory he had before the world began. The second half of Jesus’ answer (13:36c/colon 3.2), which retains an element of mystery, should thus not be understood as a second Lamb of God (cf. Morris 1971:634; Stibbe 1993:148; Segovia 1991:78).\textsuperscript{411}

Peter is very impetuous and thus unwilling to wait (see Carson 1991:486; Schnackenburg 1982:56; Strachan 1941:279; Keener 2003:928-929; Countryman 1994:101; Bruce 1983:295; Segovia 1991:78-79; Koester 2003:70-71). He goes on to inquire arrogantly whether

\[\text{κύριε (δια τι οὐ δύναμαι σοι απολογησαι αρτι)} (13:37a/cola 4.0-4.2)\] (see above).\textsuperscript{412} Repeating his earlier difficulties with Jesus over the foot washing, Peter asks a question that indicates that there is no journey he is not prepared to make with Jesus. He may thus be imagining human journeys into some dangerous place and time (cf. 8:22), while Jesus is speaking of his return to the Father (Moloney 1998:386; cf. McCaffrey 1988:152; Quast 1989:69-70). Peter still fails to grasp that Jesus is about to go to the Father, and the reason for his going (cf. Beasley-Murray 1987:248; Culpepper 1998:209; Barnhart 1993:123-124). Peter consequently claims that

\[\text{την ψυχην μου υπερ σου θησω} (13:37b/colon 4.3).\]

Peter is prepared to die with \textit{or} for Jesus (all four Gospels report Peter’s protestation of this willingness to die with \textit{or} for Jesus). Both Peter’s questions and a radical mention to die reveal that he really wishes to follow Jesus, cost what it may. Peter is prepared to match Jesus’ willingness to give his life for his own. This can be associated with the earlier proclamation by Jesus when he, as the Good Shepherd, said he would lay down his life for his sheep (cf. 10:11, 15, 17) (see Morris 1971:634; Brown 1970:616; Reese

\textsuperscript{410} The term \textit{υ[στερον} denotes the occasion of Peter’s martyrdom, spoken of again in 21:18-19 (see Kysar 1986:218).

\textsuperscript{411} Therefore Peter is not at present ready, in spite of his confident assertion, to give his life for Christ, though eventually he will do so. Neither can he at present enter into the presence of God in heaven, yet this also will eventually be granted him (Barrett 1978:378).

\textsuperscript{412} \textit{Κυριε} is omitted by some ancient witnesses (\textit{a’ 33 565 vg syr\textit{cop\textit{ax ms. bo ms}}). The strong and early support for its inclusion suggests that the omission was accidental (\textit{κυριε} was often contrasted to \textit{κε}), or that it was thought to be redundant so soon after \textit{κυριε} in verse 36 (see Metzger 1994:206; Beasley-Murray 1987:242; Newman & Nida 1980:450; Barrett 1978:378; Morris 1971:634).
1997:321-331; Orchard 1998:178). In other words, this is exactly what Jesus asks of all disciples through the gift of his example (13:15) and the gift of the new commandment (13:34-35). But such love flows from a radical following of Jesus and never from an imposition of one’s own worldview on God’s designs (Moloney 1998:386; cf. Haench 1984:118; Barnhart 1993:123-124). Thus, as Barrett (1978:378; see Stibbe 1993:148; Van Tilborg 1993:136; Culpepper 1991:146-147) asserts, Peter’s intentions are excellent, but he remains within the world of sin, ignorance, and unbelief.413

Jesus’ answer in 13:38 (cola 5.0-5.4.1) (again, cf. 13:8b) is striking in its extraordinary sharpness (Ridderbos 1997:478; see Newman & Nida 1980:451; Reese 1972:321-331; Tolmie 2006:359; Keener 2003:927-929; Bruce 1983:295; Segovia 1991:79).414 The first half of Jesus’ statement is the rhetorical question: τη.ν ψυχη.ν σου υ⎯πε.ρ εϖμου/ θη,σειϕ. This implies that Peter could not lay down his life for Jesus then; he would lay it down three decades later, and thereby glorify God (cf. 21:18-19) (Carson 1991:486). Jesus immediately prophesies that Peter, far from laying down his life, will disown Jesus three times before the early morning cockcrow (Blomberg 2001:195; see Culpepper 1983:120-121; Tolmie 2006:359; Perkins 1994:95; Newman & Nida 1980:451; Barnhart 1993:123-124).415 Ridderbos (1997:479) correctly points out that his denying is not for lack of courage, but because he is unwilling and powerless to be considered a disciple of a Lord in fetters on his way to a cross.416 Peter’s ignorance and arrogant failure will be further

413 It is also implied that, while the discourse of Jesus (13:31-35) exposes the divine love, the question of Peter (13:36-38) demonstrates the human failure. This is expressed on the ironic nature of the dialogue: the one who would willingly die for Jesus will soon deny him three times (Segovia 1985:480). Thus, Kysar (1986:215) mentions that the terrible paradox of divine love and human betrayal is emphasised once again, this time with the revelation of the will of God in the command to love and the anticipation of Peter’s unfaithfulness.

414 The synoptic authors link other sayings of Jesus with the prophecy of Peter’s denial. This passage occurs in Luke in the conversations of the Last Supper (22:31-38), in Matthew (26:31-32) and Mark (14:27-28) on the way to the Mount of Olives (see Ridderbos 1997:477; Beasley-Murray 1987:248; Schnackenburg 1982:56).

415 The severity with which Jesus repulses Peter is not to be explained solely as a rebuke of his spontaneous overconfidence, the disgraceful outcome of which Jesus foresees; the solemn, prophetic seriousness of “truly, truly, I say to you” rather concerns Peter’s opposition to and indeed encroachment on the utterly unique character of Jesus’ departure (Ridderbos 1997:478).

416 Kysar (1986:218; cf. Newman & Nida 1980:451) insists that there is both irony and pathos in Jesus’ answer in 13:38. He mentions as follows: “The irony is that Peter will die for his Lord but not as
demonstrated, and Jesus’ knowledge will be highlighted.\footnote{The reader is aware that the narrative ahead will tell of the fulfilment of Jesus’ prophecies: Judas will betray Jesus (cf. vv. 2, 10-11, 18, 21-30, 31a) and Peter will deny all knowledge of him (cf. vv. 36-38) (Moloney 1998:386).}

Peter wants to follow Jesus and lay down his life for him. What he proposes is exactly what John 12:26 expects from a servant of the Lord. This is a very important aspect that should be explained in detail at this juncture. Van der Watt (2006:421-448) believes rightly that John develops his ethical views \textit{inter alia} by means of imagery. He argues (see 2006:436-445) that one of the functionalities of imagery, for understanding and describing ethics, can be found in 12:24-26 where the simple but proverbial imagery of a grain of wheat that dies is found. Usually this grain of wheat saying is directly linked to the death of Jesus (see Morris 1971:527; Kruse 2003:269; Wengst 2001:63), simply because this is the major theme in this context (8:23, 27ff.). For Van der Watt (2006:437), considering the structure of this section, this is only partly true. He thinks that the imagery of the grain of wheat is presented in the form of two provisional sentences (\textit{εϖξα.ν + aor. subj.}) describing contrasting positions.\footnote{The remark that the hour has come for the Son to be glorified is followed by an \textit{αϖμη.ν αϖμη.ν}-saying. According to Van der Watt (2006:437), such an \textit{αϖμη.ν αϖμη.ν}-saying indicates that important information will follow, expanding on the preceding statement. He goes on to say that consequently, this \textit{αϖμη.ν αϖμη.ν}-saying introduces an interesting sequel of antithetical parallelisms that are structurally woven together.}

\begin{verbatim}
εϖξα.ν μη. ο⎯ κο,κκοφ του/ στι,του πεσω.ν εισφ τη.ν γη/ν αϖποθα,νη( αυϖτο.
φ μο,νοφ με,νει∴
εϖξα.ν δε.                                          αϖποθα,νη( πολυ.ν καρπο.ν φε,ρει⊕
\end{verbatim}

Van der Watt argues the implication of this sentence as follows: the communicative strength of this image rests on the assumption that death is not always profitable, especially not in an ancient framework where earthly life was valued as the reward for the righteous person. The function of this saying of a grain of wheat that must die to bear fruit provides a positive reinterpretation of death. However, in spite of the assumption that a seed that dies to produce fruit is a “general truth”, the validity of
such a presupposition is not really attested to in the ancient world, not to mention that it is no longer accepted today. However, the author of this Gospel accepts it as a given. He uses it proverbially and builds his rhetorical argument on that.

According to Van der Watt (2006:438), two pairs of antithetical sentences follow in 12:24-26 with exactly the same structure, indicating a thematic development of the proverbial material. The following is the parallel structural development in John 12:24-26, as presented by Van der Watt (2006:438).

```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>v. 24 The seed</th>
<th>It bears much fruit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Falls into the soil and dies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 25 A person</td>
<td>Keeps it for eternal life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hates his life in this world</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>v. 26 A person</td>
<td>The Father will honour him</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Serves Jesus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
```
How should the relationship between these parallel sayings be understood? Van der Watt argues that the latter two parallels could be read independently, but this is not very likely, given the close contextual proximity. For him, it could also be a matter of substitution. He explains this relationship in more detail as follows: “Hating one’s life” would then be another way of saying “serving Jesus”. However, the best way for understanding this relationship is seeing it as a progressive or expansive development on the same structural basis given in the first conditional sentence. Hating one’s life finds expression in serving Jesus, but only in that, and keeping your life involves being honoured by the Father, but only that. There is a qualitative difference between “hating your life” and “serving Jesus”. “Hating one’s life” is an attitude while serving Jesus is the action following the receiving of “eternal life” and “being honoured by the Father” – they are not the same, although related. Eternal life describes a state of existence while receiving honour refers to social stratification. Nevertheless, having eternal life implies being honoured. In this context, “having one’s life” and “service” correspond (see Collins 1990, 1992, 2002; Schnelle 1998b:203). Service means to commit yourself totally to the one who asks you to perform the service, while hating your life implies that you turn away from your own interests in order to be able to serve the interests of your Lord. The grain of wheat refers clearly to the death of Jesus, although no direct or explicit application is made to the death of Jesus in these three conditional phrases. When the remarks in 12:24-26 are closely scrutinised, the death in 12:24 has a second reference, namely to the believers or servants of Jesus. The references in the imagery and first conditional phrase are general and unspecific, but in the applications the servants of Jesus are identified. Hating one’s life means to abandon one’s own interests for the sake of the interests of God. The second application refers directly to servants of Jesus who must be where He is, because they follow him there – where Jesus is they will also be. This is obviously a reference *inter alia* (but not only) to the death of Jesus, but also to his continual eschatological presence with his people. In sum: what is the function of the imagery of the grain of wheat in this context? It redefines death as being a positive and fruitful event not only for Jesus but also for his followers. The death of Jesus thus becomes a pattern or example for ethics, since the followers must follow suit (see Becker 1981:382). Why hating yourself, giving yourself up in service to Jesus, could be a positive and
desirable value is rhetorically motivated by the natural event of a grain of wheat that
dies to produce fruit. This is what the death of Jesus is also about. Brown (1966:471)
is therefore correct in calling these verses “a magnificent commentary on the theme of
death and life”.

According to Van der Watt (2006:441-443), in this sense Peter becomes the prototype
for a follower who is willing to die like a grain of wheat. He explains this issue in
detail as follows: This link is developed further through the structural marker
αϖκολουθε,ω that is from this point on reserved for Peter (13:36, 37; 18:15; 20:6;
21:19, 22). The idea of “to follow” is now loaded with meaning and may be viewed as
a symbol created within the narrative itself. Being where Jesus is (locality), is also
important in John 21 and adds to the symbolic gravity. What interests us is the
discussion between Jesus and Peter in 21:15-22. The thematic links are remarkable
between 13:31 ff. and 21:15 ff. This is the Johannine way of indicating cohesion,
which means that these two sections should be read in relation to each other. These
parallels show that what stayed the same was Jesus and what he required – he is still
the Lord who knows everything and who requires unconditional love that should be

419 Beasley-Murray (1987:249) asserts this dialogue as follows: “Throughout this chapter, and again in
John 18:10-11, Peter is characterized as one who does not understand Jesus’ death. He therefore does
not understand where Jesus is going (to the Father) or why he cannot follow him. The irony of Peter’s
pledge of loyalty is pointed. He cannot follow – that is, he cannot discharge his duty as a disciple –
because he does not understand the meaning of Jesus’ death. Peter’s pledge that he would lay down his
life is ironic because Peter does not understand that Jesus is laying down his life for the disciples, that
Jesus is going to the Father by means of his death, or that eventually Peter would indeed lay down his
life (cf. 21:19). Jesus confronts Peter with reality. Because he does not understand, that very night he
will deny Jesus three times. The contrast between knowledge and ignorance of the revelation conveyed
by Jesus’ death is clear. This contrast is fundamental to the plot of the entire Gospel, and it will be
developed further in the events leading to Jesus’ death.”

420 Van der Watt (2006:442) suggests the following parallelism: a) The settings are the same - after a
meal but the time of day is different. In the one case it was an evening meal (with Judas disappearing
in the dark and Jesus leaving for the cross) and the other a breakfast (where the day lies ahead)
(13:30-31; 21:15). Whether this is symbolic is open to reinterpretation. b) In both cases love is
prominent as identification of a disciple of Jesus (13:34-35; 21:15-19). c) In both cases Peter confesses
his loyalty to Jesus (13:37; 21:15-17). The intention to be loyal is the same, but the way in which it is
expressed differs - in 13:37 Peter relies on himself in questioning the Lord, while in 21:15-17 he
confesses his unconditional love. d) In both cases the superior knowledge of Jesus about the life of
Peter plays a role (13:38; 21:17-19). e) In both cases the word “to follow” (αϖκολουθε,ω) refers to
the physical actions expected of somebody who loves Jesus. In 13:36 Jesus claims that the disciples
cannot follow him now but will be able to do so later. Now Jesus commands Peter to follow him.
Following and love are intimately connected (reading 13:36 and 21:15-17 together. f) In both cases
reference is made to the death of Peter (13:37; 21:19). Peter confesses in 13:37, that he would give his
expressed in following him. He appoints Peter as the one who should feed his lambs and tend his sheep. On the other hand, Peter was the one who changed: he confesses his love for Jesus (21:15, 16, 17) and is really willing to give his life – something that will eventually be asked of him, as the remarks in 21:18 indicate. What is in focus now is not his death, but his “hating his own life” and “serving” the Lord (12:24-26) by caring for the sheep of this Lord – this is the service (the “laying down of his life”) required of him. In this sense “dying” (“hating his life” / “serving” in terms of 12:26), implies caring, tending and feeding the Lord’s sheep – this is the form “death” or “hating one’s life” now takes. A functional change has taken place on the basis of the restored status of Peter. He should care for the total group of Jesus’ followers (Wengst 2001:319). Eventually, death that will glorify God – as the death of Jesus did – will follow (21:19). What Peter should now do is to follow Jesus (21:19). He was not able to follow Jesus initially, but now he can (13:36).421

Van der Watt (2006:443-444) goes on to argue as follows: what is the significance of all this for our question regarding the functionality of the image of the grain of wheat? The grain of wheat is not mentioned in either Chapter 13 or 21, but the motifs that were redefined by this image are all present – following, serving, hating your own life by loving Jesus more, dying. It provides answers to many questions. Why is Peter’s service to death something positive? Why is his death not a threat but an honour?

---

421 Jesus’ thrice-repeated question asks Peter to commit himself to love Jesus more than he loves the other disciples at the meal (cf. Bernard 1928b:704; Tolmie 2006:363-367). Peter responds unconditionally, further confessing that his love for Jesus is known by the all-knowing risen Lord (21:15-17) (cf. Beasley-Murray 1987-405). The chief reason for Jesus’ demanding a threefold confession of love is obviously Peter’s threefold denial of Jesus at the outset of the passion narrative (cf. 18:15-18, 25-27) (cf. Brown 1970:1112-1113; Bernard 1928b:701; Van Tilborg 1993:154-157; Bruce 1983:295). The unexpected repetitions of the Lord’s question to Peter have the effect of searching him to the depths of his being (Beasley-Murray 1987:405). On the basis of this response to his question Jesus commands Peter to pasture his sheep. A relationship between the role of Peter and the role of Jesus the Good Shepherd in 10:1-18, and especially in 10:14-18, is established (see Beasley-Murray 1987:406-407). Fragile, Peter has been close to Jesus throughout the ministry (cf. 1:40-42; 6:67-69; 13:6-10, 36-38; 18:15), a closeness dramatically destroyed by the disciple’s threefold denial and the subsequent events of the crucifixion of Jesus. The royal lifting up of Jesus on the cross, the foundation of a new family of God and the gift of the Spirit (19:17-37), have been marked by the presence of the Beloved Disciple (cf. 19:25-27) and the absence of Peter. The pastoral role Peter is called to fill associates him with the Good Shepherd. He is charged to “shepherd” and “feed” the “lambs” and “sheep” of Jesus (Moroney 1998:555; cf. Brown 1970:1114; Culpepper 1983:120-121; Tolmie 2006:363-367; Morris 1971:876; Van Tilborg 1993:154-157).
What does it mean to love Jesus? Is it really necessary to tend to the sheep of the Lord and why? And so we can continue. Answers to these questions have their roots in John 12:23 ff.: because a grain of wheat that dies bears much fruit – this is not only true of Jesus, but also of his followers. The proverbial truth presented by this image is defining and enlightens key moments in the development of the plot. It remains implicitly and actively present in the rest of this Gospel. Nor is this interesting development of the plot complete. In John 10 the readers have the narrative of the good shepherd. There the death of Jesus is also interpreted as for his sheep, since he cares for them. It is difficult not to be reminded of this section when reading 21:15ff., where Peter is commanded to care for Jesus’ sheep. It is indeed argued by some that strong links exist between the references to sheep in Chapters 10 and 21. The question is whether Peter is indeed made shepherd here or is he on the level of a substitute or a hireling? It seems he is made a servant or go-between. There are several reasons for this conclusion. Firstly, the sheep are not his but remain Jesus’ sheep (21:15-17). In ancient times the owner of sheep could appoint hirelings to tend to them or he could ask one of his family or close friends to do this. A hireling is defined in 10:12-13 as somebody who does not own the sheep and does not care for them. The latter is not true of Peter. He is bound in love to Jesus and that means that he loves his sheep too. He is not replacing Jesus as shepherd, but is serving as the one who cares for his sheep. This is exactly what a servant did in those days. In this sense it could be said that Peter is appointed as shepherd of the sheep (although the term is not used of him), but he remains an appointed shepherd, a “servant shepherd”. This is the essence of true Christian loving behaviour – caring for the flock of Jesus.422

Jesus, as the Lamb of God, offers the sacrifice that deals with the world’s sins. Only Jesus can reveal the Father perfectly and be glorified in the presence of the Father with the glory he had before the world began (see Morris 1971:634; Mercer 1992:457-462). However, the prediction has been made fact in that Peter will follow Jesus in death and join him later in glory (Carson 1991:486; Haenchen 1984:118; cf.

422 “Afterward, when Jesus by the power of his self-surrender has overcome the power of the world, when Peter has turned from his way to the way of his Lord (cf. Luke 22:32). Then the disciples will follow Jesus in his going to the Father. For where the Lord will be, there his servants will also be (12:26).” (Ridderbos 1997:479)

In sum: The first part of the discourse provides the introductory elements in the imminent departure of Jesus (cf. Segovia 1985:479, 1991:64; Brown 1970:608; Beasley-Murray 1987:244-245). The central motif of the farewell discourse, “love of Jesus”, is still dominant in this narrative. The opening statement of the author, the leaving to betray (Judas), provides the setting (time and circumstance) for everything that is to follow (13:31a/colon 1.0). This is followed by a short but significant announcement of Jesus’ impending departure (13:31b-32/cola 1.1-1.4). Jesus in 13:33 (cola 1.5-1.8) states that the disciples cannot accompany him where he is going. Thus, for the direction of their life in this new situation, Jesus leaves a commandment of mutual love (13:34-35/cola 1.9-1.11). These four sub-sections do not indicate that the departure of Jesus is a permanent separation between Jesus and his disciples, but stress different examples of Jesus’ presence in and among his followers. To put it

---

423 Beasley-Murray (1987:248) argues that the author appears to have woven two separate themes together here: (i) the familiar prediction that Peter is shortly to deny having any connection with Jesus; (ii) a prediction, unknown in other sources, that Peter one day will follow Jesus in laying down his life for him. He goes on to say that, whereas the latter has no counterpart in the synoptic Gospels, its language and thought are reminiscent of 12:26, and it is repeated more fully in 21:18-19. In this context, on the other hand, its emphasis becomes a warning to all disciples: following Jesus to the death, sometimes to avoid betraying one’s fellow believers, is a necessary part of discipleship when the circumstances present themselves; but it proves more difficult than a disciple might expect. Granted,
precisely, the first sub-unit (13:31a/colon 1.0) indicates that the presence of Jesus throughout the farewell discourse is not for all people but for his specific group only. The second sub-unit (13:31b-32/cola 1.1-1.4) exposes the powerful presence of God becomes apparent through the presence of his Son by means of mutual glorification between the Father and Jesus. The main point of the third sub-unit (13:33/cola 1.5-1.8) is the fact that only a very few hours now separate him from his death, and an only slighter shorter interval from his reunion with his own. The commandment of mutual love in the fourth sub-unit (13:34-35/cola 1.9-1.11) eventually furnishes the disciples’ way to the presence of Jesus in the world after his departure since the love reveals the lifestyle of Jesus. After the establishment of the basic fact of Jesus’ departure and its implications for the disciples, the reader encounters the dialogue between Jesus and Peter (13:36-38/cola 2.0-5.4.1), which consists of two exchanges (13:36/cola 2.0-3.2 and 13:37-38/cola 4.0-5.4.1). Peter is unable to understand the nature and goal of Jesus’ departure. He has no idea of what Jesus’ departure entails or where it is that he proposes to go (Segovia 1985:480; Schnackenburg 1982:55; Haenchen 1984:118; Orchard 1998:178). In the Fourth Gospel, Peter is the spokesperson for the twelve disciples (see Perkins 1994:95; Collins 1989:78-86) and accordingly, Peter’s misunderstanding of Jesus’ words about his departure represents the misunderstanding of the entire group (Collins 2001:167; Quast 1989:69-70). Jesus thus now has to add a precise (or deeper) explanation to correct the disciples’ understanding. Therefore the dialogue functions as a demonstration that the following discourse is necessary and thus Peter’s questions in a certain sense function as the motivation for further discourse. Indeed, in the introduction to the discourse, John wishes to deliver the message that the departure of Jesus is not a separation from his followers. The response of Jesus is that Peter could not lay down his life for Jesus then; he would instead lay it down three decades later, and thereby glorify God. This mention indicates that Peter will become another indication of the presence of Jesus through his community through his caring for this community (cf. 21:15-19). An attempt has thus been made by the continual ministry of his disciples to perpetuate the presence of Jesus among the next generations who are no longer in a position to see

Peter had devotion to Jesus; he simply did not have enough. John repeatedly emphasises the need for a deeper level of faith (e.g., 2:23-25; 8:30-32); disciples should prepare for the future.
Jesus physically.

3.3.2. Part II: The departure of Jesus (14:1-14/cola 6.1-10.18)

The introduction (13:31-38) announced the theme of Jesus’ departure; what follows in the subsequent discourse is concerned with answering the questions raised by this departure – not the questions of what will happen to Jesus (his glorification is only mentioned), but of what will happen to the disciples he leaves behind (see Brown 1970:622-623; Tolmie 1995:203). This is rhetorically designed by means of the failure of Peter in 13:36-38 to understand the nature and consequences of Jesus’ departure – a failure that, as the rest of the discourse shows, is by no means limited to Peter alone – the exhortations of 14:1 call for courage and belief on the part of the disciples as well (cf. Brown 1970:622-623; Tolmie 1995:203). The study takes a hypothetical perspective of the departure of Jesus in terms of his presence. This has been examined in the analysis above and will be developed in the following section. The main concern of this part may be formulated as “the departure of Jesus” (see below).425 The entire

424 According to the farewell pattern, the reassurance of the disciples is needed after hearing that their master is going away (cf. 1 Enoch 92:2; T. Zebulon 10:1-2; Jubilees 2:23). So Jesus tells his disciples where he is going: to his Father’s house (cf. Philo, On Dreams 1.256, speaks of heaven as “the paternal house”). He also tells them for what purpose he is going: to prepare a place for them among the many abiding places in his Father’s house (cf. Testament of Abraham 20:14; 1 Enoch 39:4; 41:2; 22:4; 2 Enoch 61:2; 2 Esdras 7:80, 101; Joseph and Aseneth 8:11; Luke 16:9, 22-26) and then return, to take them to himself, and to keep them with him (12:26; 17:24). He then tells them how one gets to the dwelling place in the Father’s house: through Jesus himself (cf. Talbert 1992:204; see Haenchen 1984:124).

425 The primary reason for the isolation of 14:1 (colon 6.1) onwards from the preceding verses is found in the fact that an obvious shift in focus occurs in 14:1 (colon 6.1). One indication of this shift in focus between the end of John 13 and the beginning of John 14 is seen in the change of audience: in 13:38 Jesus is speaking to Peter, while in 14:1 onwards he is speaking to all the disciples (see Brown 1970:608; Tenney 1976:212; Talbert 1992:203). This assumption is evident from the fact that, while in the previous verse the singular form (λεγω σοι) is employed, in this verse the plural form (υμω/ν η καρδια) is used. Among others, Schnackenburg (1982:57) notes, “The change to the second person plural shows clearly that a discourse addressed by Jesus to all the disciples begins here.” Blomberg (2001:195) also points out, “By the time we reach John 14 all commentators agree that Jesus’ farewell discourse has begun.” Therefore, following the majority of the scholars, the isolation of this unit from the above is suggested (Berg 1988:101; see Segovia 1985:476-478; McCaffrey 1988:151-152; Keener 2003:930). However, it is also true to suppose that 13:31-38 have close association with the following chapter (that is, 14:1-31). This is apparent from the fact that some key terms of 13:31-38 are found in 14:1-31 (see Mlakuzhyil 1986:221-228). For instance, Jesus’ departure (υπαγει) mentioned at 13:33-36 is taken up again in 14:4-5 (ο[που εϖγω. υ⎯πα,γω: 14:4; οιδαμεν που/ υ⎯πα,γειϕ: 14:5); and in 14:28 (ηϖκου,σατε οτι εϖγω. ει=πον υ⎯μι/ν∴ υ⎯πα,γω). Again, the glorification of God/the Father (mentioned at 13:31-33) is repeated at 14:13. Furthermore, the theme of love (expressed at 13:34-35) is
section exposes the meaning and function of the departure of Jesus. An attempt will be made to show that by his death and exaltation Jesus makes it possible for his own to be there with him. Contents and flow of argument support the exegesis under the following headings (cf. Segovia 1991:81): “the call to courage and faith” (14:1/cola 6.1-6.3); “the purpose of Jesus’ departure” (14:2-3/cola 6.4-6.7); “Jesus as the way to God” (14:4-6/cola 6.8-8.2); “knowing and seeing the Father in Jesus” (14:7-9/cola 8.3-10.6); “the mutual presence of Jesus and the Father in one another” (14:10-11/cola 10.7-10.12); and “the presence of Jesus through the disciples’ mission” (14:12-14/coa 10.13-10.18).

3.3.2.1. The call to courage and faith (14:1/cola 6.1-6.3)

There are many indications in John 14-16 that Jesus is deeply concerned about the current anxiety and future distress of his disciples. He attempts to console them and relieve their fear by encouraging them to trust him and to trust God (Orchard 1998:181). The section begins in this vein, with these words from Jesus:

μη. ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α∴

πιστευ,ετε ειϖϕ το.ν θεο.ν και. ειϖϕ εϖμε. πιστευ,ετε

There are many indications in John 14:16 that Jesus is deeply concerned about the current anxiety and future distress of his disciples. He attempts to console them and relieve their fear by encouraging them to trust him and to trust God (Orchard 1998:181). The section begins in this vein, with these words from Jesus: μη. ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α∴

6.1. (1) Μη. ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α∴

6.2. πιστευ,ετε ειϖϕ το.ν θεο.ν

6.3. και. ειϖϕ εϖμε. πιστευ,ετε

This thematic distinction also functions to separate the present unit from the following ones. This assumption is supported by the double occurrences of πιστευ,ετε, in cola 6.2 and 6.3 respectively. This is the reason for the demarcation between cola 6.1-6.3 (14:1) and cola 6.4-6.7 (14:2-3), where no structural marker of

426 Most translators indicate the change in audience simply by rendering “heart” as “hearts” (see Newman & Nida 1980:453-454).
πιστεύετε or even a similar semantic domain of the marker appears in the following cola. The understandable consternation of the disciples after the events, commands, and prophecies of 13:31-38 must be overcome through a renewal of their faith and trust in God and in Jesus (cf. 14:1) (Moloney 1998:393-394; Culpepper 1998:209; Keener 2003:930-931; Beasley-Murray 1987:244-245). Thus the proper attitude of the disciples with respect to Jesus’ impending departure is mentioned here. This first sub-unit is obviously devoted to the theme of putting their faith in God and Jesus (see Ashton 1991:452-456; Schnackenburg 1982:55). 427

It may seem natural enough for a man to preface a parting address to his family with some words of comfort and reassurance: so one might expect to find this as a constitutive element in the testament form. 428 Thus the beginning part of the discourse appropriately explains some of the encouraging consequences of this death and departure (see Ashton 1991:452-456; Segovia 1991:81-82; Tolmie 1995:203). However, the truth is that the note of reassurance and the summons to faith with which Jesus prefaces his discourse in John 14 is not a regular element of the farewell discourse (Ashton 1991:453; cf. Witherington III 1995:248). The call to courage and faith in this sub-section has a totally different significance from other ancient farewell addresses.

Jesus first of all asks that μη. ταρασσέσθω ὑμων η καρδια (14:1a/colon 6.1). 429 In the Old Testament, God’s chosen servants and his people Israel were frequently told not to be afraid, as when entering the promised land (Deut. 1:21, 29; 427 The semantic relationships within the sub-unit are as follows: colon 6.2 is linked to colon 6.3 by means of an additive different consequential semantic relationship (an “unfolding” structure) if two occurrences of the verbs (πιστεύετε) are to be taken as both indicatives (or both imperatives). However, as some scholars think, if the first verb is indicative and the second verb imperative, these two cola have a logical basis-inference semantic relationship because this proposal indicates that Jesus appeals to the disciples’ faith in God as the basis for their faith in him. 427 To this colon 6.1 is semantically linked by means of an additive equivalent semantic relationship. The theme of this sub-unit is identified as “the call to courage and faith”, which is the proper attitude of the disciples with respect to Jesus’ departure.

428 Encouragement not to be afraid is standard in the farewell discourses (cf. 1 Enoch 92.2; T. Zebulon 10:1-2; Jubilee 22.23) (Blomberg 2001:197).

429 In John, the word καρδια only occurs (with the single exception of the quotation in 12:40) in the context of this situation (14:27; 16:6, 22) and, in accordance with Semitic anthropology (to which John...
20:1, 3; Josh. 1:9) or facing threats from their enemies (2 Kings 25:24; Isa. 10:24). The psalmist repeatedly affirms his unwavering trust in God (e.g., Ps. 27:1; 56:3-4). Isaac, Jeremiah and the apostle Paul alike are encouraged not to be afraid (Gen. 26:24; Jer. 1:8; Acts 27:24), as were Jesus’ disciples (Matt. 8:26 par.; 10:31 par.) (Köstnerberger 2004:425). The “turmoil” in which the disciples could be ensnared is of the kind Jesus himself endured as he approached the grave of Lazarus (11:23), as he faced the cross (12:27), and as he contemplated the betrayal of Judas (13:21) (cf. Luke 1:66) (Beasley-Murray 1987:248-249; see Kysar 1986:220; Morris 1971:636; Brown 1970:624; Bruce 1983:296; Segovia 1991:81-82). However, now that Judas has departed, Jesus calls on his disciples not to be troubled (Culpepper 1998:209; Blomberg 2001:197; see Keener 2003:930-931; Strachan 1941:279-280; Tolmie 1995:203; Witherington III 1995:248).

As Carson (1991:487) points out, the reason the disciples are troubled is not that they are rushing towards pain, ignominy, shame or crucifixion, but that they are confused, uncertain of what Jesus means, and threatened by references to his imminent departure, a departure which they cannot follow. Besides, as Morris (1971:636-637; also see Culpepper 1998:209) states, Peter has been thrown into consternation at the prediction of the threefold denial and there is no doubt that this had its effect on the others also. In other words, if Peter’s faith is to collapse to the point of denying his master, what will happen to the rest of the disciples (Beasley-Murray 1987:249; Segovia 1991:81; Witherington III 1995:248)? What’s more, Jesus knows that within a few short hours they will be even more upset. Thus the disciples are all very disturbed and Jesus accordingly tells them to be calm (Morris 1971:637; see Schnackenburg 1982:58; Strachan 1941:280; Bruce 1983:296; Segovia 1991:81-82; Morrison 2005:598-603; Keener 2003:930-931; Tolmie 1995:203).

keeps; see 11:33), refers to man’s emotional attitude and is the seat of his will and power of decision (see also μηδε. δειλια,τω; 14:27) (Schnackenburg 1982:58; Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:230).

Ridderbos (1997:488) is thus correct to say, “Although following 13:38 the abruptly introduced saying ‘μη. ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α’ constitutes the opening statement of a new section, this admonition clearly relates to the situation described in the preceding, in particular to the announcement – which the disciples have not understood – of Jesus’ departure and of their inability to follow him (13:33).”
Why does Jesus call on his disciples to show courage in the face of a frightening situation? What is the underlying reason for this announcement? The readers now naturally anticipate that the reason for this exhortation (14:1a) to the disciples to show courage will be revealed in the announcements and disclosures in the following section. The main motif of this study is that the primary purpose of the Johannine farewell discourse is above all to provide a basis for the disciples’ (and all believers’) continuing community with Jesus, in spite of the imminent separation, and to strengthen the future Christian community in its belief (Thomas 1991:67; Schnackenburg 1982:4). Thus the departure of Jesus is not a separation between him and his followers; rather, it opens the possibility of the permanent presence of Jesus in and among them. The call by Jesus his disciples to show courage may thus be understood in this perspective. This will be argued in detail below.

Jesus then demands that
\[\text{πιστευ,ετε ειϖϕ το.ν θεο.ν και. ειϖϕ εϖμε. πιστευ,ετε}\] (14:1bc/cola 6.2-6.3). 431

431 There is a debate whether both occurrences of \(\text{πιστευ,ετε}\) should be identified as imperative or indicative since the Greek forms are the same (see Carson 1991:487-488; Morris 1971:637-638; Barrett 1978:380; Kysar 1986:220). Some takes the possibility of indicative/indicative: “you trust in God and you trust in me.” This at some marginal level is true, but not obviously appropriate in this context since the core problem of the disciples’ felt turmoil is a lack of trust. Others prefer the possibility of indicative/imperative: “you trust in God; trust also in me.” According to Newman and Nida (1980:454), TEV alternative reading translates the first as indicative and the second as imperative. This makes sense as an invitation to extend the object of their faith beyond God as they have known him in the past to Jesus as well. Thus quite a number scholars support this option. Amongst others, Ridderbos (1997:488) says, “The chiastically structured pronouncement coordinates two clauses ("believe in God", "believe in me") and makes the second (imperatival) clause dependent on the first (indicative).” According to this theory, Jesus appeals to the disciples’ faith in God as the basis for their trust in him: “Surely you believe in God! Then believe also in me!” (Or “If you believe in God, then believe also in me!”). Ridderbos maintains that this sentence is eventually a request of Jesus to trust that he will not permanently leave them behind but will keep his promise that they will follow him later (13:36). However, as Carson (1991:488) points out, it is not clear, from their troubled hearts, that their trust in God is very secure at this point. Still others adopt the possibility of imperative/indicative: “Trust in God; you will trust in me.” This is syntactically possible, but it means taking the former clause as an imperatival condition, the latter as an apodosis introduced by καλ. Thus this option is incoherent. It is moreover possible to take some of these as interrogatives: “Do you believe in God? Then believe also in me.” Or a comma might be placed after the first word thus: “Believe, believe in God and also in me.” The investigator, following nearly all the Old Latin manuscripts and many early Fathers, takes both forms as imperative (see Barrett 1978:381; Beasley-Murray 1987:243; Carson 1991:488): “Trust in God; trust also in me” (so NIV). However, as Carson (1991:488) points out, it is not clear, from their troubled hearts, that their trust in God is very secure at this point. Still others adopt the possibility of imperative/indicative: “Trust in God; you will trust in me.” This is syntactically possible, but it means taking the former clause as an imperatival condition, the latter as an apodosis introduced by καλ. Thus this option is incoherent. It is moreover possible to take some of these as interrogatives: “Do you believe in God? Then believe also in me.” Or a comma might be placed after the first word thus: “Believe, believe in God and also in me.” The investigator, following nearly all the Old Latin manuscripts and many early Fathers, takes both forms as imperative (see Barrett 1978:381; Beasley-Murray 1987:243; Carson 1991:488): “Trust in God; trust also in me” (so NIV). Newman and Nida (1980:454; see Morris 1971:638), TEV, together with most translators, take both of them as imperatives. They underscore that in favour of the choice accepted by TEV is the observation that the first verb in this verse (“do not be worried and upset”) is a specifically imperatival form in Greek. According to them, in this context “believe in me” must be understood in the sense of “put your confidence in me” or “trust yourself to me”. The primary reason for this adaptation is that it makes most sense of the context. Morris is one of
The term “faith” has significant implications in the Gospel of John. This forces the people to accept the divine identity of Jesus in the Gospel. This is vividly illustrated in the narrative of the healing of the man blind from birth in 9:1-44 (see Hwang 2004:134ff.). The blind man in this episode is used as material on the occasion of the disciples’ theological questions and Jesus’ revelatory remarks; but subsequently he takes on a living presence as one who acts upon the authoritative command of Jesus (Staley 1991:65; see Duke 1985:125; Painter 1986:31-61). In the ensuing dialogical narratives, the blind man, as the major character in the episode, appears in five of its seven scenes and has more dialogue that any of the other characters. Throughout the story his role is the opposite of that of the authorities. From the outset, unlike the cripple at the pool of Bethesda (in chapter 5), the once-blind man knows his benefactor’s identity and gives credit where credit is due (Bruce 1983:211). Moreover, throughout the entire story, he symbolises the growth of faith while the Pharisees symbolise the decline of faith (Holleran 1993:20; Poirier 1996:288-294; Cook 1992:251-261; Farmer 1996:59-63; Alison 1997:83-102). This blind man’s progressive faith-confession to Jesus can be accepted as the greatest part of the whole narrative (see O’Day 1987:55; Strachan 1941:219-220; Painter 1986:31-61).

With the progress of the scenes, the blind man’s confession to Jesus becomes more specific and profound (see Poirier 1996:288-294; Cook 1992:251-261; Farmer 1996:59-63; Alison 1997:83-102; Painter 1986:31-61). Holleran (1993:20) states the scholars who favour this option. According to him (1971:637-638), “It might be urged that, as John understands it, faith in Jesus is not something additional to faith in God, to be exercised by those who choose so to do.” He continues, “Jesus is urging his followers to continue to believe in the Father and to continue to believe also in him, and in this way not to let their hearts be troubled.” He however mentions, “Yet it must be admitted that other ways of taking the words are possible.” Kysar is another scholar who defends this theory. He (1986:220) notes, “The close relationship of the Father and the Son implies that belief in one includes belief in the other.” Schnackenburg (1982:59) also supports this idea, by saying, “For John, there is only one faith and that is in Jesus and God at the same time, with the result that trust in God is shaken if faith in Jesus is not preserved.” However, scholars generally agree that the difference of meaning is not great (see Brown 1970:618). Barrett (1978:380) notes, “None of these variations is repugnant to the sense of the passage as a whole.” Morris (1971:637) mentions, “The expression might be translated in any one of a bewildering variety of ways.” Schnackenburg (1982:58-59) remarks, “The meaning is not fundamentally different in either case, because the following clause, the call to believe in Jesus, is in one way or the other dependent on it – the disciples can and should, the evangelist is saying, also preserve their faith in Jesus by relying on faith in God.” Carson (1991:488) states, “All the options assume a formidably high Christology, for they link Jesus with the Father as an appropriate object of faith.”

432 In this regard, he is a typical round character.
this confessional development as follows: in the first scene, the blind man does exactly what Jesus tells him to do and finds himself gifted with sight. In the second scene, and thereafter repeatedly, he witnesses to the reality, the manner and the author of the healing. In the process he comes ever more to stand as an advocate who defends Jesus against the attacks of the authorities and proves that Jesus is a prophet from God who cannot be a sinner and work such signs. By the time the Pharisees cast him out of the synagogue, he has condemned the stubbornness of the Pharisees, and by contrast when Jesus finds him, he receives Jesus as the Son of Man in worship and faith. Although the man is expelled from the synagogue and thus is judged to be an inferior by the Jewish authorities (v. 34), he is proved by the narrator to be superior to the religious leaders due to his full confession of faith (cf. Karris 1990:49). That is, the man gains not only his physical sight, but also his spiritual sight, which is the most appropriate response to Jesus’ miracle (cf. Farmer 1996:62-63; Painter 186:31-61).

433 The term “Son of Man” (τον υιον του θεου) in this passage is replaced by “Son of God” (τον υιον του Θεου) in some later Greek witnesses and Latin versions, i.e., A L Δ Ψ Θ 070 0141 0233 f 158 28 33 Byz [E F G] lect sy bo slav, etc. However, there is a close parallel to this passage in 12:31-36 (Barrett 1978:364; Schnackenburg 1980:253). The major manuscripts (P66 P75 A B D W it d sys sa) also support θεον,που. Not only does the textual evidence appear to favour it, but the context also strongly suggests its correctness. For a discussion on the contextual support of this reading, see Burkett (1991).

434 Some scholars such as Yee (1989:44-45) suppose that, with the fear of the blind man’s parents (v. 22), the persecution of the synagogue reflects the circumstances of the author’s time rather than Jesus’ time.

435 o δε εις ησουφ in this passage is supported by P66 Α2 A B D L Δ Ψ 0141 f 1 Byz [E F G] lect itaaur,bo and some church Fathers. However, P75 A W itb some Coptic versions and Diatessaron omit this verse. This seems to be why εις ησουφ is rare in the Gospel of John (only 1:23). Brown (1966:376) explains that some witnesses read it in v. 36, and its use here may be borrowed from there. Therefore o δε εις ησουφ ...... καλ ησουφ is perhaps the original reading. Incidentally 1 and 253 read this verse as: τον υιον του θεου/ ο εις ησουφ. This is a mixture of v. 38-39 and 11:27, so its support is the weakest among both external and internal evidence.

436 On the narratological level, this gradual faith-confession of the blind man ultimately functions as a tool for the presentation of Jesus’ identity in full. The reader acquires the identity of Jesus gradually and profoundly through the mouth of this man. This is the same pattern of exposure of Jesus’ identity in the first chapter of the Gospel, where John the Baptist plays the role of witness (see “macro structure” in Chapter II). In the present narrative, Jesus is depicted as the miraculous healer in the opening scene but, in the last scene, Jesus is introduced as “the Son of Man”. After all, through the characterisation of the blind man, John wants to draw twofold significance: 1) the help of Jesus for the man troubled by the physical suffering on the surface level, and 2) the introduction of the visual effect of Jesus’ revelatory mention on the deeper level.
Therefore the physically absent one can be seen through the eye of faith. The presence of Jesus can be recognised by means of faith. This faith plays a significant role in the transition from turmoil to peace. The term “faith” in this context retains its basic Old Testament meaning of “trusting firmly in someone” (cf. Isa. 7:9; 28:16), even more emphatically than elsewhere (Schnackenburg 1982:59; cf. Keener 2003:930-931). Thus to have faith in God is to participate in his steadfastness, which is an appropriate note in the present context (Brown 1970:618). Moreover, this term denotes personal relational trust, in keeping with Old Testament usage (e.g. Isa. 28:16). In the Old Testament, too, God’s people were called upon to trust in God and in his servants (Moses: Exod. 14:31; the prophets: 2 Chron. 20:20) (Köstenberger 2004:425). The understandable consternation of the disciples after the events, commands, and prophecies of 13:31-38 must be overcome through a renewal of their firm and relational trust in God and in Jesus (cf. Moloney 1998:393).

3.3.2.2. The purpose of Jesus’ departure (14:2-3/cola 6.4-6.7)

437 The disciples’ faith is threatened, with the result that Jesus at once admonishes them to believe. They are first and foremost asked to believe in God himself, since their faith in the person of Jesus can come to grief (cf. 3:19) (see Schnackenburg 1982:58).

438 The first sub-section contains a twofold call to the disciples: a call to courage (14:1a) and a call to faith (14:1b). First, the negative tone of the preceding announcements and disclosures yields to an exhortation (14:1a) calling for courage on the part of the disciples. Second, the call to belief of 14:1b is in itself a twofold call, involving a call to believe in God and a call to believe in Jesus. The first part of this sub-section specifically addresses the issue of belief as such – with a delineation of the relationship between Jesus and the Father and an understanding of Jesus’ departure in terms of this relationship. Both of these beginning calls, therefore, are interrelated and interdependent. On the one hand, both are grounded in the negative tone and issued on the basis of a far more positive message to follow. On the other hand, both also point to and reinforce one another: courage comes from belief, and belief gives rise to courage. These initial calls of 14:1 begin to redirect, therefore, the thrust of the entire unit, anticipating and informing all that follows in the following discourse. In effect, with these calls the extended process of teaching and consolation begins (Segovia 1991:81-82; Tolmie 1995:203).
Faith and trust in God is still a reasonable request to make of the disciples, but the imperative “believe in me” may involve a risky association with a doomed man that is more than they are prepared to give. Jesus thus begins to explain more fully the significance of his impending departure (Moloney 1998:393-394). Jesus in this second sub-section tells them where he is going: to his Father’s house (cf. Philo, On Dreams 1.256, speaks of heaven as “the paternal house”). He also tells them for what purpose he is going: to prepare a place for them among the many abiding places in his Father’s house (cf. Testament of Abraham 20:14; 1 Enoch 39:4; 41:2; 22:4; 2 Enoch 61:2; 2 Esdras 7:80, 101; Joseph and Aseneth 8:11; Luke 16:9, 22-26) and then he will return, to take them to himself, and to keep them with him (12:26; 17:24) (Talbert 1992:204). Thus Jesus uses comforting images of home-making (Orchard 1998:181; Coloe 2001:157-178; cf. Freed 1983:62-73).


The second sub-unit (cola 6.4-6.7/14:2-3) is demarcated as a separated unit, since this sub-unit has dominant appearances of the same semantic domain: “Linear Movement” (Louw & Nida 1988:181-211) – “πορευ,ομαι” in cola 6.5 (14:2b) and 6.6 (14:3a), “ε;ρχομαι” in colon 6.6 that are belonged to the same subdomain 15.1-17 (“move, come/go”), and “παραλη,μψομαι” in colon 6.7 (14:3b) that belongs to subdomain 15.165-186 (“lead, bring, take”). More evidence of this demarcation is found in the fact that the spatial terms are dominant in this sub-unit: οιϖκι,α in colon 6.4 (14:2a), μοναι. in cola 6.4 and two occurrences of το,ποϕ in cola 6.5 and 6.6 respectively. Thus the demarcation of this sub-unit from the preceding is correct. Semantically, colon 6.4 is linked to colon 6.5 by means of a coordinate dyadic alternative relationship and colon 6.6 is linked to colon 6.7 by means of a subordinate logical condition-result relationship. These two groups of cola have a coordinate additive different consequential semantic relationship.

So Carson (1991:489): “The simplest explanation is best: my Father’s house refers to heaven...” Barrett (1978:456) mentions Luke 2:49 and John 2:16 and says “both of these passages refer to the Temple” and draws attention to John 8:35. These are relevant texts, but Barrett makes nothing of them. Immediately he goes on to say: “The thought of heaven is of course very widespread in most religions.....” However, he does have a cautionary word about identifying “the Father’s house” with heaven. He says, “... to speak of ‘heaven’ may, if the term is not carefully understood, misinterpret the “Father’s house”. Communion with God is a permanent and universal possibility.” Lindars (1972:470) has a similar remark: “Just as the Temple was regularly called the house of God (cf. 2:16), so heaven was pictured as a palace by many ancient peoples.” Morris (1971:638) says without any supporting...
course very widespread in most ancient religions (e.g., Ps. 2:4; 103:19; 123:1; Eccles. 5:1). The concept of heavenly apartments for the righteous is particularly attested to in Jewish thought (e.g., 1 Enoch 39:4f) (see Barrett 1978:381; Kysar 1986:220-221; Freed 1983:62-73; Tenney 1976:213; Keener 2003:932-939; Beutler 1984:73-75; Tolmie 1995:79). Certainly, the Johannine Jesus speaks of coming down from heaven on a number of occasions (3:13, 31; 6:33, 38) and when he addresses the Father he lifts his eyes to heaven (17:1), but this is no justification for making an immediate and unsubstantiated equation between “heaven” and “my Father’s house” (Kerr 2002:276-277).

The phrase, “my Father’s house,” occurs on only one other occasion in John (τον οικον του/ πατρο,ϕ μου, in 2:16) and there it unambiguously refers to the temple in which God dwells (see Kerr 2002:277; Keener 2003:932-939; Barrett 1978:381; McCaffrey 1988:49-75; Segovia 1991:82; Tolmie 1995:132; Fischer 1975:241-285, 292; Kysar 1986:221). Besides, one probable interpretation of Jesus’ words in Luke 2:49 is that he is referring to the temple as εϖν του/φ του/ πατρο,ϕ μου, exactly as here (Blomberg 2001:198; Bruce 1983:296). The temple is described as the house of the Father (Van der Watt 2000:302; cf. evidence that, “My Father’s house clearly refers to heaven.” Schnackenburg (1982:60-61) quotes from Jewish and non-Jewish (particularly Gnostic) texts many references to “heavenly dwellings”. The closest reference to heaven being “my Father’s house” seems to be Philo’s remarks about the soul’s return to the paternal house after being alienated in the world. However, this thought is foreign to John where the emphasis is on the “enfleshment” of the Word (cf. 1:14) and on the resurrection of the body (not the soul, cf. John 11:25).

442 The term “house” as a term for the place where God resides conveys an idea found frequently in both the Old Testament and in Jewish and Hellenistic writings at the time of Jesus. But, according to him, in these writings “house of God” is normally used of the temple, not heaven (Ridderbos 1997:490).

443 John 2:13-22 is also unique in John for the frequency and variety of its Temple vocabulary. Moreover it is centred entirely on the Temple itself as the Jewish place of worship, and unfolds within the precincts of the Temple. The editorial comment in 2:21 explicitly refers the words of 2:19 about the Jerusalem Temple to the body of Jesus. There is doubtless an unremitting emphasis on the Temple in 2:13-22. In addition to the verbal link between 14:2-3 and 2:13-22 (“my Father’s house”) there is also an identical chronological setting of an immediate future Passover in both pericopae. John 2:13 speaks of εϖγγυ.ϕ η=ν το. πα,σχα and 13:1 has Προ. δε. τη/φ ε⎯ορτη/φ του/ πα,σχα (cf. 11:55; 12:1). Also the general framework of a pilgrimage to the Jerusalem Temple is common to both passages (αινε,βη ειϖρ ~Ιεροσο,λυμα, 2:13; αινε,βησαν πολλοι. ειϖϕ ~Ιεροσο,λυμα, 11:55-56; 12:20). The scene of the Temple episode (2:13-22) and the Foot washing/Farewell Discourses/Prayer (chapters 13-17) both unfold after a pilgrimage to the Jerusalem Temple and in the perspective of an immediate future Passover. Thus 2.13-22 and 14.2-3 have similar settings and have a significant verbal link in the words “my Father’s house” (Kerr 2002:277).

444 The word οικι,α has often been interpreted in a corporeal sense, in the light of the concept of the Church as a spiritual house or temple of God (cf. e.g., 1 Cor. 3:16-17; Eph. 2:20-22; 1 Pet. 2:5, also John 2:19-21) (see Beasley-Murray 1987:249).

445 In 11:31 and 12:3 the term οικι,α refers to a building where one dwells. The term οικοϕ is also found in 4:35; 8:35 and 14:2. The term οικοϕ is found in 2:16, 17; 7:53; and 11:20 (Van der Watt 2000:344).

446 In the Gospel of John, the family metaphor is dominantly employed throughout the narrative as a literary device. See the detailed treatment of the topic by Van der Watt (2000).

447 The Samaritan woman is told “neither on this mountain nor in Jerusalem you will worship the Father” (4:23). The geographical origin of Jesus is presented as a mystery (7:27,40-44; 9:29). The worship of the disciples in John 20 on the first day of the week is at an unspecified place. In 20.19 the word “house” is not even mentioned in the Greek text. All the readers are told is that the doors were shut for fear of the Jews. And likewise in 20.26 there is no mention of “house”. The disciples are simply said to be within (saw). It is believed this relativising of space with respect to the Johannine Jesus is deliberate. The new Temple of YHWH is not to be found in any special place, but in the presence of Jesus, who is the Spirit of truth (cf. 4:24). So the understanding of “my Father’s house” in John 14:2 should not be in spatial terms (Kerr 2002:294).

448 As Carson (1991:489) insists, the point here is not the lavishness of each apartment, but the fact that there is more than enough space for every one of Jesus’ disciples to join him in his Father’s home.

449 The word translated “rooms” (so Gdsp, Phps, JB) has occasioned some difficulty (Newman & Nida 1980:454). The Latin Vulgate translated it “mansiones”. Following his lead, so did the AV/KJV: “In my Father’s house are many mansions” (see Beasley-Murray 1987:249; Carson 1991:489; Culpepper 1998:210; Witherington III 1995:248-249). However, the meaning of “mansions” is not so clear (Morris 1971:638). Carson (1991:489) mentions that since heaven is here pictured as the Father’s house, it is more natural to think of “dwelling-place” within a house as rooms (NIV) or suites or the like. The most contemporary translations (including NEB, NAB) render the expression as “dwelling places” (see Newman & Nida 1980:454).

450 This literally means temporary shelters used by travellers.

451 According to Ridderbos (1997:490), “‘Dwelling’ or ‘rooms’ as a term for the place where people will be after this life was certainly known in the religious world of Jesus’ day.” He continues, “Still, the
or “station” (for other evidence see L.S. s.v., and cf. the Latin mansio) (see Hauck 1967:580). According to this, heaven is a place of progression, with many resting places or stops along the way. Although some commentators, ancient and modern, take the word in this sense, most commentators make the point that the μονη, refers to permanent dwellings and not lodging places or stations. The presupposition that it means a permanent dwelling place is supported by the one use of μονη, in the LXX (1 Macc. 7:38), and by indications of a Jewish belief in compartments, or dwelling-places, in heaven (1 Enoch 39:4; cf. 2 Enoch 61:2) (Hauck 1967:574-588; Coloe 2001:162-164; Barrett 1978:381; Newman & Nida 1980:454; Schnackenburg 1982:60-61). This would be true, too, for 14:23 where the clause literally reads “we will come to him and make our home (μονη,ν) with him” (so NRS) (Newman & Nida 1980:454; Kerr 2002:300; see Barrett 1978:381; Newman & Nida 1980:454; Brown 1970:619; Freed 1983:62-73; Lightfoot 1956:275; Tenney 1976:213-214; Haenchen 1984:124; Schnackenburg 1982:59-62; Segovia 1991:82-84; Keener 2003:932-939; Morris 1971:638; Moloney 1998:397).

The word μονη, is the plural form of a noun corresponding to the common and important Johannine use of the verb με,νειν, which is a cognate of the verb με,νω (to

way in which it is used here is certainly not explained by this religio-historical background. It flows, rather, directly from Jesus’ self-consciousness and his understanding of heaven as his Father’s house. In that house there is room in abundance. That is what makes it his Father’s house.”

Lindars (1972:470-71): “It does not refer to lodging places along the way or to different departments in heaven on arrival.” Brown (1970:619) goes into some detail about the Aramaic cognate, Patristic usage, Latin and English translations and concludes, “It would be much more in harmony with Johannine thought to relate μονη, to the cognate με,νειν, frequently used in John in reference to staying, remaining, or abiding with Jesus and with the Father”; Morris (1971:638), “In the present chapter.... it is the sense of permanence that is required”; Schnackenburg (1982:60-61) opts for “permanent abodes” and remarks, “There is no suggestion here of any grading according to status or merit.... ” Carson (1991:489), against Origen and those who have followed him (e.g., Temple, 226), points out, “Heaven is not here pictured as a series of progressive and temporary states that one advances up until perfection is finally attained.” Indeed, “the idea of continuing development in the next world, though attractive and possibly true, is not taught in Scripture” (Morris 1971:638). Besides, “the word carries no such overtones, and there are no hints in the context to support such a view” (Carson 1991:489). However, Westcott (1954:200) has a contrary opinion based, it seems, on the Latin Vulgate rendering of “mansions”, “which were resting places, and especially the “stations” on a great road where travellers found refreshment. This appears to be the true meaning of the word here [i.e. in John 14:2]; so that the contrasted notions of repose and progress are combined in this vision of the future.” This is a valiant attempt to combine the notions of movement and rest. But the Vulgate rendering has been a red herring and does not do justice to the significance of μονη, at all (Kerr 2002:300).
remain, to stay, to dwell). The form of the verb related to this word has already been used, positively and negatively, in the earlier parts of the narrative (cf. 1:32; 7:27, 56; 8:31, 35; 12:34, 46 [positively]; 9:41; 12:46 [negatively]) with the sense of the presence or rejection of an intimate reciprocity, and it will reappear shortly as the Leitmotif of 15:1-11 (Moloney 1998:394). Besides, since the latter use in John makes reference to a close and reciprocal relationship (e.g., 14:10, 17), the noun μοναί would mean the condition or state of living within that relationship. The thought is, then, that there is a condition of intimacy with the Father awaiting the believer (Kysar 1986:221; cf. Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:230; Blomberg 2001:198; Culpepper 1998:210; Keener 2003:932-939; Morris 1971:638-639; Freed 1983:62-73; Bruce 1983:297-298; Coloe 2001:162-164). The term μοναί has more to do with a “relationship” than with a “place” (Van der Watt 2000:302, 345; Kerr 2002:299ff; Kysar 1986:221). Indeed, although John uses this figure and speaks of many μοναί, he does not want this word to be taken literally: Jesus restores the right “relationship” with God. He makes man at home with the Father (Haenchen 1984:124).

The subsequent passage, εἰς δὲ μὴν ἐπιτεθηκέν τον ἄνδρα ὑμᾶς, (14:2b/colon 6.5) is difficult to translate because it has a disturbed textual tradition. 456

453 According to Brown (1970:619), such an interpretation would also have suited the Gnostic theory that the soul in its ascent passes through stages wherein it is gradually purified of all that is material.

454 Moloney (1998:397) translates this word with “abiding places” to show the Johannine nature of the term because he recognises that the term “abiding” best translates the repeated use of the verb μενεῖν in 15:1-11. Despite its possible rich background, Moloney affirms the Johannine nature of the expression, which will be dealt with in detail below.

455 While this promise has to do with the heavenly existence of the believers, there is also a sense that this relationship is realised in the association of Christ with his church (Kysar 1986:221).

456 The first question is whether a stop should be placed after ὑμᾶς, or the sentence should run on with ὁτι (Barrett 1978:381). Some ancient witnesses omit the conjunction ὁτι (P26* C2\textit{vid} Δ Θ 700 Byz Lect, followed by the Textus Receptus). The reading with ὁτι seems to be the lectio difficilior. This means that an omission of ὁτι would apparently make better sense (see McCaffrey 1988:138-140). Metzger (1994:206), in this regard, mentions that its absence in some manuscripts may be explained as a simplification introduced by copyists who took it as ὁτι recitativum, which in the Greek structure is often omitted as superfluous (see Bernard 1928b:533-534; Newman & Nida 1980:455). Thus the UBS committee on the Greek text decided in favour of the manuscripts that include ὁτι, and many scholars have agreed that the ὁτι is wrongly omitted by the first hand of some witnesses (Brown 1970:619; Morris 1971:639; Barrett 1978:381; Carson 1991:490; Moloney 1998:397). If no stop is made and thus the clause πορευόμαι ἐς τοιμασίαν τὸν ὑμᾶς (I am...
Interpreting it as recitative, many view the sentence as interrogative\(^{457}\): “If it were not going to prepare a place for you) is immediately preceded by a conjunction in Greek \(\text{οτι}\), the second issue arises whether this account is a statement or a question due to the lack of punctuation in early texts (cf. Kysar 1986:221). This reading with \(\text{οτι}\) makes possible four different translations of the line (cf. Brown 1970:619): (a) “if it were not so, I would have told you, because I go to prepare a place for you”; (b) “if it were not so, would I have told you, because I go to prepare a place for you?”; (c) “if it were not so, I would have told you that I go to prepare a place for you”; and (d) “if it were not so, would I have told you that I go to prepare a place for you?” According to Brown (1970:619), one can make sense of (a) only if the first clause is put in parentheses, and the real sequence is: “There are many dwelling places in my Father’s house (…) because I go to prepare a place for you.” Brown continues that both (b) and (d) depend on a previous statement of Jesus; yet Jesus has not previously told his disciples that there are many dwelling places in his Father’s house (b) or that he was going off to prepare a place for them (d). Brown furthermore mentions that one can make sense of (c): if there were not dwelling places, Jesus would have told them that he would go off to make places. Yet, as 14:3 indicates, (according to Brown) it is not really a question of Jesus’ telling them that he was going off, but of his actual going off (cf. Newman & Nida 1980:455). Scholars are divided on which translations to take. Barrett (1978:381) sees that the form of a statement of fact does not seem to make sense. Thus, given the fact that Jesus never before told the disciples of the Father’s house or the many abiding places, he (1978:381) takes \(\text{ειπω δε. μη, (ει=πον α∋ν υ⎯μι/ν μυσεν} \) as a parenthesis, and to connect \(\text{οτι}\) with v. 2a: “There are many abiding places (and if it had not been so I would have told you), for I am going to prepare a place for you.” Moloney (1998:397), following Barrett, also reads 14:2b, including the \(\text{οτι}\), as an insistence upon the importance of the word of Jesus, building on the imperative of 14:1c (believe also in me): “There are many abiding places, and if it had not been so I would have told you, for I am going to prepare a place for you.” Some other scholars take the option, as TEV and GeCL: “If it were not so, I would have told you. I am going to prepare a place for you.” This rendering assumes that 14:2b relates both to that which precedes and to that which follows (Beasley-Murray 1987:243). To put it precisely, as Newman and Nida (1980:455) state, “By taking ‘that’ as a means of introducing the content of what follows, and by referring the clause ‘if it were not so’ both forward and backward, a meaning is arrived at that makes good sense, and is possible on the basis of the Greek text.” Thus they think that the problem can be overcome. Kysar (1986:221; cf. Bernard 1928b:533-534), who also favours this option, mentions that the meaning of this statement is the assurance (1) that Jesus would not mislead his followers with such a promise and (2) that he goes ahead of his followers, forging a place for them. However, Carson (1991:490) observes the form of a statement (here \(\text{οτι}\) means “that”) as a barely possible rendering. Alternatively, according to him, the \(\text{οτι}\) could mean a causal relation “because” or “for” and be connected with the first part of v. 2: “In my Father’s house are many rooms (if it were not so I would have told you), for I am going there to prepare a place for you.” (He argues) The logic of this is a bit stilted, and the parenthetical remark somewhat awkward. He thus supposes that the question form is least objectionable, understanding that John’s report is meant to be so condensed that he has chosen not to record the fact that Jesus is going to prepare a place for his disciples other than by the rhetorical question itself. According to Ridderbos (1997:488-489), in view of the context, the meaning can hardly be other than: “If matters stood otherwise with my going away and if it were only my business and not yours as well, then would I have spoken to you about it as I have? For I am going away precisely for the purpose of preparing a place for you.” He sees that, with “would I have told you…”?, Jesus is evidently referring to his “going away” and their “following afterward” (13:36); he now explains that he is going away “to prepare a place for them, imagery that fits the earlier mention of ‘my Father’s house.’”

\(^{457}\) Newman and Nida (1980:455) note, “Many languages require an inversion of the conditional sentence to read ‘If this were not so, I would not have told you this.’ However, there are special difficulties in some languages with a condition contrary to fact in the present time; in these languages it may be necessary to translate, for example, ‘if this was not the case (but it is), I would not tell you this (but I am telling you this).’”
so, would I have told you that ……?"\(^{458}\) (so NRS, Moffatt, Bultmann, Bernard, Bauer, Hoskyns, Strathmann, Haenchen, Becker, Bruce).\(^{459}\) This question form seems most appropriate to the investigator.\(^{460}\) The remark that Jesus prepares a room should be seen as a metaphor, since Jesus obviously does not prepare a room like an ordinary person would prepare one (Van der Watt 2000:302, 345). Thus the account in 14:2 forms part of a complex system of imagery. The following submerged metaphors are found: house of the Father, many rooms, Jesus prepares a place (Van der Watt 2000:345; cf. Haenchen 1984:124; Freed 1983:62-73; Schnackenburg 1982:59-60; Countryman 1994:101; McCaffrey 1988:49-75; Moloney 1998:394; Segovia 1991:82-83; Coloe 2001:162-164; Keener 2003:932-939).

This assumption is supported when one compares the passage in this verse with the similar statement in 14:23. From John 14:2 and 14:23 one might conclude that the “dwelling-place” of God is either in heaven (14:2), or on earth (14:23). At first glance, there appears to be a discrepancy between these two utterances by Jesus: on the one hand (14:2), Jesus promises his disciples that he will prepare rooms for them at the Father’s “dwelling-place” (presumably in heaven), and then he will come to fetch them; on the other hand (14:23) he promises that he and the Father will come and make a dwelling-place with the believer (presumably on earth). This might immediately provoke a question regarding the credibility of both utterances (Oliver & van Aarde 1991:381). Which is correct? Or can one find a correlation between the two? Furthermore, there is Jesus’ pronouncement in John 18:36 that his “kingdom” is not of this world.\(^{461}\) What does he mean by this? If one understands the passage in 14:2 with 14:23 in terms of metaphor as above, the proposal can be made that 14:2 and 14:23, read together with John 18:36, focus upon a **unique relationship** between a

---

\(^{458}\) If one follows the manuscripts that omit the conjunction, it is possible to translate as JB: “If there were not, I should have told you. I am going now to prepare a place for you” (see Newman & Nida 1980:455).

\(^{459}\) However, English versions tend to view it as a statement, either following the Textus Receptus and omitting \(\text{οτι}\) (so AV/KJV, JB, NIV) or understanding \(\text{οτι}\) as “because” (so RV, NEB, NAS, Lagrange, Barrett, Morris, Lightfoot, Lindars).

\(^{460}\) “However it is turned, it still does not give a satisfactory meaning” (Schnackenburg 1982:59).

\(^{461}\) Earlier Strachan (1941:280) notes, “‘My Father’s house’ is not to be interpreted merely in terms of the future life in heaven (cf. 8:35).” He adds, “The ‘House of the Father’ and the ‘Kingdom of God’ are not separate conceptions.” For him, “The expression ‘house’ corresponds to the name ‘Father’, the expression ‘kingdom’ to the name given to the King.”
father/king and his children/followers/subjects (Oliver & van Aarde 1991:381).

The terms πορευ,ομαι in 14:2 and πορευθω in 14:3a mean the same as ὑπαγω in 13:33 – Jesus’ death, which is his ascension to the Father. His passion is the means by which he makes available the opportunity to dwell in a relationship with the Father (Kysar 1986:221). However, there is disagreement about the meaning of the term παλιν ερχομαι in 14:3b (see Kerr 2002:310; Moloney 1998:398; Carson 1991:488; Tolmie 1995:78-79). The reference παλιν ερχομαι is indeed ambiguous in this setting (Kysar 1986:222). Jesus says he is coming back, but when does he come back? Some (e.g., Bernard 1928b:534-536; Carson 1991:488-489; Becker 1970:220; Beutler 1984:41; Kaefer 1984:257; Brown 1970:626; Schnelle 1989:67) regard this statement as totally determined by an end-time eschatological perspective, in which they propose this statement refers to the second advent of Jesus. Others (e.g., Marsh 1968:503; Lindars 1972:471; Fischer 1975:299-348) attempt to read this statement in terms of the appearance of the risen Jesus to the disciples. Still others

462 As Oliver and van Aarde (1991:381) point out, this unique relationship has been overlooked by the scholars. According to these authors (1991:381), there is only one scholar who in a certain sense worked in the direction of a unique relationship between God, who can be pictured as the father, and his followers/subjects, who are portrayed as his children. This is Aalen, who as early as 1962 wrote an article, titled “Reign and house in the kingdom of God in the Gospels”. Oliver and van Aarde (see 1991:379-400) provide a comprehensive investigation of this statement that focuses upon a unique relationship between a father/king and his children/followers/subjects.

463 Beasley-Murray (1987:249) argues that the phrase και επαν at the outset of the sentence is not to be rendered “and I go ...” (so TEV) but is truly conditional: “and if I go ...” (so NRS) (cf. 8:16; 12:32; 12:47). Kysar (1986:222) also points out that the Greek word επαν may be translated “if,” but, he says, the reassuring quality of these words indicates that the NRS is preferable. Although this reference appears as “and if...” in most translations, according to Newman and Nida (1980:456), in such a context the Greek particle (επαν) translated “if” actually carries the meaning “when,” and TEV expresses this by translating “and after”. Newman and Nida (1980:456) say that in some languages the idea may be expressed more satisfactorily as cause or reason, for example, “Since I am going and preparing a place for you, I will come back....”

464 The language used of Jesus’ “coming back” and “being with” his disciples refers at various places in this chapter to different things (see Carson 1991:488): sometimes to Jesus’ return to his disciples after his resurrection, sometimes to Jesus’ coming to them by the Spirit after he has been exalted to the glory of the Father, and sometimes to his coming at the end of the age.

465 Besides, Jesus says, “A little while, and you will no longer see me, and again in a little while, and you will see me.” (16:16) The disciples were perplexed. They said, “What does he mean by a little while? We do not know what he means.” (16:18) And scholars have been as perplexed as the disciples and asked the same question (see Kerr 2002:308).

466 Talbert (1992:204), for instance, supposes that John 14:3 appears to be a Johannine adaptation of the tradition reflected in 1 Thessalonians 4:16-17 (and Mark 13:24-27) and thus the coming of Jesus mentioned here is a reference to the Parousia (cf. 21:22-23 where Jesus’ coming is clearly the Parousia).
(e.g., Lightfoot 1956:275-276; Bultmann 1971:602; Kundsinn 1934:213) think that the coming of Jesus at the moment of the death of individual disciples is in view. What is more, for some scholars (e.g., De Boer 1996:130-132; Keener 1993:299; Schnackenburg 1982:62-63), the return of Jesus here refers to the coming of the Paraclete.

Except for the first option (that is, the Parousia at the end of age), the other three forms are not tenable in the light of the immediate context: first of all, the appearances of the risen Jesus in themselves is not enough to meet the requirement of permanency indicated by the words “dwelling places” and the phrase “that where I am there you may be also”. Those appearances of the risen Jesus, profoundly significant though they were, were nevertheless sporadic and temporary and would not have fulfilled the promise of Jesus (Kerr 2002:310). Then, the coming of Jesus at the moment of the death of individual disciples is contrary to the thrust of the passage. The only death in this context is that of Jesus, while the collective framing of the promise (“I will come back and take you [plural] to be with me”) cannot easily be squared with such an interpretation (Carson 1991:488; cf. Fischer 1975:310-311). Finally, the opinion that the return of Jesus here refers to the coming of the Spirit-Paraclete after Jesus has been exalted to the glory of the Father may be reasoned by means of reading this referent of the word in v. 23 back into vv. 2-3, but the fact remains that the word μονη, simply means “dwelling place”; there is no more reason to read the referent of that word (i.e., to what dwelling place the word refers) in v. 23 back into v. 2 than the reverse: in both instances the context must decide (Carson 1991:489).467

clumsy, but the conclusion to the verse, \(\text{i\[\nu\alpha\ o[\pi\omega\ \varepsilon\iota\sigma\mu\iota\ \varepsilon\pi\gamma\omega\ \kappa\alpha\iota\ \nu\ \mu\epsilon\iota\phi\ \eta=\tau\varepsilon}\) ("so that where I am you may also be") demands a future meaning for the sentence.\(^{468}\) Beasley-Murray (1987:250), who maintains that the reference \(\pi\alpha,\lambda\iota\nu\ \varepsilon\iota\rho\chi\omicron\omicron\alpha\iota\) expresses a genuine future, as the immediately following \(\pi\alpha\rho\alpha\lambda\iota\eta,\mu\psi\omicron\omicron\alpha\iota\) shows, argues that the saying appears to be a clear promise of the Parousia of Jesus, although in simpler and more "homely" language (literally so!) than representations of the event such as those of Mark 13:24-27; 1 Th. 4:15-18. He goes on to say that this appears to be demanded by the natural intent of \(\kappa\alpha\iota\ \pi\alpha\rho\alpha\lambda\iota\eta,\mu\psi\omicron\omicron\alpha\iota\ \nu\ \mu\alpha\iota\phi\ \pi\rho\kappa\iota\ \varepsilon\sigma\mu\alpha\upsilon\iota\omicron\nu\)\(^{469}\), and the clause that follows carries on the thought therein expressed: \(\text{i\[\nu\alpha\ o[\pi\omega\ \varepsilon\iota\sigma\mu\iota\ \varepsilon\pi\gamma\omega\ \kappa\alpha\iota\ \nu\ \mu\epsilon\iota\phi\ \eta=\tau\varepsilon}\) (that you also may be where I am)\(^{470}\); the picture is thus completed, of the Lord leaving the earth scene to prepare a place in the Father’s house for his disciples, and of his coming again to take them away to that “house” that they may be with him always.\(^{471}\) Furthermore, according to Köstenberger (2004:427), similar terminology is found in Songs 8:2a, where the bride says that she will bring her lover to her mother’s house. He goes on to argue that here Jesus, the messianic bridegroom (3:39), is said first to go to prepare a place for his

---

\(^{467}\) Moloney (1998:394) also notes, “This may be so, but the reader has not yet been told about the gift of the Paraclete.”

\(^{468}\) The phrase \(\pi\alpha,\lambda\iota\nu\ \varepsilon\iota\rho\chi\omicron\omicron\alpha\iota\) (literally “I am coming”) is a present tense that carries a future force. John has chosen the present to emphasise the certainty of Jesus’ return for his disciples (see Newman & Nida 1980:456; Tolmie 1995:79).

\(^{469}\) Ridderbos (1997:490) notes, “With ‘preparing a place’ we again have a concept that has clear parallels in the New Testament (Matt. 25:34; Mark 10:40; 1 Cor. 2:9; Heb. 11:16; 1 Peter 1:4) and elsewhere. But here the concept is subject to the imagery in v. 2a. Jesus is returning as the Son of the house (cf. 8:35) who has completed his task and who can therefore assign all the rooms available in the house to the many who believe in his name. The church’s future is completely determined by its union with Christ, and this gives the eschatological depiction of the church this graphic and sober character. Many interpreters have serious objections to this explanation, especially of Jesus’ return. The difficulty arises out of the Fourth Gospel’s supposed ‘present eschatology’, the idea that this Gospel consistently represents the salvation that appeared in Jesus’ coming as the inauguration and realization in the present of the great future. This is thought to contradict, and therefore make unacceptable, the explanation of Jesus’ return in the sense of the Parousia referred to elsewhere in the New Testament.”

\(^{470}\) According to Newman and Nida (1980:455), “In the statement ‘so that you will be where I am’, the pronouns ‘you’ and ‘I’ are emphatic. In some languages a general term of ‘being’ cannot be used. One must choose an expression that more specifically indicates existence, for example, ‘so that you will exist where I exist’. This meaning is often expressed in a more concrete form, for example, ‘so that you will live where I will live’ or even ‘so that you will sit where I sit’. (In some languages the verb ‘sit’ is a general designation for existence in a place).”

\(^{471}\) The passage is open to a misunderstanding of the returning Jesus as end-time oriented and thus serves to single out true and false believers. The true believers have life now as the predestined children of God in the world, while others wait (Stimpfle 1990:147-216).
own in his Father’s house and then to come to take them home to be with him.

However, as Kerr (2002:310; see Marrow 2002:90-102) remarks, the Parousia does not really fulfil the imminent expectancy that is present in John 14. For example, Jesus says to his disciples, “I will not leave you orphaned; I am coming to you. In a little while the world will no longer see me, but you will see me; because I live, you also shall live” (14:18-19). This coming of Jesus sounds imminent. The disciples will see Jesus in “a little while”. If his coming had been delayed until the coming in the Parousia (which had not happened at the time of the writing of the Gospel), then the disciples would have been effectively orphaned. It sounds as though 14:18-19 has the resurrection of Jesus in view, but not even those momentous appearances of the risen Jesus would suffice to fulfil the promise of 14:3 (Kerr 2002:310). The language in 14:2-3 seems to be purposely ambiguous in order to refer simultaneously to more than one coming (see Carson 1991:488; Morris 1971:639-640; Lagrange 1936:373-374; Strachan 1941:280; Barrett 1978:381-382; Keener 2003:932-939; Bruce 1983:298; Segovia 1991:82-83; Witherington III 1995:249). That is, it is likely that the original meaning had reference to the Parousia, but John intends it to apply equally to the presence of the resurrected Christ in the Spirit that makes his presence an immediate reality for the readers (Kysar 1986:222). Similarly, that place to which Jesus “will take you” has both a future-heavenly referent and a present reality in the church. Such an ambiguous meaning is necessitated by John’s consistent effort to see the future eschatological hope realised (at least in part) in the present life of the believer (e.g., 5:24-29 above). This means that while John holds out a hope for a future and heavenly relationship, he affirms that that relationship exists already for the life of faith. The heart of the promise is expressed in the last phrases of the verse – it is the presence of Christ that makes the difference for the believer (cf. 17:26). Where the believers are in the presence of Christ, there they are safe (Kysar 1986:222; cf. Gundry 1967:68-72).

The following forms the logical link between 14:2 (cola 6.4-6.5) and 14:3 (cola
6.6-6.7) (see Van der Watt 2000:345-346).

The interpretation of έπι τη/| οιςκλα| του/ πατρο,φ μου μοναι. πολλαι, ειςσινː.

6.4. (2) εσν τη/| οιςκλα| του/ πατρο,φ μου μοναι. πολλαι, ειςσινː.

6.5. ειςι δε. μην( ει=πον αεν υ μι/ν ο[τι πορευ,ομαι ε τοιμα,σαι το,πον υ μι/ν)

6.6. (3)

και. εσα.υ πορευθω/ και. ε τοιμα,σω το,πον υ μι/ν( πα,λιν εργομαι

6.7. και. παραλη,μωμαι υ μα/φ προ,φ εσμαντο,υ(ινα ο[που ειςμι. εσγο. και. υ μει/φ η=τεΘ

The interpretation of ο[που ειςμι. εσγο in 14:3 depends on where the house of the Father is. In this way the rather literal remarks of 14:3 are linked to the imagery in 14:2. The question is whether the individual metaphors in the account should be understood individually or whether they combine as a narrative unit to convey a message which does not depend on the detailed metaphor of house and rooms. The unitary proposal appears a better option, and is supported by the context. House and rooms are submerged metaphors and might be linked to heaven (see Brown 1970:625; Schnackenburg 1982:60-61; Carson 1991:489), but heaven is also vague and metaphorical (see Haenchen 1984:474; Countryman 1994:101). However, the context does not focus on the house or rooms as such, but on the description of the way to this house and eventually the personal relationship between family members (see e.g., 14:23-24). Thus the Father, or at least the relation with the Father (and Son), may serve as substitution for house. Jesus is the way that leads to the Father (14:6-7). He introduces believers to the Father (14:8-11) and focuses on the relation with the Master, Father, of the house. This would mean that the image of the house should not be interpreted in detail, looking for submerged tenors, but should rather function as an account (in this case with narrative qualities) that communicates as a whole to convey a specific idea(s) (Van der Watt 2000:346). After all, the description in this verse of the personal intimacy of Jesus and the believers suggests the close relations within the

house or family in which these believers will find themselves. They will really come home. The departure of Jesus serves this purpose (Van der Watt 2000:347; see Haenchen 1984:124; Moloney 1998:394; Coloe 2001:157-178).

3.3.2.3. Jesus as the way to God (14:4-6/cola 6.8-8.2)

After making the programmatic statement that the disciples will reach the same goal as him and be united with him, Jesus introduces a change of direction into the discourse that is perhaps surprising, but which is certainly in keeping with the Johannine train of thought. He does this by directing attention away from the goal to the way itself (Schnackenburg 1982: 63; Brown 1970:628; Haenchen 1984:124; Segovia 1991:84-85; Keener 2003:939-943; De la Potterie 1966:907-942; Tolmie

---

473 Moloney (1998:394) also emphasises, “Uppermost is the idea of a time between Jesus’ departure and his future return, but the clumsy presence of the present tenses retains a hint of the ongoing presence of Jesus. Much of the Gospel has insisted that a time is coming and is already present when those who believe in the Son have eternal life (cf. 3:15, 16, 36; 4:14, 36; 5:24-25; 6:27, 35, 47, 56, 63; 10:10, 28; 11:25-26; 12:50). How the one who departs will still be present is not explained. Further clarification is called for, but this is not an ordinary departure.” Thus this Gospel’s practice of balancing traditional and realised eschatology (cf. 5:25; 6:35-40, 44-48) reappears in this verse (Moloney 1998:394). In other words, the interpretation suggests that while an end-time eschatology is dominant, there is already a hint of the presence of the absent one (Moloney 1998:398).

474 Figuratively this account functions like a narrative in which the different elements work together to convey (a) message(s). Not every detail should be interpreted metaphorically (Van der Watt 2000:347).
1995:204; Gubler 1994:147-151). That is, the focus shifts from the goal of the departure to the route to that goal (De Boer 1996:132; Kysar 1986:222; Lindars 1972:417; Ball 1996:120; Witherington III 1995:249). This is evident from the beginning of this third sub-unit, where Jesus introduces the concept of the way (14:4/colon 6.8). This is Jesus’ assertion: “The disciples know how to follow Jesus” (Morris 1971:640). Jesus has been teaching the disciples the way in the whole body of his teaching (cf. De Boer 1996:132; Brown 1970:628-630; Moloney 1998:394; Segovia 1991:85-86; Koester 2003:295-299; De la Potterie 1966:907-942; Keener 2003:939-943; Gubler 1994:147-151; Ratzinger 1990:68-87; Lindsay 1993:129-146; Parrinder 1995:78-79; Koester 2001:360-369). If they will follow that way they will come to where he is (Morris 1971:640). Thus, as Ridderbos

While some commentators maintain that division occurs in colon 7.0 (14:5) where the reader is told the question of Thomas (e.g. Brown, Wellhausen, Strathmann, Schulz, Bernard, Stibbe), others argue that a shift in focus occurs in colon 6.8 (14:4) (e.g. Heitmüller, Segovia, Ridderbos, Woll, Haenchen, Swete, Beasley-Murray). The following study suggests that there is a break between cola 6.8-8.2 (14:4-6) from the following. It has been pointed out in the discourse analysis that whereas cola 6.1-6.7 are dominated by Jesus’ address for the consolation of his disciples due to his imminent departure, from colon 6.8 onwards the focus shifts to the concept of “the way”. This is evident from the dominant appearance of the structure marker “ο⎯δο.ϕ” in the whole pericope (cola 6.8, 7.3, 8.1 respectively), while the following cola do not have this word. Thus the isolation of this unit from the above is legitimate. In this unit, particularly, the attention shifts from the destination to the route (Lindars 1972:417; Kysar 1986:222). To put it more precisely, in colon 6.8 (14:4) the concept of “the way” is introduced, in which the author emphasises “the way” by placing the term last in the sentence. This is followed by the question of Thomas that serves to occasion Jesus’ further pronouncement (cola 7.0-7.3/14:5), and the declaration of Jesus as “the way” to the Father (cola 8.0-8.2/14:6) is presented. Hence the concept of “the way” makes for thematic coherence in this cluster. For this reason, the demarcation of this sub-unit from the others is appropriate.

The passage continues the call to believe in 14:1 and the assurance given in 14:2-3 by developing the thought of the way to the goal of Jesus’ “going” and “coming” (see Beasley-Murray 1987:252).

MacGregor takes the words as a question: “And do you know the way to the place where I am going?” However, as Morris (1971:640) mentions, there seems no good reason for taking them this way.

The departure of Jesus is central, as he reminds the disciples that they have been instructed in the way of Jesus and his destiny; they already know the way where Jesus is going (14:4). The disciples have heard that Jesus is returning to his Father (cf. 10:38; 12:27-28) by means of an experience of death that is at the same time his glorification and renders glory to God (cf. 11:4, 40; 12:23, 32-34; 13:31-32) (Moloney 1998:394; Carson 1991:490-491).

The Greek of 14:4 is ungrammatical and obscure, and a clearer reading is found in some textual witnesses (Kysar 1986:222; Barrett 1978:382). To put it more precisely, some manuscripts preserve a longer reading, “ο[που εϖγω. υ⎯πα,γω οι;δατε και. τη.ν ο⎯δο,ν οι;δατε,” in which the syntactical harshness of the shorter reading ο[που εϖγω. υ⎯πα,γω οι;δατε τη.ν ο⎯δο,ν (P66* a B C *  L X W 33 1071 it a, r1vid cop bo  eth) seems to invite amelioration (Metzger 1994:207; cf. Bernard 1928b:535). This means that the longer reading, “you know where I am going and you know the way” (NEB alternative reading), makes for a slightly smoother translation to 14:5 where Thomas distinguishes between “where Jesus is going” and “the way to get there” (Carson 1991:490; see Segovia 1991:85-86; Barrett 1978:382; Brown 1970:620). Newman and Nida (1980:456) agree that the longer reading is obviously an attempt to make the text read more smoothly, and it is not followed by most modern translations.
(1997:492) points out, in direct connection with the preceding section Jesus now speaks further about the life of his disciples on earth after his departure.  

The semantic relationships within the sub-unit are as follows: Colon 6.8 is the motivating statement and cola 7.0-8.2 are the explanation. Colon 7.0 is linked to cola 7.1-7.3 by means of a qualificational substance-content relationship. Apart from the vocative of colon 7.1, cola 7.2-7.3 consist of two indicative speeches in the form of a statement (colon 7.2) and a question (colon 7.3) respectively and they are semantically linked by means of a logical reason-result relationship. Besides, in each cola the verbs (οἰδαμεν; δυναμεθα; ειπωδε,ναι) are referred to in sequence, in order to compose the thematic element of the perception of the way as well as to play a role in the separation of these cola from the preceding cola. Jesus’ answer consists of five independent cola (sub-cola), which are cola 8.1 onwards, linked by means of a substance-content relationship. Colon 8.1 is the revelatory declaration of Jesus as the way, the truth, and the life, and colon 8.2 is the extended statement of this declaration. Thus they are linked by means of a logical basis-inference relationship. The following detailed exegesis will be established on this basis.

Although Jesus tells his disciples, “You know the way to the place where I am going”, the following next verse demonstrates that, at some level, they know nothing of the sort (Carson 1991:490). That is, the statement of Jesus in 14:4 (colon 6.8) is designed to introduce Thomas’ question in 14:5 (cola 7.0-7.3) and should be translated in the light of that (cf. Kysar 1986:222; Haenchen 1984:124; Tolmie 1995:204; Koester 2003:939-943; De la Potterie

Copyists perhaps improved 14:4 by expanding so as to read ο[που εϖγω. υ⎯πα,γω οι;δατε και. τη.ν ο⎯δο,ν οι;δατε (Metzger 1994:207; cf. Barrett 1978:382; Bernard 1928b:535). Thus the shorter reading translated in the NRS is to be preferred: “you know the way to the place where I am going” (see Beasley-Murray 1987:243).  

This becomes the topic of the farewell discourse until Jesus returns at the end of John 17 to what he spoke of in 14:1-3 (Ridderbos 1997:492).

As Carson remarks, “John’s point is not that Jesus has made some terrible error in assessing his disciples, but that precisely because they know him they do know the way to the place he has just prescribed. Once again it is by reading on and then coming back and re-reading the text that we find Jesus’ anticipation of his clear, impending statement that he himself is the way (14:6).”

Here the way is made the theme even by the linguistic form of the verse, in which the emphasis falls at the end of the sentence (Schnackenburg 1982:64; Beasley-Murray 1987:252). Note how 14:4 emphasizes “the way” by placing the term last in the sentence.

483 Some scholars such as De Boer (1996:132) remark that this verse is in fact transitional. This assumption can be seen in the following argument.

484 Thomas appears here, 11:16, 20:24ff, and 21:2 in the Fourth Gospel as a loyal, even a courageous, disciple, but one who is liberally endowed with misapprehensions and doubts (Carson 1991:490-491; see also Newman & Nida 1980:456; Barrett 1978:382). Particularly, in 11:16 and 20:24 Thomas is further qualified as “the one called the twin”.

485 Dodd (1953:412) also notes that Thomas replies here, in effect, that he (and the other disciples) has not really come to grips with what he has said about the destination, so how could Jesus’ further insistence that they know the way bear coherent meaning?

486 Note the plural form of his statement: (ουϖκ οι;δαμεν) “we do not know”.

487 For instance, Ridderbos (1997:493) states that Thomas’ radical objection to Jesus’ statement, though expressed with all respect, is not only characteristic of his own role in the Gospel (see above) but also conveys the uncertainty of his fellow disciples (“we do not know”). Ridderbos continues that they have no idea what this “going away” is all about if it means the end of their following Jesus as the Messiah of Israel and Son of God confessed by them. How then can they know “the way” of which Jesus is speaking and to which they are apparently reduced as his disciples? Moloney (1998:394)
Thomas is indeed a rhetorical device that allows Jesus to reveal himself by means of a \( \varepsilon\varphi\gamma\omega, \varepsilon\iota\varphi\mu\iota \) statement with a predicate in the following verse.\(^{488}\)

The question asked by Thomas in verse 5 confirms the reader’s impression that the disciples do not understand Jesus’ statement in verse 4 (see Tolmie 1995:204; Koester 2003:295).\(^{489}\) His remark, in turn, triggers the sixth “I am” saying featured in John’s Gospel (see Köstenberger 2004:428; Gubler 1994:147-151; Keener 2003:939-943): \( \varepsilon\varphi\gamma\omega, \varepsilon\iota\varphi\mu\iota \eta \overline{\omicron}\delta.\phi \kappa\alpha\iota. \eta \overline{\alpha}\alpha\lambda\eta.\theta\varepsilon\iota\alpha \kappa\alpha\iota. \eta \overline{\varsigma}\omega\eta, \) (14:6a/colon 8.1), in which a complex metaphor is used\(^{490}\) (“I am the way, the truth, and the life.”\(^{492}\)).

underscores this by noting that the question reflects an ongoing unwillingness to face all the implications of the end of Jesus’ story (cf. 13:33, 36). He goes on to say that the disciples should know where Jesus is going but a request for further instruction on “the way” is justifiable, and it opens the possibility for Jesus’ self-revelation as “the way” (cf. v. 6a). Malina and Rohrbaugh (1998:230) remark that Thomas serves as a foil by articulating a misunderstanding of what Jesus is saying. Like other foils in the narrative (Nicodemus, the Samaritan woman, and others), he occasions the clarification of the group needs. They also point out that a narrative of this type would serve to educate and assimilate those coming into the antisociety since new members need to understand its values and language.

\(^{488}\) The disciples’ lack of understanding, as so often, provides opportunity for Jesus to clarify the revelation (see below; cf. Beasley-Murray 1987:252; Segovia 1985:483; De Boer 1996:132).

\(^{489}\) In this regard, Brown (1970:608) mentions that never again in the discourse, despite the interruptions in 14 by individual disciples (Thomas, Philip, and Judas [not Iscariot]), does Jesus centre attention on the fate of one disciple, as he does with Peter in 13:36-38. According to Brown, if Jesus answers the questions of individuals, he soon turns to speak to all the disciples, for example, see the “you men” in 14:7, 10. Schnackenburg (1982:57) also remarks that it is repeatedly interrupted by questions put by the disciples, but continues as far as 14:31. Tenney (1976:212) consents that Jesus had first answered Peter individually, and now was including him in the reply which was addressed to the general group.

\(^{490}\) This is another of the “ego eimi” sayings with the predicate in John’s Gospel (cf. 6:35, 51; 8:12; 9:5; 10:7, 9, 11, 14; 11:25; 15:1, 5). The first genuine investigation on the “ego eimi” sayings in this Gospel is done by Schweizer (1939). Ball (1996:13), who has dealt with a more recent discussion on this issue, evaluates the investigation by Schweizer of John’s use of “ego eimi,” as follows: Firstly, Schweizer made a nearly exhaustive survey of different uses of “ego eimi” in various cultures (including examples from India, Iran and Egypt as well as modern usage), and drew the highly significant conclusion that formal parallels to a phrase do not necessarily denote interdependence. Secondly, Schweizer discovered that the Fourth Gospel displayed an essential unity from which it is difficult to extract particular sources for the “I am” sayings. This means that the sayings form an integral part of the Fourth Gospel and as such cannot readily be removed from it. Finally, Schweizer maintained that the “I am” sayings with an image should not be regarded as allegory or parable but as “real speech”. This means that the “I am” sayings do not simply compare Jesus with various images but actually unite with the term. For a brief critical history of the study of “ego eimi” sayings in the Gospel of John, see Schnackenburg (1980:81-83).

\(^{491}\) This statement is commonly recognised as ranking with John 3:16 as an outstanding expression in the Gospel of John, and has been a source of comfort and assurance to Christians throughout church history (Beasley-Murray 1987:252; Lindars 1972:472; Köstenberger 2004:428). Among others, Schnackenburg (1982:65) remarks, “It forms a classical summary of the Johannine doctrine of salvation that is based entirely on Jesus Christ.” Tenney (1976:215) notes, “This affirmation of Jesus is one of the greatest philosophical utterances of all time. He did not say that he knew the way, the truth, and the life, nor that he taught them. He did not make himself the exponent of a new system; He
Thomas thus unwittingly draws a reply from Jesus far beyond what he expected (cf. 4:26; 6:35; 11:25). This means that through the characterisation of Thomas, the character of Jesus is further enhanced. As with the other disciples, Thomas’ characterisation is not an end in itself but instead further reveals the character of Jesus. In this way the disciples again act as a foil to the character of Jesus, asking him to explain his terms. This in turn enables the readers to avoid a similar misunderstanding of Jesus’ words and so to adopt John’s conceptual point of view (Ball 1996:122; cf. Culpepper 1983:152; Gubler 1994:147-151; Haenchen 1984:124-125; Van Tilborg 1993:136; Countryman 1994:101; McCaffrey 1988:152; Segovia 1991:86; Tolmie 1995:204; Keener 2003:939-943; Koester 2003:288-292, 2001:360-369; McKay 1996:302-303).


There are a number of views, both from ancient and modern eras, in this regard. Many modern scholars declared himself to be the final key to all mysteries.” Ridderbos (1997:428) calls it “the core statement of this entire Gospel.” Burge (2000:392) says it is the premier expression of the Gospel’s theology. According to Newman and Nida (1980:457), “I am the way, the truth, and the life” (as most translations) is a fairly literal translation of the Greek text. They point out that of the major modern language translations, only GeCL has a dynamic equivalent: “I am the way, and I am also the goal, since in me you have the truth and the life.”

Furthermore, the question concerns how these three predicates fit into the immediate context of Thomas’ question, which itself is a reaction to the broader context of the opening subject of Jesus’ farewell discourse, namely, his departure (Roberts 2003:124). Brown (1970:620-621) gives a useful survey on this issue, citing de la Potterie (1966:907-913) who has provided a summary of opinions: (A) Explanations wherein “the way” is directed toward a goal that is “the truth” and/or “the life”: (1) Most of the Greek Fathers, Ambrose, and Leo the Great [Leo I] understood the way and the truth to lead to the life (eternal life in heaven). Maldonatus had a modification of this, since he saw behind the Greek a Hebraism wherein the truth is just an adjectival description of the way: “I am the true way to life”. (2) Clement of Alexandria, Augustine, and most of the Latin Fathers understood that the way leads to both the truth and the life. In this interpretation both truth and life are eschatological, divine realities (the truth is the mind of God, the Logos). Thomas Aquinas held a medieval form of the theory wherein Christ was the way according to his humanity, but the truth and the life according to his divinity. Many modern scholars still hold a modification of the theory (de la Potterie lists Westcott, Scott, Taylor, Lagrange, and Braun). (3) Other modern scholars (Bauer, Bultmann, and Dodd) interpret John against the background of Gnostic dualism, Mandean, or...
see $\eta\ o\ \varphi$ as the principal theme with the other two nouns as subordinate (i.e., Barrett 1978:458; Kysar 1986:222-223; De la Potterie 1966:907-942; Carson 1991:491; Moloney 1998:395; Keener 2003:939-943; Beasley-Murray 1987:252; Newman & Nida 1980:457; Schnackenburg 1982:64; Harris 1994:149-150). In other words, “the way” is the primary predicate, and “the truth” and “the life” are just explanations of the way. This view seems best, for it allows the force that “truth” and “life” have in the Gospel to be felt, while still properly seeing the slight emphasis on “way” in the question at hand (Roberts 2003:125). 496 The result is that the metaphor should be understood as follows (see Van der Watt 2000:348): “Jesus is the way because he is the truth and the life.”

To support this assumption, the semantic relationship of the cola in this verse is helpful:

8.1. επιγα, ειμι $\eta\ o\ \varphi$ και. $\eta\ \alpha\iota\nu\iota\lambda\eta\iota,\theta\varepsilon\iota\alpha\iota\kappa\iota$. $\eta\ \zeta\omega\eta$,.
8.2. ουδει.$\phi\ ε,\rho\chi\varepsilon\tau\alpha\iota\ προ.$\phi\ το.$\nu\ πατε,\rho\a\ ει\si\mu\eta,\ δις εσ\mu$ $\Theta$

Hermetic thought. They think of the ascent of the soul along the way to the heavenly sphere of truth, light, and life. Bultmann (1971:467-468) maintains that John has demythologised the Gnostic picture, so that in Jesus the disciples encounter their Saviour, and the way is no longer spatially separated from the goal of truth and life. Their way is already their goal. The truth is the manifested divine reality, and the life is that reality shared by men. (B) Explanations wherein “the way” is the primary predicate, and “the truth” and “the life” are just explanations of the way. Jesus is the way because he is the truth and the life. Among the advocates of this view are de la Potterie, Bengel, Weiss, Schlatter, Strathmann, Michaelis, Tillmann, and Van den Bussche. That “the way” is the dominating phrase in 14:6 is suggested by the fact that Jesus is reaffirming his statement about the way in v. 4, in response to Thomas’ question about the way in 14:5. Moreover, the second line of 14:6 leaves aside the truth and the life and concentrates on Jesus as the way: “No one comes to the Father except through me.” If the three phrases, “the way,” “the truth,” and “the life” are joined by “and,” the και. between the first and the second may be exegetical or explanatory (“that is to say”). See also Schnackenburg (1982:65) and Harris (1994:149-150).

496 In other words, Beasley-Murray (1987:252) argues, “Despite the coordination of the three terms of the way, the truth, and the life, the emphasis clearly falls on the first, for the statement explains the assertion of v. 4 (“you know the way”), and concludes with a deduction from the main clause: “No one goes to the Father except by me.” Newman and Nida (1980:457) also maintain that in the present context Jesus as “the way” is the primary focus, and “truth” and “life” are somehow related to Jesus as “the way”. They furthermore argue that there are two possible interpretations: (1) The emphasis may be on the goal to which the way leads (note GeCL). If this exegesis is followed, one may translate “I am the way that leads to the truth and to life”; or, expressed more fully, “I am the way that leads to the truth (about God) and to the life (that God gives).” (2) However, the emphasis may be on the way itself. If this exegesis is followed, “truth” and “life” must be taken as qualifiers of “way,” which is primary in the context. One may then render it “I am the true way, the way that gives people life.” Or, more fully, “I am the way that reveals the truth (about God) and gives life (to people).” Newman and Nida go on to
The present section (14:4-6/cola 6.8-8.2) is dominated by the structural marker οδο,φ, in which the attention shifts from the destination to the route (Lindars 1972:417; Kysar 1986:222; Koester 2003:295-297). To put it more precisely, in 14:4 (colon 6.8) the concept of “the way” is introduced, and the author emphasises this by placing the term *last* in the sentence. This is followed by the question of Thomas that serves to occasion Jesus’ further pronouncement (14:5/cola 7.0-7.3), and the declaration of Jesus as “the way” to the Father (14:6/cola 8.0-8.2) is presented. Hence the concept of “the way” makes for thematic coherence in this cluster. Thus it is indicated by means of discourse analysis that the pivotal focus of the cluster is “Jesus as the way to God.” 14:6a (colon 8.1) is the revelatory declaration of Jesus as the way, the truth, and the life, and 14:6b (colon 8.2) is the extended statement of this declaration centring on the “way” (see above).

Jesus declares that he himself is the “way” (οδο,φ). According to Louw and Nida (*Greek-English Lexicon*), οδο,φ is semantically grouped under the three distinguished domains of “Geographical Objects and Features”, “Linear Movement” and “Behaviour and Related States”. Firstly, under the domain of “Geographical Objects and Features”, οδο,φ is part of the sub-domain of “Thoroughfare: Roads, Streets, Paths, etc.”. In this semantic field οδο,φ is a general term for a thoroughfare, either within a centre of a population or between two such centres (Louw & Nida 1988:18). Secondly, under the domain of “Linear Movement” οδο,φ is part of the sub-domain of “Travel, Journey”. The semantic meaning of the word in this field is to say that the two possible interpretations are close in meaning and it is difficult to argue for one against the other. However, (they claim) the context would seem to favour the second.

497 The development of the concept of “the way” can be shown as follows:
14:4 (colon 6.8) και. οπου εις απογεω.υπαγω οιδατε την οδον Θωμα/φ.
14:5 (colon 7.0) Λεγει αυτω/ κυριε.
14:6a (colon 8.1) εις αληθεια και ζωη,/ουδεις ερχεται προ του πατερα εις μη δις ειμον/φ.

498 They are semantically linked by means of a logical basis-inference relationship (see above).
499 For a full discussion of this term, see Michaelis (1967:42-114).
be in the process of travelling, presumably for some distance, and it may also refer to a particular journey (Louw & Nida 1988:184-185). Finally, under the domain of “Behaviour and Related States” ο δο,φ is part of the two sub-domains of “Behaviour, Conduct” (Louw & Nida 1988:506) and “Particular Patterns of Behaviour” (Louw & Nida 1988:508). Semantically, their meanings are respectively “a customary manner of life or behaviour, with probably some implication of goal or purpose” and “behaviour in accordance with Christian principles and practices”. Therefore it is clear from its semantic classification that the term ο δο,φ has three different basic and technical meanings: “road”, “travel” and “behaviour” (cf. Liddell-Scott 1968:543; Gubler 1994:147-151).

Paradigmatically, this term is used only in this discussion (in 14:4, 5, 6) in John (except for 1:23 where it is employed in a different sense). Kysar (1986:222) argues that “the way” in 14:4-5 would seem to mean the way of the cross, a suffering route to exaltation. He insists that in the previous verses it refers to Jesus’ way that is the cross. However, as has been noted above, in both 14:4 and 14:5 the reference is to the way of the disciples. Similarly, the statement of Jesus in the present passage refers not to his own way, but to the way of the disciples. That is, if one leaves aside the concepts “truth” and “life”, 14:6 is part of a series of sayings that embrace 14:2-3. The statement in 14:6 is equivalent to what has been said already, and puts it even more plainly (see Michaelis 1967:67-81; Strachan 1941:281-282; Ball 1996:127; Countryman 1994:101). Jesus reveals here that he is the path by which to access God. The statement of Jesus as “the way” may possibly mean that the word hints at a traditional saying John has embodied in the discourse (Kysar 1986:223; cf. Brown 1970:628-630). The word is found in the Old Testament (derek), used to speak of the

---

500 Cf. δες η;ληφ ο δο/ αςνεχα,ρηςαι (Matt. 2:12).
501 Cf. Σαμαρι,τηφ δε, τιφ ο δευ,ον η=λθεν κατ” αυςτο,v (Luke 10:33); παρη,γειεν αυςτουφ ηνα μηδε,v αιροσειν ειψφ ο δο,v (Mark 6:8); παρε,λαβεν ηου,v δοδεκα μαθητα,φ κατ” ιδιι,αν, και. ειν τη/ ο δο/ ει=πεν αυςτουφ (Matt. 20:17); η=λουν η με,ραφ ο δο,v (Luke 2:44).
502 Cf. η=λθεν γα,ρ εξωκε,νηφ προ,φ η μα/φ ειν ο δο/ δικαιοσυ,νη (Matt 21:32).
moral path of obedience (e.g., Josh. 22:5) and the direction led by wisdom (e.g., Prov. 3:17). It became a self-designation for the Qumran Essenes (e.g., 1QS 9:21) much as it did for Christians (Acts 9:2). In Hellenistic religions it was used to speak of the process by which the initiative became divine (cf. Bultmann 1971:603-604; Brown 1970:628-630; Harris 1994:149-151). John thus means that Jesus is the medium by which one is given the revealing love of God that brings with it proper self-knowledge and a peaceful relationship with God (Kysar 1986:223; Charlesworth 2001:260-261; Haenchen 1984:124-125; Schnackenburg 1982:64-66; Gubler 1994:147-151).505

In addition to the way, Jesus adds that he is also the “truth” (αληθεια). According to Louw and Nida (Greek-English Lexicon), αληθεια is semantically grouped under the domain of “True, False”. This domain has two sub-domains that are “True, False” and “Accurate, Inaccurate”. This term is part of the former, that is “True, False” (Louw & Nida 1988:673). The semantic meaning of this term is the content of that which is true and thus in accordance with what actually happened.507 Louw and Nida remark that in John 8:32, αληθεια is used to refer to the revelation of God that Jesus brings or, perhaps, to Jesus himself for what he actually is as the revelation of God. Furthermore, the term occurs 25 times in the Gospel of John.508 In this term the true divine is set against the falseness of evil (Van der Watt 2000:348; Bultmann 1971:468; Haenchen 1984:125; Harris 1994:151). Jesus has declared to the Samaritan woman that the “hour is coming, and now is, when true worshippers will worship the

504 According to Michaelis (1967:69ff.), whereas the literal sense of this term is for the most part limited to the Synoptists, the metaphorical and figurative is to be found in all the writings (including the present occurrence in John’s Gospel).

505 In a similar way, Carson (1991:491) notes, “In this context Jesus does not simply blaze a trail, commanding others to take the way that he himself takes; rather, he is the way. Nor is it adequate to say that Jesus ‘is the Way in the sense that he is the whole background against which action must be performed, the atmosphere in which life must be lived’: that assigns Jesus far too passive a role. He is himself the Saviour (4:42), the Lamb of God (1:29, 34), the one who so speaks that those who are in the graves hear his voice and come forth (5:28-29). He so mediates God’s truth and God’s life that he is the very way to God, the one who alone can say, ‘no-one comes to the Father except through me.’”

506 See full treatment of this term by Bultmann (1964a:232-251).

507 Cf. ει=πεν αυτω|/ πα/σαν αλη=θειαν (Mark 5:33).

508 The expression “truth”, while virtually absent from the Synoptics (the only significant reference is Matt. 22:16 par.), is found frequently in John’s Gospel with reference to Jesus (1:14, 17; 5:33; 18:37; cf. 8:40, 45, 46; see also 1:9; 6:32; 15:1), the liberating effect of his word (8:31-32; cf. 17:17, 19), and the ministry of the Holy Spirit (16:13; cf. 14:17; 15:26) (see Köstenberger 2004:429).
Father in spirit and truth” (4:24). He has claimed to be the “true” bread from heaven (6:32-33). As the light of the world he has claimed that his testimony and judgement are true (8:14, 16). He has also declared that if the Jews remain in his word they will know the truth and the truth will set them free (8:32). With such an emphasis on the concept of truth in the Gospel as a whole, it is highly significant that Jesus takes it and applies it to himself in the “I am” saying of John 14:6. As a result of this “ego eimi” saying, “truth” is not the teaching about God transmitted by Jesus but it is God’s very reality revealing itself-occurring-in Jesus (Ball 1996:128; Bultmann 1955:19; Harris 1994:150-151; Morrison 2005:598-603; McKay 1996:302-303; Gubler 1994:147-151; Charlesworth 2001:260-261).

In addition to this, Jesus claims that he is the life. According to Louw and Nida (Greek-English Lexicon), ζωή, is semantically grouped under the domain of “Physiological Processes and States”. It is part of the sub-domain “Live, Die” (Louw & Nida 1988:2671). According to Louw & Nida, in some figurative expressions ζα,ω and ζωή, may involve serious ambiguities. For example, in John 6.51 the expression εφάγω, ειπομι ο ἀνεπτοφ ο ζω/ν may be understood in some languages as bread that has some living objects in it, namely, bread that is being eaten by worms or weevils. It may therefore be necessary to say “I am that bread that gives life”. In the thematic progress of “the Book of Signs” (chapters 2-12), the “life” motif has been gradually developed (see Carson 1991:403). The prologue opens the Gospel affirming that “in him was life” (1:4). The theme of Jesus as giver of life is stressed in the exposition of chapters 2-4. These three chapters, which contain the first cyclical journey of Jesus, are a well-rounded unit that is compressed with “the break of the old order and the commencement of the new order”. In these chapters, John depicts Jesus, through the description of his thought-provoking teachings and deeds including the miracles, as a hero who destroys the old order to introduce a new one, achieved by the changing of the water into wine and the introduction of new concepts such as a new temple, new life, new worship and a new faith. This narrative section closes with the

509 For a more detailed discussion of this term, see Bultmann (1964b:832-875).
510 It is noteworthy that “life”, which occurs thirty-two times in the Book of Signs, occurs only four times in the Book of Glory. Now that “the hour” is at hand, life is actually being given and need not be talked about.
restoration to life of the royal official’s dying son (cf. 4:46-53). This “life” is not merely physical life but “eternal life” (cf. Van der Watt 1989:217-228). In chapter 5, John intensifies Jesus as the giver of life, declaring that the Father has given the authority to Jesus to raise the dead and give life, and thus the one who hears Jesus’ word and believes in him has eternal life and has already passed from death into life (5:21, 24). Chapter 6 effectively emphasises the identity of Jesus as the eschatological life-giver through his miraculous feeding as well as the associated discourse on the bread of life (see Van der Watt 2000:216-228). In chapters 7-9, through the symbolism of “the living water” (in chapter 7) and “the light of the world” (in chapter 8) and through the performance of the miracle (in chapter 9), Jesus declares that whoever follows him will never walk in darkness but will have the light of life (cf. 8:12; 11:37). Subsequently, in chapter 10, Jesus claims clearly that he gives his sheep eternal life (cf. 10:28). Then finally, in chapter 11, the raising of Lazarus serves to underscore the visual effect of the grandest divine power of Jesus who gives life (Culpepper 1998:184; Schnackenburg 1980:352-361). The most important reference in the “life” motif of the Book of Signs is perhaps Jesus’ declaration that, “I am the resurrection and the life. Those who believe in me, even though they die, will live, and everyone who lives and believes in me will never die” (11:25-26) (see Van der Watt 2000:213-215).  


511 The life in the Book of Signs (or the Gospel) is not merely the physical life but eternal life. Eternal life is the key concept in the Gospel of John and is as such emphasised through the entire Gospel. Having life actually enables a person to exist actively and consciously within and according to the parameters of the divine reality (Van der Watt 1985:77-78). This concept can furthermore be related to the metaphorical image of the family. Therein one can be a part of the heavenly family by the possession of “eternal life” (Van der Watt 2000:206). In this regard, Jesus is “the resurrection and life” (11:25), which means that Jesus makes resurrection possible by raising a person from death to life (Van der Watt 2000:213).  

512 Brown (1970:630) remarks that Jesus is not presenting himself as a moral guide, not as a leader for his disciples to follow (as in Heb 2:10, 6:20). According to him, the emphasis here is different from that of 16:13 where the Paraclete/Spirit is said to guide the disciples along the way of all truth. He goes on to say that Jesus is rather presenting himself as the only avenue of salvation, in the manner of 10:9: “I am the gate…” This is so because Jesus is the truth, the only revelation of the Father who is the goal of the journey. No one has ever seen the Father except Jesus (1:18); Jesus tells us what he saw in the Father’s presence (8:38); and Jesus makes men the children of God whom they can then call Father. In
Thus the two nouns, “the truth” and “the life”, are intended to qualify and explain “the way”. It might, however, be the case that “way” is intended to identify the means to the goal and “truth” and “life” the goal itself.\footnote{What is the background from which this concept of Jesus as “the way” was drawn? Both Hermetic and Mandeans parallels have been proposed; in these writings generally “the truth” is the sphere of divinity and “the way” is the route to the divinity (although in the Mandaean texts the redeemer is never called “the way”). In particular, the Mandaean expression “the way of truth” has been noted. Michaelis (1967:82-84) and de la Potterie (1966:917-918) have rejected these parallels. They point out that John’s concept of the way is not really spatial in the same way that these Gnostic concepts are spatial. Brown (1970:628-629) suggests that John 14:6 reflects the whole chain of usage of the imagery of “the way”, originating in the Old Testament, modified by sectarian Jewish thought illustrated at Qumran, and finally adopted by the Christian community as a self-designation. According to him, particularly pertinent is the Qumran community where “the way” is the study of the Law given through Moses (1QS 8:12-16, interpreting Isa. 40:3), for which reason “the way” could also be used as a designation for the community itself (1QS 9:17-18, 21; CD 1:3; cf. also the early Law-observant Christian community in Acts 9:2; 19:9; 23; 22:4; 24:14, 22). He supposes that the way to truth and life, i.e., to God and to salvation, is in effect the Mosaic Law, which for that reason is also the way of life. For Johannine Christians, according to him, Jesus has replaced the Law, and therefore Moses, as the way to God (cf. Philo, OuEx. 2:29, which speaks of “a path to heaven” in connection with Moses). He thinks that apart from Jesus, Moses and the Law have no value. To him, the claim that “no one comes to the Father except through me” effectively and intentionally excludes a reliance on the Law and the Law-giver, Moses, as an independent way to God, i.e., as a way that attempts to get around Jesus (cf. De Boer 1996:132-133). For some recent discussions in this regard, see Harris (1994:49-150).}

According to Kysar (1986:222-223), the first of the alternatives is more in keeping with Johannine thought. The path to truth and life is none other that the one who is that truth and life (cf. 1:4 and 4:24 above). In effect, then, the three nouns designate three synonymous functions performed by Christ. Kysar (1986:222-223) also mentions that the revelation is itself truth that yields life in its truest sense, and the revelation is the way by which those benefits are extended to humanity. In sum, it is Christ who is all that humans need in order to find release from the realm of darkness and misunderstanding.\footnote{An important indication has been made by Carson (1991:491; see Koester 2003:298-299) who notes, “If Thomas’ question and v. 6a demonstrate that the way is the principal theme, it follows that truth and life enjoy a supporting role: Jesus is the way to God, precisely because he is the truth of God and the life of God. Jesus is the truth, because he embodies the supreme revelation of God – he himself “narrates” God (1:18), says and does exclusively what the Father gives him to say and do (5:19ff, 8:29), indeed he is properly called “God” (1:1, 18; 20:28). He is God’s gracious self-disclosure, his “Word” made flesh (1:14). Jesus is the life (1:4), the one who has “life in himself” (5:26), “the resurrection and the life” (11:25), “the true God and eternal life” (1 John 5:20). Only because he is the truth and the life can Jesus be the way for others to come to God, the way for his disciples to attain the many dwelling-places in the Father’s house (vv. 2-3), and therefore the answer to Thomas’ question (v. 5).”} Moloney (1998:395) furthermore insists that Jesus’ basic affirmation is that he is the way, and the two following words describe “the way” that is the truth (κατ’ η⎯ αϖλη,θεια). Calling himself the truth, Jesus is not giving an ontological definition in terms of transcendentals but is describing himself in terms of his mission to men.
and the life (καὶ ζωή). He argues that the earlier use of these Johannine expressions, from the Prologue (cf. 1:4, 14, 17) and through the story itself, points to Jesus as the authoritative and saving revelation of God (ἀποκάλυψις: 1:14, 17; 5:33; 8:32, 40, 44-46; ζωή, 1:4; 6:33, 35, 48, 63, 68; 8:12; 10:10; 11:25). Thus Jesus’ reply takes away any ambiguity about how they will get to where he is (cf. 14:3) and this also removes the ambiguity involved in his statement about the way (cf. 14:4) (see Lindars 1972:472; De la Potterie 1966:907-942; Ball 1996:124; Brown 1970:630; Schnackenburg 1982:64-66; Haench 1984:125; Harris 1994:150; Gubler 1994:147-151; Koester 2003:295-299; Keener 2003:939-943; Charlesworth 2001:260-261).

Since Thomas does not understand, Jesus makes the emphatic declaration of “I am the way and the truth and the life” (14:6a/colon 8.1). However, he immediately adds that “no one comes to the Father except through me” (14:6b/colon 8.2). The irony here

515 Moloney (1998:395) furthermore remarks that Jesus’ claim to be “the way” is more than self-revelation. According to him, as with all the “ego eimi” statements with a predicate, Jesus not only announces who he is but also what he does. The way leads somewhere (cf. 10:7, 9): to the Father (14:6b). Jesus is the only way to the Father, the unique and saving revelation of God (cf. 1:18, 51; 3:13; 5:37-38; 6:46; 10:1, 7, 11, 14). God is revealed in the life and word of Jesus, and the disciples should know that Jesus’ departure to go to the Father will be through a lifting up (cf.: 3:14; 8:28; 12:32) and a death (cf. 10:16-18; 11:4, 49-53; 12:23-24, 32-33; 13:18-20). The way of Jesus is a loving and total gift of himself unto death (v. 6a; cf. 13:1). It must also become the way of his follows (cf. 13:15, 34-35).

516 In a similar way, Ridderbos (1997:493) remarks, “Jesus’ answer – with good reason called the core statement of this entire Gospel – is striking because in this last and all-encompassing ‘I am’ statement he, as the departing one, calls himself the way. It is a way he not only points to but is, the only way that gives access to the Father. And it is in that function that he is also ‘the truth and the life’. He is the truth as the reliable one, the one who is what he says he is and does what he says he will do, just as he is the ‘true’ vine who will in fact yield fruit (cf. Jer. 2:21). For that reason he is also the life that is from God and that imparts itself as ‘the light of humans’ (1:4) so that they can know the Father as the only true God and Jesus Christ, whom the Father has sent (17:3). In all these core sayings Jesus posits himself in his exclusivity as the one sent by the Father and hence as the only way: ‘no one comes to the Father but by me’. Other ways present themselves, but they do not prove to be true in accordance with ‘God is light in and him there is no darkness at all’ (1 John 1:5).”

517 Carson (1991:491) notes that the second half of 14:6 shows that the entire verse must be taken as the answer to Thomas’ question. This means, according to him, “way” gains a little emphasis over “truth” and “life.” (He goes on to argue) This is not to say that 14:6a should be interpreted as a Semitism, the first noun governing the other two (“I am the way of truth and life,” and hence “I am the true and living way”); the three terms are syntactically co-ordinate, and Greek has other ways of expressing subordination. Newman and Nida (1980:457) also mention, “That the ‘way’ is in primary focus in this passage is indicated by the words of Jesus in the second half of this verse: ‘no one goes to the Father except by me’. That is, ‘the way’ is in focus, and the Father is the goal to which it leads. God is the source of all truth and life, and Jesus leads peoples to him.” They continue, “In most languages it is quite possible to speak of Jesus as ‘a way’ or ‘a road’, in the sense of a means by which a person may arrive at a particular destination. However, in some languages ‘way’ or ‘road’ does not have this metaphorical possibility, and one must use a term that more closely identifies the concept of ‘means’,
is in the fact that this remarkable statement goes far beyond the scope of the question (Lindars 1972:472; cf. Haenchen 1984:125; Charlesworth 2001:260-261; Nissen 1999b:228). Jesus’ claim through an “I am” saying thus functions as an indispensable part of the irony developed in this chapter as a result of the differing points of view held by Jesus and his disciples (Ball 1996:124; cf. Van Tilborg 1993:136). This second part of the statement simply explains in what sense Jesus is the way. He is the way in an exclusive sense, meaning that no one comes to the Father except through him. Carson (1991:491) notes that in the framework of this Gospel, this exclusivism is directed in at least two directions: first, it is constrained by the salvation-historical consciousness of John: i.e., now that Jesus has come as the

that is, “I am the means by which people know the truth about God….” In such cases Jesus’ statement could be rendered ‘I am the one by whom people know the truth about God and receive the life that God gives’ or ‘….become truly alive’ or even ‘….have true life.’”

Charlesworth (2001:260) argues that John 14:6 has two layers. He mentions the relationship of the two sentences in 14:6 as follows: John 14:6 seems to consist of two sections. That is, it is really two grammatically independent sentences. The first sentence is 14:6a, “I am the way, and the truth, and the life.” The second sentence is 14:6b, “No one comes to the Father except through me.” John 14:6a has only one minor variant: “and the truth” is missing in MS 157. John 14:6a is almost unique in the New Testament; there is not one variant. That may signify that it was a later addition to the developing traditions and in harmony with the “Christianity” congenial to the scribes who later copied and helped shape the Greek New Testament. It is prima facie apparent that 14:6b may be an addition (perhaps to the first edition of John), but that needs to be studied carefully, and our own desires must not dictate what might be found. The differences between the two sentences need to be clarified. The first is positive: “I am…” is directed to those in the community, and there is no demand to think that there is any other way. The second sentence is negative: “no one ….” It is directed to those outside the community, and it clearly denies any other way to God. An implicit exclusivism in v. 6a becomes explicit in v. 6b. Finally, v. 6a is in harmony with, and v. 6b discordant with, the Fourth evangelist’s universalistic claim that Jesus is “the light of the world” (8:12; 9:5; cf. 1:4-5 and 11:10). 14:6a could have been said by many early Jews, but 14:6b is clearly inconceivable to non-believing Jews – indeed, it is anathema to them. This sentence, 14:6b, seems to me to represent the struggle against either other non-believing Jews or the so-called Docetists who caused the Johannine schism. It is thus redactional and misrepresents Jesus’ purpose. Nissen (1999b:228) also argues that they are a peculiar combination of inclusivism and exclusivism. He notes: the famous statement: “I am the way, the truth and the life” (14:6) reflects a continuity with other religious traditions as well as a certain discontinuity. It is certainly not accidental that in chapter 14, as elsewhere, John uses specific notions and terminology from the religious traditions of his contemporary world. For instance, among Jews it was customary to speak of the “way”. In Jewish tradition we meet the term the “Way of the Torah,” and the Qumran community designated itself as the Way. A third example is the “way” of John the Baptist. The multiplicity of religious ways and paths was an issue in the New Testament period.

As Morris (1971:642) aptly notes, the words of this claim necessitated a faith perspective, “spoken as they were on the eve of the crucifixion. “I am the Way”, said one who would shortly hang impotent on a cross. “I am the Truth”, when the lies of evil people were about to enjoy a spectacular triumph. “I am the Life”, when within a matter of hours his corpse would be placed in a tomb.”

Newman and Nida (1980:457) remark that rather than employ a negative such as “no one” followed by an exception such as “except by me”, it may be better in some languages to make the entire expression positive and include the concept of totality, for example, “all people must go to the Father”. According to them, this relation of Jesus to the Father as being a “way” or “road” may be rendered in some languages as “I am the only road that leads to the Father” or “…that leads to my Father”.

242
culminating revelation of the Father, it is totally inadequate to claim that one knows God on the basis of the antecedent revelation of bygone epochs, while disowning Jesus Christ. Indeed, the test of whether or not Jews in Jesus’ day, and in John’s day, really knew God through the revelation that had already been disclosed, lay in their response to the supreme revelation from the Father, Jesus Christ himself, to which the Scriptures, properly understood, invariably point. Secondly, even if John’s language utilises metaphors and images common amongst the religions of the Roman world and well attested to in Diaspora Judaism, he does not mean for a moment to suggest that Christianity is merely one more religion amongst many. They are ineffective in bringing people to the true God. No one, Jesus insists, comes to the Father except through me.\textsuperscript{521} That is the necessary stance behind all fervent evangelism (cf. Charlesworth 2001:254-260; Beasley-Murray 1987:252; Brown 1970:632; Harris 1994:150-151; Gubler 1994:147-151; Keener 2003:939-943; Köstenberger 2004:430; Witherington III 1995:249-250; Koester 2003:295-299; Ratzinger 1990:68-87; Lindsay 1993:129-146; Parrinder 1995:78-79; Marrow 2002:90-102).\textsuperscript{522}

\textsuperscript{521} In keeping with Jesus’ claim, the early Christians maintained, “Salvation is found in one else, for there is no other name under heaven given to men by which we must be saved” (Acts 4: 12). In the Old Testament, people expressed their faith in God by keeping the law; now that Jesus has come, he is the way. In the unruly Jewish and Greco-Roman world of the first century, as well as in today’s pluralistic climate, Jesus’ message is plain: he does not merely claim to be “a” way or “a” truth or “a” life, but “the way, the truth, and the life”, the only way to salvation (Köstenberger 2004:430).

\textsuperscript{522} Beasley-Murray (1987:252) remarks that the statement “no one comes to the Father except through me” is not to denigrate the importance of Way: He is the Way because he is the truth, i.e., the revelation of God, and because the life of God resides in him (in the context of the Gospel that includes life in creation and life in the new creation, 1:4, 12-13; 5:26). He argues that insofar as the saying is related to 14:2-3 it signifies that Jesus leads his own to the Father’s house, revealing the truth about the goal of existence and how it may be reached, and making its attainment possible by granting entrance into life in the Father’s house. However, according to him, the second clause of 14:6 goes beyond the eschatological goal of life in the Father’s house: “no one comes to the Father except through me” indicates that Jesus is the way to the Father, and therefore the way to the Father’s house; that means that Jesus is the way to God in the present. Beasley-Murray cites de la Potterie who points out that 14:6 acts as a “hinge” in the section 14:1-11; while 14:1-6 look to the future opened up by Jesus, 14:6-11 have in view his present significance for faith; Jesus leads his own to the Father now because he is the Way, the Truth, and the Life in the present; “It is one of the many cases of anticipation of eschatological events in John” (de la Potterie 1966:927-928). The saying, moreover, requires that it is set in the context provided by this Gospel as a whole; it is as the Incarnate One who goes to the Father through the obedient offering of himself in death and through resurrection that he leads to the Father in the present and secures a place for his own in the Father’s house. “I am the way” accordingly depicts Jesus in his mediatorial role between God and man; as the Truth he is the mediator of the revelation of God, and as the Life he is the mediator of the salvation which is life in God; “These are two equally essential aspects of the person and work of the Christ and may not be separated” (de la Potterie 1966:938). Beasley-Murray (1987:252-253) also mentions that it is evident that 14:6 presupposes the teaching on the Christ as the Logos, the Word of God made flesh. The latter clause of 14:6 must then be related to the Prologue, where it is stated that the Christ is the Life, the Light of men, who enlightens
3.3.2.4. Knowing and seeing the Father in Jesus (14:7-9/cola 8.3-10.6)

The verses that follow (14:7-9/cola 8.3-10.6 and 14:10-11/cola 10.7-10.12) are simply a commentary on Jesus’ relationship to the Father that has been expressed in lapidary form in verse 6 (Brown 1970:631; Witherington III 1995:248-249; Keener every one (1:4, 9). According to him, that function he retains prior to, during, and after the Incarnation (through the preposition “after” in such a context requires care, since the Word made flesh remains the Incarnate One, even at the right hand of the Father). To him, the negative form of 14:6b has in mind the resistance to the Way, the Truth, and the Life suffered by the Word, but the reality to which it points is positive for humanity. “Jesus’ claim, understood in the light of the prologue to the gospel, is inclusive, not exclusive. All truth is God’s truth, as all life is God’s life; but God’s truth and God’s life are incarnated in Jesus” (Bruce 298-299).
2003:943-944). That is, the focus of these two sub-sections is on the “significance of Jesus as the only access to the Father and the guarantee for the ongoing life of the disciples in the world” (Ridderbos 1997:493; Koester 2003:288-290). The disciples will not be forced to find their own way by resorting to their own means; rather, the knowledge of the Father mediated to them by the revelation provided in and through Jesus will serve as their continual source of spiritual life (Köstenberger 2004:430; Koester 2003:288-290).


The fourth sub-unit (column 8.3-10.12/14:7-9) is demarcated as a separate unit, since there is an obvious change of theme from the preceding column. The preceding column, as has been seen above, provides the identification of Jesus as the way, but the new column emphasizes the theme of “knowing the Father”. This assumption is primarily evident from the dominant appearances of the structure markers гινομενετε; ο ῥειμενεν, and frequent ο πατερ in some columns throughout the column. However, because one thought flows freely into another, clear breaks in this section are impossible. Jesus speaks of revealing the Father in 14:7 but is continuing a thought begun in 14:6 (see Keener 2003:943-944).

In 14:1 Jesus began the discourse by addressing all the disciples, and in 14:6 he replied to Thomas’ question. Now he resumes his address to the disciples. TEV marks this fact by the words “he said to them” (Anchor “If you men...”), thus removing the ambiguity of the word “you,” which in English may be either singular or plural (Newman & Nida 1980:458).

The semantic relationships within the sub-unit are as follows: Two conjunctions (και.) lead two independent columns, in which αποικισατε in the beginning of column 8.4 qualifies not only column 8.4 but also column 8.5. Thus columns 8.4 and 8.5 have a different consequential relationship and are governed by column 8.3 by means of a logical cause-effect relationship. Column 9.0-9.3 contain the question of Philip, which is caused by the lack of understanding, exasperatingly ignorant in asking Jesus to show the Father. Semantically, column 9.1 is just vocative and column 9.2 is equivalent to column 9.3, and these three columns are linked to column 9.0 by means of a qualification substance content relationship. Column 10.0 has a qualification substance relationship with column 10.1-10.6. Column 10.1 is linked to column 10.2 by means of a coordinate dyadic relationship in a reproach form. Column 10.3 is vocative and column 10.5 and 10.6 are linked by means of a qualification substance content relationship. These two columns (column 10.5 and 10.6) are linked to column 10.4 by means of a coordinate additive different nonconsequential semantic relationship. The common theme of these two pairs of reproach (column 10.1-10.2 and column 10.4-10.6) is “to see Jesus is to be brought to the Father”. These six columns are the simplest summary of John’s view of the revelation in Christ. It involves a “seeing” which perceives the historical Jesus but which also senses more than the physical human (Kysar 1986:224). The theme of the sub-unit may accordingly be formulated as “knowing and seeing the Father in Jesus”.

The sentence is found in two forms with nearly equal textual support. The reading επιγνωκειτε, με... γνωσθε has early attestation (P66 A D*) and preserves it as a promise (“If you have come to know me [as in fact you do], you shall know my Father also”). Another reading επιγνωκειτε, με... επιγνωκειτε ουν, which is read by A B C D² L N Θ, represents an unfulfilled condition and result (“if you had come to know me [which, alas, you do not], you would have knowledge of my Father also”) (Metzger 1994:207; Beasley-Murray 1987:243; Carson 1991:493). Thus the external evidence would seem to be equally balanced in the case of both versions, wherein the two readings give quite different senses to the verse, and thus commentators are divided on which form to take (see Schnackenburg 1982:67; Barrett 1978:382-383; Brown 1970:621). Hence the decision must be made between them on the basis of which version of the statement seems more likely in
statement (εϖγνω,κατε, με …… γνω,σεσθε) as a promise seems to be plausible, as the use of the perfect tense (“if you have come to know me”) indicates a knowledge already attained (Moloney 1998:395; cf. Barrett 1978:458-459; Carson 1991:493; Orchard 1998:185-186). The disciples have not failed completely to know Jesus (as “the Jews” had done: 8:9); yet their questions indicate that they do not know him perfectly. All of this will be changed “from now on” (αϖπς α;ρτι)528; after “the hour” context, although it is tenuous at best (cf. Ridderbos 1997:494; Kysar 1986:224). Morris (1971:642) insists that the textual attestation of the former is inferior and the context makes the rebuke more likely. He sees that this sentence implies that the disciples have not really known Christ and accordingly that they have not known the Father. This means that, although the disciples had known Jesus well enough to leave their homes and friends and livelihood to follow wherever he went, they did not know him in his full significance. Ridderbos (1997:494; see Segovia 1991:87) also supports the latter construction, by arguing that the subjunctive in the first denies the disciples true knowledge of Jesus, while the second assumes just such knowledge and regards it as the necessary condition for knowledge of the Father. He thinks that although the disciples – Thomas as well as Philip in 14:8 – repeatedly give evidence of their incomprehension and “not knowing” (cf. 14:9), the second reading seems preferable. According to him, that Jesus would deny to his disciples knowledge of him and of the Father (like the unbelieving Jews in 8:19) does not seem possible because of 14:7b and, more generally, because of the bond that united Jesus with his disciples. Schnackenburg (1982:67), however, prefers the first reading. According to him, this preference is given on the basis of internal evidence: because Thomas’ question seemed to them to be incomprehensible, the copyists were aware of the reproach contained in the lack of reality in the second version, and they also probably remembered John 8:19. He sees that the most important point in favour of the first version is that there is a better connection between it and the following sentence αϖπς α;ρτι. He believes it would have been rather meaningless, in the light of the verses that follow (in which Jesus reproaches Philip), to attempt to eliminate this reproach directed against the disciples, although an attempted elimination may have led to this version. Among others, Barrett (1978:383), Beasley-Murray (1987:243), Carson (1991:493) and Moloney (1998:398-399) agree with this assumption. On the one hand, they agree with Schnackenburg, that although the latter formulation is strongly attested, it appears to have been influenced by 8:19 and 14:8 where Philip reveals the depth of his ignorance. On the other hand, they believe that the former reading suitably balances the rest of the sentence. In this regard, Carson (1991:493) mentions, “At least the disciples have come to know Jesus; what they must understand is that this knowledge of Jesus is the entrée to true knowledge of the Father.” A majority of the UBS Committee also adopted the first version because (they observed) this statement has harmony with the rest of the sentence. Metzger (1994:207; see Newman & Nida 1980:458) notes that the latter construction (a condition contrary) seems to have arisen either because copyists recalled Jesus’ reproach against unbelieving Jews in 8:19 or because Philip’s question (v. 8) and Jesus’ reply (v. 9) suggested to them that the disciples knew neither Jesus nor the Father.

527 As Kysar (1986:224) points out, in either case, whether the first half of the verse is a promise or a reproach, the second half is a reassuring statement. The statement in verse 14:b expresses an accomplished fact – the disciples know and have seen the Father.

528 The phrase αϖπς α;ρτι (literally reads “from now on”) is the pivotal expression (Kysar 1986:224). Newman and Nida (1980:458) are correct in maintaining that the phrase αϖπς α;ρτι refers not to a moment when Jesus is speaking but to the hour of his passion (see 13:31; 16:5). Barrett (1978:383) also insists that this word refers to the moment when Jesus, having completed the revelation of the Father, departs in glory. He furthermore notes that the last discourses as a whole represent this “moment” of completion. Kysar (1986:224) also underscores that this phrase indicates that as a result of Jesus’ exaltation the disciples are assured of grasping the revelation. Morris (see 1971:642) remarks, “Up till now all has been preparation. They have not really come to the full knowledge of Jesus and his significance. But from now on it is to be different. From now on they know him and they have seen

References to Jesus’ unity with the Father pervade the entire Gospel and surface regularly in Jesus’ confrontations with the Jewish leaders (e.g., 5:18; 10:30). John’s presentation clearly implies ontological unity (unity of being); but the emphasis lies in functional unity, that is, the way in which God is revealed in Jesus’ words and works (called “signs” by John; cf. 10:38) (Köstenberger 2004:431; cf. Brown 1970:621-622). As Moloney (1998:395) argues, from the affirmation of the Prologue (1:18) through Jesus’ defence of his Sabbath activity (5:19-30) into the rest of his ministry (cf. 8:19, 38, 58, 10:30, 38), his claim to be the presence of the Father has been boldly made despite the mounting conflict generated by such a claim (e.g., 8:20; 10:31, 39).

him.” This means that, in terms of Morris (1971:642), as a result of what Jesus has done his followers really know God.

529 The verb “know” in the sense of “acknowledge” was part of Near Eastern covenantal language (see Hos. 13:4; Jer. 24:7; 31:34). In the Old Testament, people frequently are exhorted to know God (e.g., Ps. 46:10; 100:3), with knowledge of God generally being anticipated as a future blessing (or being urged) rather than claimed as a present possession (but see Ps. 9:10; 36:10; Dan. 11:32). With Jesus’ coming, however, the situation has changed dramatically: “we speak of what we know” (3:11); “we worship what we do know” (4:22); “you do not know him, but I know him” (7:28 = 8:55); “I know, where I came from” (8:14); “I know my sheep and my sheep know (and follow) me” (10:14, 27); “this is eternal life: that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent” (17:3) (Köstenberger 2004:430).

530 Beasley-Murray (1987:253) mentions that the future γνωσθε (“you will know”) is logical rather than temporal, as is apparent from the latter clause: “assuredly you do know him and you have seen him”.

531 According to Newman and Nida (1980:458), the phrase ἐπιγνωκας, µε may be rendered best in some languages as a reason followed by a result, for example, “He said to them, ‘Since you have known me, you will know my Father also.’” In this type of context, according to them, it is important to select a term for “know” that will be more meaningful than merely “get acquainted with”. They continue that in some languages the most appropriate would be “since you have come to know who I really am, you will therefore know who my Father really is”.

532 Ridderbos (1997:493) mentions, “Jesus connects their knowledge of the Father and their life in fellowship with the Father not only to the future but above all to the faith experience they have received.
The teaching of Jesus with reference to his relation with the Father was too subtle for Philip⁵³³ (Tenney 1976:216; see Schnackenburg 1982:68; Van Tilborg 1993:136-137; Morris 1971:643; Brown 1970:632; Orchard 1998:186; Segovia 1991:87; Tolmie 1995:205).⁵³⁴ So he is exasperatingly ignorant in asking Jesus to show the Father so that the disciples will be enough (v. 8/cola 9.0-9.3).⁵³⁵

9.0. (8) Λέγει αὐτῷ Φίλιππος
9.1. κυρίε(
9.2. δείξον ημιν τὸν πατέρα (και απρέξευ ημιν⊕

Apparently, Philip here asks for some form of theophany.⁵³⁷ Philip’s request to

in their earthly contact with him.” He (1997:494) goes on to say, “In knowing Jesus, that is, in their faith in Jesus as he has revealed himself on earth, lies the secret and certainty for the coming church of its continuing knowledge of God as the Father of Jesus Christ. Because Jesus has kindled that knowledge in the hearts of his own, he cannot be separated from them. In the time that now exists with Jesus’ departure they will not be reduced to their own resources or forced to find their own way. Living on the way to the future is living out of faith – knowledge of the God whom Jesus had revealed to them as his Father before their very eyes.”

⁵³³ Philip, who has been one of Jesus’ chosen disciples from the beginning (1:43; 15:16, 27) and thus one of the apostolic band as well as one of Jesus’ intimates, has obviously misunderstood both the person of Jesus and his mission in coming into the world (Newman & Nida 1980:460; cf. Ridderbos 1997:495; Morris 1971:644).

⁵³⁴ Philip has played a role in several places in this Gospel (cf. 1:43ff. and 12:2ff.), and on the occasion of the feeding of the multitude is also given a question that reflects a lack of understanding (6:5ff.). The statement of Ridderbos (1997:494-495) on the character of Philip in John’s Gospel is significant: “Earlier Philip, responding to a ‘test’ question of Jesus, showed that he did not understand the scope of Jesus’ authority (6:7). But it is certainly not the Evangelist’s intent to expose Philip in particular as a person lacking in faith. He wants, rather, in conveying the reaction of Philip, a disciple from the beginning (1:43ff.), and Jesus’ answer to it, to display both the ultimate basis of the church’s faith – which is the revelation – and the contemplation by Jesus’ disciples of his glory in the flesh (1:18). Later Jesus will speak of the mission of “another Paraclete” and of his own “coming” again after his departure. But first he must repeat what he has said before in much the same language: that all this can only be, and can only be understood, on the basis of the work he has already accomplished in this world (cf. vv 10, 11).”

⁵³⁵ According to Newman and Nida (1980:458), δείξον ημιν τὸν πατέρα may be rendered in some languages as “cause us to see your Father” or “make us to see your Father with our own eyes.” The phrase “και απρέξευ ημιν” only appears twice in the Fourth Gospel (6:7; 14:8) and it is Philip who uses it on each occasion (Moloney 1998:399). According to Newman and Nida (1980:458), this is rendered with the meaning “we shall be satisfied” in several translations (RSV; see also JB, Gdsp, Phps). NAB has “that will be enough for us”; NEB “and we ask no more”; and GeCL “we need nothing more.”

⁵³⁶ Semantically, colon 9.1 is just vocative and colon 9.2 is equivalent to colon 9.3, and these three cola are linked to colon 9.0 by means of a qualificational substance relationship (see above).
provide a vision of God recalls for the reader the desire of Moses on Mount Sinai: “Show me your glory” and the reply from God: “You cannot see my face, for no one may see me and live” (Exod. 19:3; 33:17-34:5, 29-35). It also recalls Isaiah who was granted a vision of “the Lord seated on a throne, high and exalted” (Isa. 6:10) and later predicted that in the day of the Messiah the glory of the Lord would be revealed (Isa. 40:5). In Jesus’ day many Jews longed for a firsthand experience of God. In keeping with Old Testament teaching, John denies the possibility of a direct vision of God (unmediated by Jesus) in 1:18; 5:37; 6:46 (see Brown 1970:632). Hence, Philip’s request is utter foolishness (Bultmann 1971:608; see Köstenberger 2004:431; Keener 2003:944-945; Thompson 1993:177-204; Koester 2003:292). John has already made it clear in his Prologue that however mitigated God’s gracious self-disclosure was in former times, in Jesus he had made himself known, definitively, gloriously, visibly (Carson 1991:494; Orchard 1998:186; Segovia 1991:87-88; Thompson 1993:177-204). Thus Philip has failed to grasp that in Jesus the glory, grace, and truth of God, whom none has seen or can see, stands unveiled (John 1:18) (Beasley-Murray 1987:253; cf. Keener 2003:944-945; Tolmie 1995:205; Brown 1970:632; Koester 2003:292-293; Caird 1968:265-277; Cook 1984:291-297; Bratcher 1991:401-408; Thompson 1993:177-204). This remark is another instance of Johannine misunderstanding (Moloney 1998:396; Köstenberger 2004:431). That is, the request by a disciple, this time Philip, has a literal function as a rhetorical device enabling Jesus to provide the disciples with further and more profound teaching on the essential idea of “he who has seen me has seen the Father”, so that the believer can understand that Jesus is in the Father and that

537 Philip’s request that Jesus “show” them the Father might echo the typical language of a rhetorical challenge seeking a demonstration (Keener 2003:944). The word δει/ξον (show) is an imperative that, if fulfilled, will suffice to fill human need (Kysar 1986:224).
538 There is lively tradition in this matter, known from first century sources (e.g., Philo, Moses 1 #158; OuEx 2.29.40.46; Josephus, Jewish Antiquities 3 #96; Sir 45:1-5; 4 Ezra 14:4-5; cf. 2 Baruch 4:2-7; 59:3-12; Mekilta Ex 19:20) (see De Boer 1996:133; Beasley-Murray 1987:253).
539 Moses was nevertheless allowed to glimpse the back of God as his glory passed by him (Beasley-Murray 1987:253).
540 The request of Philip eventually causes Jesus to explain clearly that such theophanies or visions are otiose now that the Word who is God has become flesh (Brown 1970:632).
541 As Moloney (1998:395) points out, “The disciples are ignorant of truths that are fundamental for an understanding of who Jesus is, what he is doing, and where he is going.”
the Father is in him (14:10f.). In the previous section (cf. 14:4-6), Jesus told the disciples of things that they knew, but Thomas asked for further clarification. A similar pattern has reappeared here. Therefore, Philip seems to be requesting a revelation of the Father that can be seen by human eyes, and Jesus, on the basis of this misunderstanding, is able to develop his teaching further (Newman & Nida 1980:458; cf. Barrett 1978:383; Thompson 1993:177-204; Tolmie 1998:57-75; Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:231; Van Tilborg 1993:136-137; Segovia 1991:87-88; Brown 1970:632).

Jesus responds to Philip’s query with a gentle rebuke (Morris 1971:643), perhaps with a tinge of sadness (Carson 1991:494). Jesus reminds Philip of the long period of time that he has been one of the disciples (Moloney 1998:396; Schnackenburg 1982:69). Jesus has been with all of them for “so long a time” (τοσού τω χρονω μεθαυς) but Philip (and others as well, supposedly) has not really known him (Morris 1971:643). Carson (1991:494) remarks, “If his opponents do not recognize who he is, it is because they have not been taught by God, they have not listened to the Father (6:45). If those closest to him still display similar ignorance of who he is, despite loyalty to him, they attest their profound spiritual blindness.” He adds, “Even being with Jesus such a long time does not guarantee the deepest insight, insight into the truth that all of Jesus’ actions and words have

542 Philip’s question certainly shows his misunderstanding but on the other hand, it indicates that the revelation of the exaltation is not yet complete (Kysar 1986:224; Segovia 1991:87-88).
543 In this regard, De Boer (1996:132) remarks, “Two crucial episodes follow in which two disciples (Thomas and Philip, whose names do not seem to really matter) are made to express concerns about what Jesus has just said (14:4-6, 7-11). This gives Jesus an opportunity not so much to prevent misunderstanding as to drive home the basic message of John, that he, and only he, is the revealer who provides access to the Father and knowledge of the Father.”
544 Tenney (1976:216) is correct in noting, “Metaphysical distinctions and theological explanations meant comparatively little to him.”
545 The statement in this verse is clearly a reproach, even if 14:7a is not (see Kysar 1986:224; Strachan 1941:282; Van Tilborg 1993:136-137).
546 Scholars agree that the reference is to the considerable duration of the disciples’ association with Jesus (specifically, about three years) (see Carson 1991:494; Barrett 1978:383; Morris 1971:643; Köstenberger 2004:431).
547 Jesus’ words of reproach to Philip show that the disciple was expecting some kind of external theophany visible to the bodily eye, a marvellous external intervention (McCaffrey 1988:152).
supported.”

In a statement that is “staggering in its simplicity and its profundity” (Morris 1971:644), Jesus claims that ο⎯ ε⎯ωρακω.ϕ εϖμε. ε⎯ω,ρακεν το.ν πατε,ρα (Köstenberger 2004:432). Jesus’ answer adduces the Jewish principle of representation (the saliab, messenger; see m. Bet. 5:5; Barrett 1978:459), yet John’s Christology surely transcends such teaching (Carson 1991:494). The reproach continues, “How can you say, show us the Father? Don’t you believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in me?” (cf. 12:45; 13:20) This union with the Father is given expression both in Jesus’ words (his teaching) and in his works (especially the “signs”): “The words I speak to you [plural] I do not speak of my own accord, but the Father who resides in me – he performs his works.” John consistently portrays Jesus’ words as words of the Father (see 3:34; 5:23-24; 8:18, 28, 38, 47; 12:49), and his works as works of the Father (see 5:20, 36; 9:3-4; 10:25, 32, 37-38) (Köstenberger 2004:432). The whole life and ministry of Jesus have been windows through which God is seen (Kysar 1986:224). This affirms that he is the supreme revelation of God (Newman & Nida 1980:460; Morris 1971:644; cf. Tenney 1976:216-217; Segovia 1991:88; Tolmie 1995:205; Keener 2003:945; Thompson 1993:177-204; Koester 2003:290-294). Thus, as Beasley-Murray (1987:253) expresses, “a gentle rebuke from Jesus leads to another peak point in the mountain ranges of revelation.”

548 The question of Philip is little more than a foil by which Jesus is allowed to continue the discussion in the following verse, that is, from 14:9 onwards. His query, however, reflects the existential longing for the vision of the ultimate reality for which there is a universal search.

549 According to Kysar (1986:224; see Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:231), “John’s words here address the reality of doubt among the Christians of his community, doubt stirred by the challenges of the conflict with the synagogue (cf. 20:24-29). In this sense, the whole of the Gospel is a commentary on 1:18.”

550 Beasley-Murray (1987:253-254) comments, “The reality is greater than human language can express.” He contrasts Bultmann (1971:609), who says that Jesus’ unity with the Father must be understood exclusively in terms of revelation, and who, in turn, concludes that the “works” are all about Jesus’ “words” because Jesus’ miracles are superfluous.

551 According to Newman and Nida (1980:459-460), this passage is literally “the one who has seen me,” a construction similar to “whoever believes in me” of 12:44, where a Greek participle is used as the equivalent of an indefinite relative pronoun in English. They continue that the indefinite relative clause “whoever has seen me” may be interpreted as conditional, “if anyone has seen me,” and the second part of this sentence may then be rendered “he has seen my Father”. The Gospel of John has already mentioned several times that anyone who has seen Jesus has seen the Father (cf. 12:45; 13:20).

552 Beasley-Murray (1987:253) also points out, “Here is the needed counterpart to 14:6b: that which humankind seeks through its religions, and partially finds, stands revealed in its completeness in Jesus. But the question posed to Philip, ‘how is it that you are saying, show us the Father?’ challenges all
3.3.2.5. The mutual presence of Jesus and the Father in one another (14:10-11/cola 10.7-10.12)

10.7. (10) ουσαν πιστευω ειφο τι εσθη ο ειναι του πατρι
10.8. και ο πατηρ εσχε εμοι εστιν
10.9. τα ρημα α εγω λεγω εμιν απες εμαυτου ουσαν λαλω
10.10. ο δε πατηρ εμοι μενων ποιει τα εργα αυτου
10.11. (11) πιστευετε μοι τι εσθη ο ειναι του πατρι
10.12. εις δε μη δια τα εργα αυτα πιστευετε

The fifth sub-unit, like the fourth (14:8-9), pursues the fundamental reasons given for the exclusivity of the first Christological teaching of 14:4-6 (Jesus as the only way to the Father). In so doing, John develops the Christological teaching of the previous section (to know and see Jesus is to know and see the Father) by dealing specifically with the question of identifying the Father with Jesus – the mutual presence of Jesus and the Father in one another (Segovia 1991:88-89; cf. Ford 1997:151). This sub-section’s structure follows the proposed pattern of inclusion for all three fragments (cf. Segovia 1991:89; Barrett 1978:460; Withington III 1995:250): (1) The unity between Jesus and the Father – the presumed knowledge of the disciples concerning the mutual presence (14:10ab/cola 10.7-10.8); (2) the unity of them in terms of his words and works – the focal point clearly moves from Jesus’ words

would-be disciples.” Bultmann (1971:608-609) also observes: “The implication behind the reproachful question is that all fellowship with Jesus loses its significance unless he is recognized as the one whose sole intention is to reveal God, and not to be anything for himself; but is also implies that the possibility of seeing God is inherent in the fellowship with Jesus. What need is there for anything further?”

553 The fifth sub-unit (cola 10.7-10.12/14:10-11) is demarcated as a separate unit since colon 10.7 (14:10a) introduces a new sub-unit by reason of the obvious change of scene from the preceding cola. That is, whereas the previous sub-unit focuses on the “knowing the Father”, from colon 10.7 the focus shifts to the “believing and doing the works of the Father”. The dominant appearances of the structure markers support this suggestion: πιστευω, ειφο, ποιει, τα εργα; and τα ρ ηματα.

554 These two cola are linked to each other by means of a coordinate dyadic reciprocal semantic relationship.
(τα. ρ⎯η,ματα α] εϖγω. λε,γω) to the Father’s works (τα. ε;ργα α;υτου/) (14:10cd/cola 10.9-10.10)555; and (3) a delineation of the proper reaction of the disciples – a call for belief in the mutual presence (14:11/cola 10.9-10.10)556. Thus it can be hypothesised that the theme of mutual presence develops and expands (see Köstenberger 2004:432): Reiterating his just-voiced claim, Jesus asserts once more, “I am in the Father and the Father is in me.” This mutual indwelling of Father and Son describes their unity yet does not obliterate their uniqueness (Carson 1991:494).

Although the relationship between the Father and the Son is not altogether reciprocal, “each can (in slightly different senses) be said to be in the other. The Father abiding in the Son does his works; the Son rests from, and to eternity in the Father’s being”557 (Barrett 1978: 460; cf. Ford 1997:151; Keener 2003:945-946; Koester 2003:288-294; Ford 1997:151; Mercer 1992:457-462).558

Jesus points, in the first instance, to the fact that he and the Father stand in unbroken unity (14:10ab/cola 10.7-10.8). Jesus’ statement indicates that the disciples have heard and been taught this as Jesus is in the Father and the Father is in Jesus (cf. 10:38) (Brown 1970:632; Bruce 1983:299-300; Ford 1997:151). However, they have not come to believe in this oneness. Thus Jesus indicates that the problem lies in the disciples’ lack of faith (Moloney 1998:396; cf. Tenney 1976:218; Barrett 1978:383;

555 Semantically, these two cola are linked by means of a coordinate dyadic contrastive relationship.
556 Cola 10.11-10.12 (14:11) repeats cola 10.7-10.8 (14:10ab) with a more direct appeal to believe. The semantic relationship between colon 10.11 and colon 10.12 is a coordinate dyadic alternative.
557 In this regard, Köstenberger (2004:432) notes, “In Deut. 18:18, God says regarding the prophet like Moses, ‘I will put my words in his mouth, and he will tell them everything I command him.’ In Deut. 34:10-12, Moses is said to have been sent by the Lord to perform signs and works. If Jesus’ followers are unprepared to take him at his mere word, they ought to include consideration of the witness added by his works. Faith on account of these works—‘signs’ from John’s perspective, mere ‘works’ from Jesus’—is better than no faith at all.” (cf. Morris 1971:644; cf. 5:36; 10:37-38)
558 The following are the semantic relationships within this sub-unit: in cola 10.7-10.8 (14:10ab), Jesus tells the unity between Jesus and the Father that εϖγω. εϖν τω/| πατρι. και. ο⎯ πατη.ρ εϖν εϖμοι, εϖστιν. This mention expresses one dimension of the relationship among God, Jesus, and the believers (Kysar 1986:224). While the sense of being εϖν has been sometimes taken to refer to a unity of being (ontological) or a mystical union, Johannine Christology in general shows that it is a functional oneness that is meant (but cf. 1:1f for its ontological implication). Thus these two cola are linked to each other by means of a coordinate dyadic reciprocal semantic relationship. In cola 10.9-10.10 (14:10cd), the focal point clearly moves from Jesus’ words (τα. ρ⎯η,ματα α] εϖγω. λε,γω) to the Father’s works (τα. ε;ργα α;υτου/). Semantically, colon 10.9 (14:10c) and colon 10.10 (14:10d) are linked by means of a coordinate dyadic contrastive relationship. Cola 10.11-10.12 (14:11) repeats cola 10.7-10.8 (14:10ab) with a more direct appeal to believe. The semantic relationship between colon 10.11 and colon 10.12 is a coordinate dyadic alternative.
Van Tilborg 1993:136-137; Countryman 1994:102; Segovia 1991:88-89). While the sense of being εν has sometimes been taken to refer to a unity of being (ontological) or a mystical union, Johannine Christology in general shows that it is a functional oneness that is meant (but cf. 1:1f. for its ontological implication). That is, Jesus makes the Father visible in his entire way of life (through the words and the works), including the death that now confronts him: only thus can the sacrifice of love be comprehended (cf. Haenchen 1984:125).

Since the disciples do not believe in this unity, Jesus, turning patiently from accusation to teaching, repeats truths from the earlier parts of the story:

τα. ρ⎯η,ματα α] εϖγω. λε,γω υ ¯ μ/ν αϖπς εϖμαυτου/ ουσι λαλω/( ο ¯ δε. πατη. ρ εϖν εϖμωι. με,νον ποιει/τα. ε;ργα αυϖτου/. Of course, with “my word” and “the Father’s works” Jesus is not setting out a contrast (Ridderbos 1997:495). God’s word and his acts are ultimately the same, since dacar can mean both “word” and “deed” in Hebrew. Hence, the revelatory words of Jesus and his acts are finally one and the same; each supplements the other (Kysar 1986:225; see Keener 2003:945-946; Strachan 1941:282; De Jonge 1978:49; Ford 1997:151). Thus, as Ridderbos (1997:495) mentions, it is true as well of the works that he does not do

559 The formation here is taken up in 14:20 and 17:21. 
14:20: “εϖγω. εϖν τω/| πατρι, μου και. υ⎯μει/ϕ εϖν εϖμοι. καϖσιω. εϖν υ ¯ μ/ν” 
17:21: “συ,( πα,τερ( εϖν εϖμοι. καϖσιω. εϖν σοι,( ι[να και. αυϖτοι. εϖν η ¯ μ/ν ω=σιν”.
560 These two cola are linked to each other by means of a coordinate dyadic reciprocal semantic relationship (see above).
561 Particularly, in 14:10c (colon 10.9), the “you” (υ ¯ μ/ν) suddenly becomes plural, and what follows is addressed not only to Philip but to all the disciples (Brown 1970:622).
562 The words he speaks are words of the Father (cf. 3:34; 5:23-24; 8:18, 28, 38, 47; 12:49), and the deeds of Jesus are the works (τα. ε;ργα) of the Father (14:10cd/cola 10.9-10.10; cf. 5:20, 36; 9:3-4; 10:25, 32, 37-38) (Moloney 1998:396; Haenchen 1984:125; Barrett 1978:383; Tolmie 1995:205).
563 Structurally, in 14:10cd (cola 10.9-10.10), the focal point clearly moves from Jesus’ words (τα. ρ ¯ ματα α] εϖγω. λε,γω) to the Father’s works (τα. ε;ργα αυϖτου/). The relation of “the words” in 14:10c (colon 10.9) to “the works” in 14:10d (colon 10.10) is not clear. Patristic writers, like Augustine and Chrysostom, tended to identify them on the grounds that Jesus’ words were works. Bultmann (1971:471), on the other hand, seems to understand “works” in cola 10.7 onwards (vv. 10-14) primarily as words. More likely the terms are complementary but not identical; the parallelism is progressive rather than synonymous (see Brown 1970:622). God’s word and his acts are ultimately one and the same; each supplements the other (Kysar 1986:225).
564 Brown (1970:622) notes, “From Jesus’ point of view both word and work are revelatory, but from the audience’s point of view works have greater confirmatory value than words.” Ridderbos (1997:495) also mentions, “It is clear that, from the perspective of Jesus’ mission, his words and works are equally revelatory of his unity with the Father, but also that from a human point of view his
them on his own (cf. 5:19), and among the works that God does in him are his words as well (cf. 4:34; 17:4). Van der Watt (2000:287) is correct in pointing out, “In 10:37-38 Jesus links his identity to his works. If he does not do the works, people should not believe in him. But if he does the works, people should realize that a close bond of unity exists between the Father and the Son (10:38).” He also mentions that “In previous verse, the functional unity between the Father and the Son was also formulated (10:28-30). Because of the intimate unity between Father and Son, their actions correspond and unity can be concluded from corresponding actions.” He goes on to say, “In 14:10 this intimate unity between Father and Son is explained by saying that the Father, who dwells in the Son, is doing his work.”

Thus the statement in 14:10 is developed in two steps: (1) a declaration that the disciples already believe in the mutual presence of Jesus and the Father in one another (14:10a) and (2) an immediate explanation of what such a mutual presence entails with regard to Jesus’ words and works (14:10b-c). The first step develops the second Christological teaching of 14:7-9, the perception of the Father in Jesus, by pursuing its fundamental reason and thus, ultimately, the fundamental reason for the first Christological teaching of 14:4-6 as well: to know and see Jesus is to know and see the Father, because Jesus is in the Father, and the Father is in him. Instead of being a statement of affirmation as if by way of conclusion, like those of 14:4 and 14:7c, the present declaration is formulated in terms of a question. However, the question clearly expects a positive response and thus presupposes the disciples’ present knowledge of the mutual presence as well. The second step outlines the consequences of the mutual

565 Indeed “the Father’s works” are often interpreted as including Jesus’ words and miracle” (see Lightfoot 1956:276; Bruce 1983:300).
566 The basis of the revelation in v. 10 is now made known. It is not simply that Jesus has been sent by God, and so according to Jewish definition, “one sent is as he who sent him”, though that is uniquely true of Jesus in relation to God; nor is it solely because the revelation of God, made known “in many times and in various ways” is now made known in its completeness (cf. Heb. 1:1); the affirmation holds good because Jesus is in the Father and the Father is in him. This so-called formula of reciprocal immanence is, as Schnackenburg (1982:69) puts it, “[a] linguistic way of describing … the complete unity between Jesus and the Father.” Significantly, it was earlier stated to Jewish opponents of Jesus in justification of a statement closely related to that in v. 9, namely, “I and the Father are one” (10:30, 37-38) (Beasley-Murray 1987:253).
567 John states that the relationship between God and Jesus alternatively with the preposition επιν and the verb με,νειν in vv. 10-11 (Kysar 1986:225).
presence for Jesus’ mission: the words that he speaks are not his own (14:10b), and the works that he performs are not his but the Father’s (14:10c). In other words, given the mutual presence, to perceive Jesus’ words and works is to perceive the Father’s own words and works (Segovia 1991:89; cf. Koester 2003:288-294; Keener 2003:945-946; Ford 1997:151ff.; Mercer 1992:457-462).

As the discussion of the discourse analysis shows, 14:11 (cola 10.11-10.121) repeats 14:10ab (cola 10.7-10.8) with a more direct appeal to believe. In 14:11a (colon 10.11), Jesus forces the disciples to believe that he is in the Father and the Father is in him (see Van der Watt 2000:297-298). Carson (1991:495) is correct in pointing out that the expression πιστευέτε, μοι in this context does not simply mean “trust me”, but “believe that what I have just said [summarised in the next clause] is true”. If they still find it difficult to penetrate the meaning of his words, ats the very least they should “believe on the evidence of the miracles” (Greek εργα, “works”, but the miracles are primarily in view) themselves. Thus if such assertions transcend understanding and are therefore difficult to grasp in faith, an appeal is made to “believe the works,” i.e., the signs of Jesus. The major part of this Gospel (that is, John 1-12) is taken up with the narration of the signs performed by him and the

---

568 The semantic relationship between 14:11a (colon 10.11) and 14:11b (colon 10.12) is a coordinate dyadic alternative (see above).
569 Jesus’ actions are simultaneously the actions of the Father, because the Father is in him and he is in the Father (see Van der Watt 2000:297-298).
570 Newman and Nida (1980:461) also argue that “believe me” does not mean “put your faith in me” but “believe what I am going to say to you” (Note NEB “believe me when I say that….”; and JB “you must believe me when I say….”).
571 This statement means in this context that Jesus’ words should also have been enough for his disciples (cf. v. 8) (Ridderbos 1997:496).
572 According to Carson (1991:495), similar appeal is made twice elsewhere, but the context of this passage makes it the most telling of the three. (Carson argues) Jesus’ point is not simply that displays of supernatural power frequently prove convincing, but that the miracles themselves are signs. He underscores that thoughtful meditation on, say, the turning of the water into wine, the multiplication of the loaves or on the raising of Lazarus will disclose what these miracles signify: viz. that the saving kingdom of God is at work in the ministry of Jesus, and this is in ways tied to his very person. The miracles are non-verbal Christological signposts.
573 Newman and Nida (1980:461) note that the ellipsis in the condition “if not” must often be filled out, for example, “if you do not believe what I say” or “if you do not believe just because of what I say”. They believe that this second rendering fits well with the following clause, “believe because of what I have done” or even “…what my Father has done through me”. Ridderbos (1997:493) remarks that the “if” is not meant conditionally but rather causally as denoting a reality: “since”.

256

Philip’s request therefore enables Jesus to give further and deeper teaching to the disciples on the intimate relation existing between Jesus and the Father (Morris 1971:643; Van der Watt 2000:287-288; Van Tilborg 1993:136; Keener 2003:945-946). The Christological mention is made of his oneness with the Father and his unique role as the revelation of the Father (see Moloney 1998:393; Strachan 1941:282-283; Appold 1976; Tenney 1976:217-219; Bruce 1983:300; Keener 2003:945-946; Tolmie 1995:205). Jesus in this passage forces us to believe that he is in the Father and the Father is in him. In other words, the disciples are asked to believe in the oneness that exists between Jesus and the Father, or at least to believe in Jesus on the basis of the Father’s works that he performs (Moloney 1998:393). Jesus is the revelation of the Father. The disciples are asked to believe in the oneness that exists between Jesus and the Father, or at least to believe in Jesus on the basis of the Father’s works that he performs (Moloney 1998:393; cf. Countryman 1994:102; Appold 1976). In the words and works of Jesus the eschatological purpose of God is both declared and fulfilled (Beasley-Murray 1987:254).

574 The majority of manuscripts add μοι at the end of the sentence in imitation of its beginning. However, as Metzger (1994:207) maintains, a variety of witnesses, including several of the earliest (P66, a D L W 33 1071) have resisted the temptations to assimilate the construction to the preceding πιστευετε μοι , which is read by A B Γ Δ Θ (see Beasley-Murray 1987:243; Brown 1970:622; Bernard 1928b:542).

575 If the disciples are to commit themselves to a saving belief in the oneness between Jesus and the Father, and thus see the Father (cf. vv. 8-9), they should look to the place where such oneness is to be seen: in the works (τα. εργα) of Jesus (v. 11) (Moloney 1998:396).

576 Strachan (1941:283) notes, “The doctrine of the interpretation of the personalities of the Father and the Son is the result of spiritual experience and observation of the words and works of Jesus.”

577 Jesus’ words are “spirit and life” (6:63).

578 Ridderbos (1997:496) notes, “Believe me that I am in the Father and the Father in me” in vs. 11 means in this context that Jesus’ words should also have been enough for his disciples (v. 8). But when he adds, ‘But if not, then believe me for the sake of the works themselves’, this clearly relates to the effect – visible to all – of Jesus’ unity with the Father: the miracles are here, in distinction from his words, ‘the works themselves’. Of course in view of the entire context this is not to say (anymore than
3.3.2.6. The presence of Jesus by means of the disciples’ mission (14:12-14/cola 10.13-10.18)

The double “amen” in 14:12a (cola 10.13-10.14) underlines the following statement as important (cf. 1:51). In this way Jesus adds a particularly heavy and emphatic continuation of what has just been said before as well as certain conclusions (Morris 1971:645; Ridderbos 1997:353, 497; Keener 2003:946-947; Moloney 1998:396; Schnackenburg 1982:70; Segovia 1991:91). Through the discourse thus far Jesus...

The double “amen” in 14:12a (cola 10.13-10.14) can be regarded as a separate unit. The reason for this demarcation is that, although same dominant structure markers of the previous cola are also found in cola 10.15.1-10.18 (cf. ποιεω and ο εργον), the double “amen” in cola 10.13-10.14 (14:12a) makes new division proper (see Morris 1971:645; Ridderbos 1997:353, 497; Moloney 1998:396; Schnackenburg 1982:70; Segovia 1991:91). Jesus asked the disciples to believe in him at least on the basis of the works of the Father revealed in the Son. Now the double “amen” introduces this final subsection, which picks up the theme of “works” (Moloney 1998:393).
has been appealing for faith in him and this is continued in this passage and is given an encouragement that is nothing less than breathtaking (Beasley-Murray 1987:254; Carson 1991:495; Bruce 1983:300).\footnote{Moloney (1998:396) argues, “The reference in v. 11 leads into the verse 12, where the theme of ‘works’ and use of the double ‘amen’ continue what has been said before and bring it to some form of conclusion.” Ridderbos (1997:353) notes that this double “amen” need not presuppose a new situation. According to him, this phrase can also be an emphatic continuation of what has just been said, especially of “hard” sayings (cf. 3:3; 6:26, 32; 8:58; 13:38). Thus (he mentions) this statement gains the character of an authoritative promise to the disciples, the fulfilment of which will even surpass what they have been seeing him do.} However, the main subject changes to the third person, and makes the statement a general truth rather than a personal exhortation, which supports the division proper (see above; cf. Tenney 1976:219; Segovia 1991:90-91).

The statement here is obviously in the form of a staggering promise. These verses state the results of the life of faith, if the condition of believing spoken of in the previous verses is fulfilled (Kysar 1986:225; cf. Countryman 1994:102; Schnackenburg 1982:70-71; Keener 2003:946-947). Semantic relationships within the sub-unit can be affected by this syntactical point of view. Internally, sub-cola 10.15.2-10.15.5 are linked to sub-colon 10.15.1 by means of a subordinate qualificational logical reason-result semantic relationship. Colon 10.16 (14:13a) has a subordinate qualificational logical means-purpose semantic relationship with colon 10.17 (14:13b). These two cola are linked to colon 10.18 (14:14) by means of a coordinate additive equivalent semantic relationship. Cola 10.15.2-10.15.5 and cola 10.16-10.18 are linked by means of a coordinate additive different nonconsequential semantic relationship. To this, colon 10.15 is semantically linked by means of a qualificational substance content relationship. The flow of the argument can accordingly be summarised as follows: Jesus makes certain promises to “anyone who has faith” in Jesus (ο⎯ πιστευ,ων ειϖϕ εϖμε. – an expression that embraces all believers, not just the apostles)\footnote{As Barrett (1978,384) mentions, the construction here, ειϖϕ with the accusative, indicates the true believer who trusts in Christ.} for the period following his departure (Carson 1991:495; Schnackenburg 1982:70) and this promise is twofold (cf. Strachan 1941:283-285; Kysar 1986:225; Brown 1970:633; Tolmie 1995:205-206; Witherington III 1995:250). The first promise is expressed in cola 10.15.2-10.15.5
(14:12b): the believers will do the same works that he has done and have the privilege of performing even greater works. The second promise is expressed in cola 10.16-10.18 (14:13-14): the disciples are promised that their prayers will be heard.

The first promise is expressed in verse 12 (cola 10.15.1-10.15.5): the believers will do the same works (εργα) that he has done and have the privilege of doing even greater (μειζονα) works. It is apparent that “works” terminology in John is considerably broader than the “miraculous” (cf. e.g., 5:36; 9:3-4; 10:25, 38; 14:11; 15:24). Indeed, in Jesus’ own consciousness, there is no dichotomy between the natural and the supernatural, a distinction so dear to post-Enlightenment thought. In John, Jesus’ “works” are, together with his “words” (cf. e.g., 14:10-12; 15:22-24), part of his overall ministry (see above; Köstenberger 2001:122; Brown 1970:633; Segovia 1991:90-91; Keener 2003:946-947; Tolmie 1995:137-138; Nissen 1999b:213-231). In this sense, the disciples’ “greater works” are not simply more works; nor are they merely more spectacular works or “miracles” (Köstenberger 2001:122; Carson 1991:495). Surely the disciples will not do greater works than the raising of Lazarus or the healing of a man blind from birth? In other words, “greater works” mean “more spectacular” or “more supernatural” works: it is hard to imagine works that are more spectacular or supernatural than the raising of Lazarus from the dead, the multiplication of bread and the turning of water into wine (Ridderbos 1997:497; Carson 1991:495; Haenchen 1984:125; Schnackenburg 1982:71; Segovia

---


584 Newman and Nida (1980:461-462) remark that the expression τα. εργα α] εργω. ποιω refers to Jesus’ miracles, and therefore one can translate “will perform the kinds of miracles that I have performed”. According to them, it may be necessary to introduce such an expression as “kinds of” in order to indicate clearly that the followers of Jesus are not expected to duplicate the precise miracles performed by Jesus. They however note that in using such a term as “miracles” it is important to avoid the implication that they are merely spectacular instances of healing or the like. Thus, they argue that it may be more satisfactory to use such an expression as “wonderful things” or “surprising accomplishments”. Carson (1991:495) also remarks, “The ‘works’ (εργα, cf. v. 11) Jesus has been doing, and the greater works that follow, cannot legitimately be restricted to deeds of humility (13:15) or acts of love (13:34-35), still less to a proclamation of Jesus’ ‘words’ (14:10).” He also points out, “Jesus’ works may include more than his miracles; they never exclude them. But even so, as he says, ‘greater works’ is not a transparent more things than Jesus did, since it embraces so many people over such a long period of time – since there are perfectly good Greek ways of saying ‘more’, and since in any case the meaning would then be unbearably trite.” Kysar (1986:225) also notes that the reference to “works” here should be understood as inclusive of redemptive concern for humans.
Carson (1991:495; see Köstenberger 2001:123-124; 2004:433) properly indicates that the clues to the explanation’s meaning are two: first, the final clause, “because I am going to the Father” (ο[τι εϖγω. προ.φ το.ν πατε,ρα πορευ,ομαι), and second, the parallel in 5:20: “For the Father loves the Son and shows him all he does. Yes, to your amazement he will show him even greater things than these” (as in 14:12). According to him, the two clues point in the same direction. Jesus’ disciples will perform greater works because he is going to the Father: this cannot mean that they will have greater scope for their activity because he will have faded from the scene and relinquished the turf to them, but that the very basis for their greater works is his “going to the Father”. Their works become greater precisely because of the new order that has come about consequent on his going to the Father. Similarly, the context of 5:20 shows that the greater works the Father will show the Son, and that the Son will therefore manifest to his followers, are displays of resurrection and judgment (cf. 5:17, 24-26). This life-giving power of the Son depends in turn on the Son’s death, resurrection and exaltation.

It may be concluded that the “greater works” of the present passage are the activities of believers, still in the future from the vantage point of the earthly Jesus, that will be based on Jesus’ accomplished Messianic mission. Viewed from an eschatological
perspective, these works will be “greater” than Jesus’, since they will take part in a different, more advanced phase of God’s economy of salvation. At the same time, there is an essential continuity between Jesus’ earthly mission for his followers and the mission of the exalted Jesus through his followers. The “greater works” are thus works of the exalted Christ though the activity of the believers (cf. 17:20; 20:29) (Köstenberger 2001:126; 2004:433; Barrett 1978:384; Lindars 1972:475; Beutler 1984:49; Ridderbos 1997:497; Bruce 1983:301; Mercer 1992:457-462; Keener 2003:946-947; Countryman 1994:102; Tolmie 1995:137; Schneider 1976:261; Culpepper 1998:210-211; Nissen 1999b:213-231). This demonstrates that the contrast in 14:12 is not finally between Jesus’ works and his disciples’ works but between the works of Jesus that he himself performed during the days of his flesh, and the works that he performs through his disciples after his death and exaltation (Carson 1991:497; Schnackenburg 1982:72-73; Culpepper 1998:210-211; Keener 2003:947-950; Witherington III 1995:250; Nissen 1999b:213-231). It is indeed introduced by Jesus’ sacrifice and exaltation. Both Jesus’ words and his deeds were somewhat veiled during the days of his flesh; even his closest followers, as the foregoing verses make clear, grasped only part of what he was saying. But Jesus is about to return to his Father, he is about to be glorified, and in the wake of his glorification his followers will know and make known all that Jesus is and does, and their every deed and word will belong to the new eschatological age that will then have dawned. The ‘signs’ and ‘works’ Jesus performed during his ministry could not fully accomplish their true end until after Jesus had risen from the dead and been exalted. Only at that point could they be seen for what they were.” He also remarks, “By contrast, the works believers are given to do through the power of the eschatological Spirit, after Jesus’ glorification, will be set in the framework of Jesus’ death and triumph, and will therefore more immediately and truly reveal the Son. Thus ‘greater works’ is constrained by salvation-historical realities. In consequence many more converts will be gathered into the messianic community, the nascent church, than were drawn in during Jesus’ ministry (cf. 15:26-27; 17:20; 20:21, 29).” Carson (1991:496), however, indicates that the contrast itself turns not on raw numbers but on the power and clarity that mushroom after the eschatological hinge has swung and the new day has dawned. He also notes that the contrast between the greatness of John the Baptist and the greatness of the least in the kingdom is not entirely dissimilar (cf. Matt 11:7-15).

589 Ridderbos (1997:497) notes, “The disciples have been witnesses of Jesus’ works while he has been with them (so the preceding verses), and this is the permanent basis not only for their faith (and through them that of the coming church, 20:30, 31) but also for their involvement in the progress of his works on earth after he has gone from them. The new solemn opening (‘truly, truly, I say to you’) places a particularly heavy emphasis on the connection between faith and the disciples’ involvement in his works.”

590 Kysar (1986:225) also notes that the “greater works” are the evangelical spread of the kerygma through the mission of the church – a spread that far exceeds that of Jesus’ ministry. He states that this is possible for the church only because, first, the revelation of Christ will have been accomplished and, second, the Spirit that empowers the church will have been given (20:21-22). Both of these are “because” (ο[τι) Jesus goes to the Father.

591 Ridderbos (1997:497) remarks that the extent to which Jesus holds himself responsible and accountable for this fulfilment – at the same time and in the same act further explaining the real secret of these “greater works” – is evident from the answers to prayer he promises, a motif that recurs in the following chapters in various forms (15:16; 16:23, 24, 26; see also 15:7; 1 Jn 3:21, 22; 5:14, 15).
Jesus’ departure to the Father that makes the way free for such a new and powerful interpretation and proclamation (Haenchen 1984:126; Schnackenburg 1982:71-72). Therefore the statement of Jesus in this passage refers to a form of life-giving presence of the risen Jesus among the believers.592

The second promise of Jesus to the believers is expressed in verses 13-14 (cola 10.16-10.18) (see Haenchen 1984:126; Strachan 1941:283-285; Segovia 1991:90-91; Witherington III 1995:250; Keener 2003:947-950).593 The disciples are promised that their prayers will be heard. Jesus does not indicate to whom the prayer is to be addressed, whether to the Father or to the Son, though in 15:16 and 16:23 the prayer is directed to the Father (Newman & Nida 1980:462).594 Whether this prayer is directed to the Father or to Jesus, it is offered in Jesus’ name595, and he is the one who grants

592 Thus, in keeping with motifs current in both Jewish life in general and farewell discourses in particular, the disciples are designated as Jesus’ successors, taking their place in a long string of predecessors that ranges from the Old Testament prophets to John the Baptist and climaxes in Jesus (Köstenberger 2004:433). In this sense, Jesus’ followers – not just his original disciples, but “whoever believes in me” – will do greater things than even Jesus did, aided by answered prayer in Jesus’ name (14:13) and in close spiritual union with their exalted Lord (chapter 15). In a real sense, these “greater works” will be performed by the exalted Jesus in and through his followers, whereby “because I am going to the Father” is a somewhat oblique way of referring to Jesus’ cross and resurrection (cf. 13:1; 16:28) (Köstenberger 2004:433). Jesus pledges that his leaving does not constitute a permanent withdrawal; rather, subsequent to his exaltation, he will be able to help his followers on earth (Ridderbos 1997:498).

593 According to Kysar (1986:225), this is a statement made in several different ways throughout all three of the forms of the discourse (cf. 15:7, 16; 16:23, 24, 26), as well as in 1 John (3:21-22; 5:14-15; cf. Brown 1970:634-636 for a comparison of the verses).

594 According to Newman and Nida (1980:462-463; cf. Brown 1970:634-635; Schnackenburg 1982:73), in biblical thought the “name” of a person represents in some sense the person himself, and that is the basic clue to understanding the phrase “in my name”. In this Gospel the phrase occurs in several connections: 1) Ask for in my name (14:13, 14; 15:16; 16:23, 24, 26): this phrase, always related to a prayer context, is generally translated literally, perhaps due to the influence of Christian prayer practice. 2) Give you in my name (16:23): the phrase “in my name” can be taken either with the verb “ask” or with the verb “give.” 3) Keep them safe by the power of your name (17:11): this phrase is literally “keep them (safe) by (Greek ε∋ν) your name.” 4) That through your faith in him you may have life (20:31); the phrase is literally “that believing you may have life in his name.” 5) With/by my Father’s authority (5:43; 10:25; cf. 12:13 “in the name of God”); this is literally “in name of my Father”. In each of these three passages the name of the Father/Lord represents his authority. 6) Because you are mine (see 15:21): this is the meaning of the related phrase “because of my name” in 15:21. 7) Send in my name (14:26): here the phrase may be taken in any of several ways, all of which suit the context: (a) because you belong to me; (b) because I ask him; (c) with my authority; (d) in my place. However, as Newman and Nida remark, it is almost impossible to decide which alternative is preferable. 595 “Ask in my name” occurs only in John (but cf. Mt 18:19, 20). It means something like “ask with an appeal to me”. But here Jesus is not only the one in whose name the disciples will pray but also the one to whom they will address their prayers and who will himself answer them – unlike 15:16; 16:23, where the Father is the one addressed and the one who answers. Consequently, the text adds “that the
the request (I will do it, v. 14)\textsuperscript{596} (Carson 1991:497; Brown 1970:634-636; Bietenhard 1973:271-280).\textsuperscript{597} Jesus’ previous words have given the disciples a tremendous promise as to what they might receive through prayer (Morris 1971:648). It is indicated again in v. 14 that the disciples can ask in Jesus’ name to Jesus.\textsuperscript{598} The

Father may be glorified in the Son”. The glorification of the Father in the Son will continue on earth even after Jesus has gone to the Father. But the works are still his, and he continues to bear responsibility for them, even though he has involved and authorised his disciples to assist therein as his apostles. Therefore, when they pray for the performance of those works with an appeal to his name, they can count on him to hear them. That is the pledge repeated with all due clarity and emphasis in v. 14 (Ridderbos 1997:497-498).

\textsuperscript{596} As Ridderbos (1997:498) notes, the most remarkable in this pronouncement of course is the unqualified and unconditional nature of Jesus’ promise: “whatever you ask in my name” (οἱ τι αὐτῆ,σητε εἲνεν τῷ/ ὁ σωματικός μου). According to Ridderbos (1997:498), other similar promises of answered prayer add conditions such as doing the commandments, prayer in accordance with the will of God, or the agreement of two or more believers in what is asked (1 John 3:21, 22; 5:14, 15; Matt. 18:19). It is often said that these conditions “may have been dictated by the realistic experience in the life of the community that not all requests were granted” (Brown 1970:635). It is usually concluded that the unconditional forms of the sayings are therefore “more general” and that “in the Johannine tradition the conditional forms are not attributed to Jesus” (Brown 1970:635; Schnackenburg 1982:72). Regardless of whether the sayings with conditions are understood as accommodations to experience, the saying here is not intended as an unconditional pledge that every believing prayer, of whatever content, will be heard. The saying must be understood in immediate connection with what precedes: it ties in with “for I go to the Father” and explains the “for” by suggesting that from his position in heaven Jesus will do whatever the disciples ask with a view to the glorification of the Father in the Son. This saying must always, in fact, be understood anew in this context, with regard to both what Jesus’ disciples may ask of him, the Exalted One, and what they may expect as answers in this earthly dispensation. The main point is that, by putting so much stress here and in what follows on prayer in his name, Jesus is pledging to his disciples that he is not withdrawing from them by his departure but will be able, because of his heavenly glory, to give them everything they will need for the continuation of his work on earth, and he refers them to prayer as the way of his continuing fellowship with them (Ridderbos 1997:498-499; cf. Cook 1984:291-297; Bratcher 1991:401-408; Caird 1968:265-277; Keener 2003:947-950).

\textsuperscript{597} Newman and Nida (1980:463) remark, “That Jesus is not referring to irresponsible prayer in the expression whatever you ask is indicated by the goal of the prayer: ‘so that the Father’s glory will be shown through the Son’. The glory of the Father is the one purpose that Jesus has in responding to the request of those who pray.”

\textsuperscript{598} This verse is entirely omitted by a scattering of witnesses, including several important ancient versions (X $ f^1$ 565 1009 1365 $ f^6$, $ v^2$ vg syr syr $ r$ arm geo Nonnus), though evidence favours its inclusion. Furthermore, Λ\textsuperscript{*} omits verse 14 and the last seven words of verse 13 (through homoioiteleuton), the eye of the scribe having passed from ποιησίων τοις ποιησίων (Metzger 1994:208; Beasley-Murray 1987:243; Schnackenburg 1982:73). According to Bernard (1928b:544), A B L and f$^1\text{3}$, indeed, repeat του/το ποιησίων from v. 13, but a D W Θ in v. 14 replace το/το by εἴσαγω. So A D L follow v. 13 in reading αἰσθήσεως, εἴσαγω κτλ., but a B W Γ Θ have αἰσθήσεως, με εἰσαγω κτλ. The possible reasons for its omission are presented by Metzger (1994:208), as follows: (a) it was due to an accident in transcription, the eye of the scribe having passed from εἰσαγω,ν to εἴσαγω,ν; (b) similarity in sentiment and even in expression with the first part of verse 13 prompted parsimonious scribes to delete; (c) it was deliberately omitted by some scribe in order to avoid contradiction with 16:23 (see Newman & Nida 1980:464; Brown 1970:622; Bernard 1928b:544). Thus, despite the clumsy Greek (αἰσθήσεως, με, see below) and its seeming repetition of 14:13a, it should be retained (see Moloney 1998:400; Carson 1991:497-498; Barrett 1978:384-385). In addition, the word με is omitted by a variety of witnesses (A Ν Ν Λ Π Ψ Byz Lect al.) while it is replaced with τον πατερα in some readings (249 397). As Metzger (1994:208) mentions, the word με is adequately supported (P$^2$ a B W
phrase ο[ τι α∋ν emphasises the inclusiveness of the power of their asking, but “in my name” (εϖν τω/| οϖνο,μου) closely qualifies it. The expression “to ask in my name” means to ask what is harmonious with the will of Christ and consistent with the Father’s love. “I will do it” comes as a shock, for the disciples (the reader) expect Jesus to say that “God” will do it (compare 15:16 and 16:23). But in the context of the functional unity of the Father and the Son, what God does Jesus does as well (Moloney 1998:396). In 14:13, praying in the name of Jesus is generally discussed and the unlimited assurance given that whatever the disciples might ask, Jesus would do it, in order to glorify the Father. In 14:14, however, Jesus, as the one who is asked and carries out the request, is at the centre. This verse therefore has the purpose of making it more precise, clear and emphatic that Jesus himself continues to be active on behalf of the disciples. This, of course, is the specifically Johannine concern in the interpretation of the traditional statement about the hearing of prayer (Schnackenburg 1982:73; Keener 2003:947-950).

To understand this statement more accurately, it is necessary to recognise the meaning and function of Jewish prayer during the first century (see Ferreira 1998:48-58). A number of studies on Jewish prayer have appeared that have shed significant light on the customs, patterns, and functions of prayer during the first century.599 Prayer was an important part of Jewish religious life in the first century (see Charlesworth 1992:36). Jewish prayer in this period was vibrant and highly developed. Basically, Jewish prayer during the first century can be divided into two categories: prescribed statutory prayers and private or spontaneous prayers. The prescribed statutory prayers

\[ \Delta \Theta \Psi f^\dagger \text{28 33 700 al} \] and seems to be appropriate in view of its correlation with εγω, later in the verse. This problem may have happened because of a scribe’s desire to avoid contradiction with 16:23 (Beasley-Murray 1987:243; cf. Bernard 1928b:544). Brown (1970:622) also argues that its repetitive character may have caused the omission of the whole verse 9 (see above) and this is probably an attempt to soften the awkwardness of the original, for example, in the sequence “of me in my name”. He consequently cites Lagrange (1948:380) who points out that there is nothing too illogical about petitioning Jesus in his own name, for in the OT the psalmist petitioned Yahweh for his name’s sake (Ps 25:1). It is even less illogical if “in my name” means “in union with me”. Newman and Nida (1980:464) in this regard also mention that the Father could be assumed as the one to whom the prayer is directed; but since it is Jesus who will answer the prayer, it is better understood as directed to him. 599 See Charlesworth (1982, 1992), Flusser (1988), Grant (1953), Greenberg (1989), Heinemann (1977), Henrix (1979), Jeremias (1967b), Kirby (1968), Kurzman (1991) and Martin (1968). For an excellent bibliography on prayer during the Graeco-Roman era consult Harding’s bibliography in Charlesworth (ed.), The Lord’s Prayer and Other Prayer Texts from the Greco-Roman Era (1994).
were offered at set times three times a day (Jeremias 1967b:69), that is, in the morning, afternoon and evening (cf. Dan 6:11). Benedictions were also said before and after meals (Jeremias 1967b:72). The pattern of the three set daily prayers consisted of the Shema and the Tephilla. The Shema was recited in the morning and in the evening with the addition of the Tephilla. The afternoon prayer was set at the time of the afternoon sacrifice, when the Tephilla was prayed (Jeremias 1967b:70-72). In this regard Heinemann (1977) has identified a “law-court” pattern in some Jewish prayers. According to Heinemann, building on the studies of Gemser (1955), Blank (1948) and Schmidt (1928), three distinct parts can be identified in this kind of prayer (1977:194): (1) the address; (2) the plea or justification; and (3) the request or petition. This “law-court” or judicial pattern of prayer is an outgrowth of the prayers of biblical sages, for example, Abraham’s prayer for Sodom, Moses’ intercession for the Israelites, Hannah’s prayer at the temple, and so on (Heinemann 1977:199-200). In addition to the examples produced from the Talmud by Heinemann, similar “law-court” prayers in the Old Testament Pseudepigrapha and Apocrypha and the Dead Sea Scrolls have been identified. In the prayer of Ezra in 4 Ezra 8.20-36, which in its present form dates from the second half of the first century CE (Charlesworth 1993:781), the three elements of the “law-court” prayer are clearly evident. The Prayer of Jacob also reflects the “law-court” pattern, though a clearly defined justification of the requests is absent (Charlesworth 1983: II, 720-23). Examples of the “law-court” prayer from the Dead Sea Scrolls are located in 4Q504 (VI), 4Q508 (fragment 2), and in the Psalm of Joseph (4Q372 I 1632). These examples show that the genre of the “law-court” prayer identified by Heinemann in the Talmud was already current in the first century CE (Ferreira 1998:49-50). The “law-court” has an apologetic purpose: in the “law-court” prayer the petitioner pleads his or her cause for justice against an adversary. In other words, it is a means of defence. Furthermore, it seems that the Sits im Leben of the Johannine community corroborates this suggestion (see “Johannine community” in Chapter II). It was a community in severe conflict with the synagogue over their Christological beliefs. As the community was being ostracised for their faith it is easy to imagine their requests to God for justice. Furthermore, the conflict that the community later “experienced within itself provides the background for the petitions” requesting unity within the community. The didactic
purpose of some Jewish prayers is also seen in a number of documents. The hymns of the *Thanksgiving Scroll* may have been written for study. Indeed, for Flusser “it seems probable that both the *Thanksgiving Scroll* and the *Canticles of the Instructor* were composed for study rather than for use as prayer” (1988:566). Other examples of prayer serving autobiographical and didactic purposes include the prayers of Mordecai and Esther in the additions to the Greek book of Esther (Flusser 1988:552), the *Psalms of Solomon* (Flusser 1988:573), and the prayers in the book of Tobit. John 17 certainly reflects autobiographical and didactic concerns (Ferreira 1998:56). The prayer is autobiographical when the Revealer reiterates his deeds on earth (vv. 4, 6, 12, 14, 18, 22), and also when it describes the experience and action of the disciples (vv. 6, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 21, 26). It is also clear that the prayer has a didactic purpose as v. 13 is directed to be heard by the disciples. This is also borne out when we look at the function of the other two prayers of Jesus in the Gospel, in John 11:41-42 and John 12:27-28. In both instances his prayer is to teach something. In John 11:41-42 the Johannine Jesus explicitly says, “I have said (prayed) this for the sake of the crowd standing here, so that they may believe that you sent me.” And again the didactic purpose of the prayer in John 12:27-28 is clear when the Johannine Jesus prays, “And what should I say, ‘Father, save me from this hour’? No, it is for this reason that I have come to this hour.” In Schnackenburg’s words, “It is unlikely that the evangelist means to describe a psychological process rather than to explain the significance of ‘this hour.’” (1980:387) Therefore the prayer in vv. 12-14 should be understood in terms of didactic and apologetic purposes in the context of the struggle of the Johannine community with the synagogue. It serves to strengthen the faith of the Johannine community in the face of opposition. The prayer is an apologia of the Johannine community for their existence, including the threat of internal dissolution (Ferreira 1998:55-58).

The Johannine community will come to grips with its place in a hostile world by means of Jesus’ deeds by the disciples and the prayer practice. In other words, the absence of Jesus created by his departure will not lead to the cessation of the works of the Father by which Jesus has made God known (cf. 5:41; 7:18; 8:50, 54). However, the disciples will not automatically do these greater “works”. They are exhorted to ask
in the name of Jesus that the works continue to be done.\textsuperscript{600} The increased greatness of the works lies in their being done in his name, after his departure. Indeed, anyone who asks in the name of Jesus will continue the task of manifesting the Father’s oneness with the Son. Furthermore, a crucial point has been made in this exhortation: the ongoing presence of the absent Jesus will be found in the worshipping community. Its members will associate themselves with the departed Jesus, asking in his name. Jesus, the former Paraclete, doing whatever is asked in his name (vv. 13a, 14), glorifies the Father in the Son (v. 13b). The glory of God, once seen in the deeds of Jesus (cf. 2:11; 5:41; 7:18; 8:50, 54; 11:4, 40), will be seen in the deeds of worshipping disciples, greater deeds even than Jesus did (v. 12), done as a result of their asking in the name of Jesus (vv. 13-14) (Moloney 1998:397; cf. Ridderbos 1997:498; Nissen 1999b:213-231). Thus the Father will be glorified by Jesus even after “the hour” itself, in and through the disciples’ own mission. The expansion of the beginning statement concerning the mutual presence takes place (cf. 14:10-11), therefore, by way of promises. More specifically, the statement is expanded through the reintroduction of both the reason for the departure and the theme of glorification within such promises, showing thereby the relationship between Jesus and the Father after “the hour” (Segovia 1991:90-91; Ford 1997:151ff.; Cook 1984:291-297; Bratcher 1991:401-408; Morrison 2005:598-603).

**In sum:** This section of the discourse contains the theme of Jesus’ departure. However, it is clearly indicated that Jesus will not be separated from his disciples but rather that he is going away to prepare for them the universal and permanent possibility of an abiding communion with his Father (Brown 1970:623; cf. Culpepper 1998:209; Moloney 1998:394). Jesus promises that he is going to the house of his Father to prepare place for his own, since there are many rooms. His Father’s house is viewed as existing already, but by his death and exaltation the Lord is to make it possible for his own to be there with him (Beasley-Murray 1987:249).\textsuperscript{601} This means that the promise of Jesus is thought to relate to the permanent fellowship that will be

\textsuperscript{600} Indeed, that the “greater works” are done consequent upon Jesus’ going to the Father is now clarified further: the disciples’ fruitful conduct is the product of their prayers (Carson 1991:496-497).
\textsuperscript{601} Beasley-Murray (1987:249) thus sees that the figure in John 14:2-3 is wholly unapocalyptic; rather it is eschatological, as the related comparison of tent and house in 2 Cor. 5:1.
possible through Jesus’ departure and ongoing presence in and among his followers (Van der Watt 2000:347). It is therefore indicated that the departure of Jesus is to the disciples’ advantage and the disciples are thus called to believe in the word of Jesus. Jesus’ disciples thus do not need to trouble their hearts. Rather, they are required to believe in God and in Jesus since faith allows the absent one to be seen (14:1; cf. Heb 11:1). Then, as the way and the truth and the life, Jesus mediates between God and the people (14:6-11). Thus whoever knows Jesus knows the Father, and whoever has seen Jesus has seen the Father (cf. Blomberg 2001:198-199; Newman & Nida 1980:458; Beasley-Murray 1987:253; Moloney 1998:395). Jesus is indeed the revelation of the Father. The revelatory words of Jesus and his acts, which are finally one and the same, reveal the Father as well as his own divinity to the world. The disciples can always experience the presence of Jesus when they come to the Father because Jesus is the only they will meet God. The final sub-section (14:12-14) deals with the promise of Jesus to “anyone who has faith” in Jesus (ο⎯ πιστευ,ων ειϖϕ εϖμε. an expression that embraces all believers, not just the apostles) during the period following his departure (Carson 1991:495; Schnackenburg 1982:70). The promises of Jesus are twofold (cf. Strachan 1941:283-285; Kysar 1986:225): the first is that the believers will perform the same works that he has done and have the privilege of doing even greater works. The absence created by Jesus’ departure will not lead to the cessation of the Father’s works by which Jesus has made God known (cf. 5:41; 7:18; 8:50, 54). Jesus enables the believers (ο⎯− πιστευ,ων) to do the works of Jesus and to excel at these. Jesus’ second promise to the believers is that their prayers will be heard. It is indicated that the Sits im Leben of the Johannine prayer practice has its original context in the community’s petitionary prayers in its conflict with the synagogue. The prayer in this passage reflects the early prayers of the Johannine community as it sought vindication from God for its Christological

---

602 Talbert (1992:203) remarks, “The point in these verses is that Jesus is going to the Father; he is going before the disciples do; and until he goes they are unable to follow. Christ and Christians are not on the same footing in salvation history. Jesus possesses a soteriological priority that is expressed here in terms of the chronological priority of Jesus’ going.”

603 Culpepper (1998:210) notes, “The disciples are not concerned about where they will go after they die, but how they will relate to Jesus since he is going away. Jesus assures them that this is not the last ‘upper room’ experience they will have together. He is going out to prepare a place for them, and he will come again to be with them. The reference is probably not primarily to the Second Coming but to
beliefs. As such, strong apologetic motifs for the legitimacy of the Johannine community within a Jewish context surface in the prayer. The entire farewell discourses serve to consolidate the existence of the Johannine community, and as such have didactic and paraenetic functions (Ferreira 1998:78). Thus the ongoing presence of the absent Jesus will be found in the worshiping community. The departure of Jesus does thus not imply the permanent separation between Jesus and his followers, but a new level of the union between them.

3.3.3. Part III: The return of Jesus (14:15-24/cola 10.19-13.7)

After the promise by Jesus of permanent dwelling in and among his disciples to encourage them in 14:1-14, 14:15-24 (cola 10.19-13.7) further explicates the promise of Jesus’ continuing fellowship from two very important perspectives: that of the sending of “another Paraclete” (vv. 16-17/cola 10.20-10.22) and that of Jesus’ own coming to them (vv. 18-24/cola 10.23-13.7). Thus the main concern of this third part may be formulated as the return of Jesus. The starting point of the whole passage is “keep my commandments” (v. 15/colon 10.19), to which there is recurrence in vv. 21 (cola 10.28-10.30), 23 (cola 12.0-13.4), and 24 (cola 13.5-13.7) (cf. Ridderbos 1997:499; Brown 1970:642). Jesus declares that he will reveal himself to those who keep his commandments. Thus the disciples will continue to experience the presence of Jesus in this section (see Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:232). On the basis of contents and flow of argument, the exegesis will proceed under the following headings: “the ethical implications of being his follower” (14:15); “the coming of

---

604 Most scholars agree that a point of demarcation seems to occur between colon 10.18 (14:14) and colon 10.19 (14:15). This proposal is apparent in the fact that cola 10.19-13.7 (14:15-24) are bound together by the inclusion between colon 10.19 (14:15) and colon 13.7 (14:24). That is, the recommendation to “love” appears in colon 10.19 (14:15) for the first time in 14:1-31 and reappears in cola 10.28-30 (14:21), cola 12.0-13.4 (14:23), and cola 13.5-13.7 (14:24). In the midst of these cola, the coming of another Paraclete (cola 10.20-22/14:16-17) and the coming of Jesus (cola 10.23-10.27/14:18-20) are mentioned. Thus the structural marker “love” clearly marks the beginning and ending of the cluster (14:15-24) (Moloney 1998:391-392). Another prominent feature of this part is that in cola 10.20-10.22 (14:16-17) the new theme of the Paraclete is introduced (Brown 1970:622-624). The reason for isolating colon 10.19 from what follows from the previous cola and the break between colon 13.7 and colon 13.8 onwards is therefore clear.

605 This is why vv. 15-24 belong together and why v. 18 must not, as some interpreters think, be taken as the beginning of a new topic and a new pericope.
Jesus in the perspective of the Spirit” (14:16-17); “the coming of Jesus” (14:18-20); and “the ethical implications of being his follower” (14:21-24).

3.3.3.1. The ethical implications of being his follower (14:15/colon 10.19)

10.19. (15)

ςΕα.ν αϖγαπα/τε, με( τα.ϕ εϖντολα.ϕ τα.ϕ εϖμα.ϕ τηρη,σετε.

Jesus has demonstrated his love for his own (13:1-30), which is shown in his foot-washing act (see “context”); he then commanded his disciples to love one another (13:34-35); now for the first time in the Fourth Gospel he speaks of their love for him (Carson 1991:498; see Van der Watt 2000:304ff.; Tenney 1976:219; Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:231; Schnackenburg 1982:73-74; Keener 2003:971-972; Orchard 1998:182; Segovia 1991:94; cf. Nissen 1999a:194-212). Jesus mentions here that love for him will lead to the keeping of his commandments.

606 The character of love is specified in the Fourth Gospel not by an extended body of teaching, as in Matthew’s Sermon on the Mount, but by a single enacted parable: Jesus’ washing of the disciples’ feet. The episode has two dimensions. The first part of the story reveals that the crucifixion was Jesus’ consummate act of complete self-giving love. In the washing of his disciples’ feet, as in his death, he gives himself completely (Jesus’ remark to Peter in 13:8 indicates that his self-giving love will bring his followers into an abiding relationship with him). The second part of the passage elaborates the significance of the act as an example for the disciples to follow (13:15). To put it precisely, in the first instance, the washing of the disciples’ feet, placed immediately before the passion narrative, prefigures the death of Jesus. Similarly, Jesus’ laying down of his life for his followers (15:13) serves as an act of love and servant-hood. Thus, Jesus’ death is depicted by John as an act of self-sacrificial love that establishes the cruciform life as the norm of discipleship: those within the community may be called upon literally to lay down their lives for one another. Secondly, John quite clearly understands the death of Jesus as being for the sake of the whole world (1:29; 3:16): God loved the world so much that he gave his only Son up to death. Consequently, even though their primary mandate is to manifest love and service within the community, the disciples who share in Jesus’ mission in the world can hardly remain indifferent to those outside the community of faith. The call to lay down one’s life may have broader implications than those explicitly articulated in the “new commandment” (Nissen 1999a:201-202; cf. Segovia 1991:94-95).

607 “You will keep” (τηρη,σετε) is one of three manuscript readings. The future tense τηρη,σετε is read by B L Ψ 1010 1071 1195* 2148 al. The aorist subjunctive τηρη,σητε is found in P66 a 060 33 al. The imperative τηρη,σατε is read by A D K W Θ Π f1 f13 28 565 700 892 Byz Lect (Metzger 1994:208). The UBS committee prefers the future tense, though judging by its choice a “C” decision, indicating considerable doubt whether the superior reading is to be found in the text or in the apparatus (see Newman & Nida 1980:465). Many scholars agree that the future tense suits better with the immediately following κα−γω. εϖρωτη,σο…(Beasley-Murray 1987:243; Barrett 1978:385; Moloney 1998:405; cf. Bernard 1928b:545). According to Newman and Nida (1980:465; see Kysar 1986:227), TEV and most modern translations follow the Greek manuscripts that have the future tense: “you will obey my commandments”, while NAB still follows a subjunctive: “if you love me and obey the command I give you, I will ask the Father …..”
in John’s view and binds the believer to God/Christ (Kysar 1986:226-227; Ridderbos 1997:499).\(^{608}\) In other words, the followers of Jesus, who belong to the same family as him, will show this by being obedient to the will of the Father and the commandments of Jesus (Van der Watt 2000:287).\(^{609}\) Thus it is made apparent that love for Jesus is not taken as a feeling; the misunderstanding that love is a sentiment is excluded by virtue of the fact that it is represented as obedience to an instruction (Haenchen 1984:126; see Nissen 1999a:194-212).\(^{610}\)

It must be noted here that Jesus mentions the plural form of “commandments” (εὐντολα.ϕ). This is strange because the reader knows of only one commandment, namely, to love one another, 13:34 (Kysar 1986:227; see Du Rand 1981:345; Countryman 1994:102; Orchard 1998:182; Bruce 1983:301; Keener 2003:971-972; Segovia 1991:94-95; Tolmie 1995:206; Culpepper 1998:211; Nissen 1999a:194-212).

What, then, are Jesus’ “commandments”? Newman and Nida (1980:465; see Schnackenburg 1982:74) note that in 14:15 and 14:21 the reference is to obeying “commandments”, while in 14:23 and 14:24 (so also 8:51 and 15:20) it refers to obeying Jesus’ teaching (literally “word” or “words”). They continue that in 14:24 both the singular “word” and the plural “words” occur, without any apparent distinction in meaning. They believe there is no real difference between “commandments”, “word” and “words.” They conclude that, in the present context, the “commandments” of Jesus, the “words” of Jesus and the “word” of Jesus are all references to the command of love.\(^{611}\) Kysar (1986:227) also insists that, according to 14:23 and 14:24, it is not the single commandment to love that is meant here but Jesus’ message as a whole (his λο,γον, singular in v. 23 and λο,γουϕ, plural in v. 24).
So, he sees that the injunction to “keep my commandments” is the same as “hearing” Jesus’ word(s) (8:47; 12:47; 5:24) or “aiding” in them (15:7) or “continuing” in them (8:31). Kysar understands “words” in John to mean believing and living a lifestyle of faith, at the heart of which is love (cf. Schnackenburg 1982:74; Morris 1971:648; Orchard 1998:182; Bruce 1983:301; Segovia 1991:94-95; Barrett 1978:385; Nissen 1999a:194-212).

3.3.3.2. The coming of Jesus in the perspective of the Spirit (14:16-17/cola 10.20-10.22)

The second sub-unit (cola 10.20-10.22/14:16-17) can be regarded as a separate unit since the new theme of the Paraclete is introduced. Here the readers are given the

---

612 Beasley-Murray (1987:256) also states that the interchange of “my commands” with “my word” and “my words” in vv. 21, 23, 24 suggests that they include the full range of the revelation from the Father, not simply ethical instructions (cf. 8:31-32; 12:47-49; 17:6); the lover of Jesus will live in the light of their guidance and their power (for a similar usage see Rev. 1:3; 22:7). Moreover, Ridderbos (1997:499) notes that Jesus here appeals to their love for him, partly because now that he is leaving them they are clearly showing it (cf. 13:36). But Jesus asks to them to show that love in keeping the commandments later when he is gone. For that reason, according to Ridderbos, the reader must not think here primarily of moral precepts but of what Jesus has earlier revealed to them and taught them, that is, what vv. 23 and 25 (referring back to v. 15) call his “word” (cf. 8:51f.; 15:20; 17:6). He underscores that on the road ahead that will count above all in the keeping (not just in the sense of a precious possession but in the sense of a command to be carried out) of Jesus’ commandments. In so doing they will be revealed in the world as his disciples.

613 Some scholars argue that this passage is far from an integral part of the chapter. That is, it is believed that each of the passages dealing with the Paraclete is only loosely related to its context, which suggests that they may have been insertions in the process of the evolution of the farewell discourse. However, the primary concern of this study is only in the final form of the text, thus this issue will not be discussed here in detail.
first of five remarkable pronouncements on the Paraclete (see further 14:26; 15:26; 16:7-11, 12-15). The Paraclete theme governs the whole pericope (cola 10.20-10.22). Cola 10.20-10.21 (14:16a) mention that Jesus will ask (ἐπροτητο) the Father to send “another Paraclete” (ἄλλον παρακλητόν) and colon 10.21 (14:16b) states the purpose of the coming of the Paraclete, that is to abide with the disciples forever. In colon 10.21.2 (14:17a) the identity of “another Paraclete” is now made clear: he is “the Spirit of truth” (τὸ πνεῦμα τῆς ἀληθείας). Cola 10.21.3-10.21.4 (14:17b) indicate that there is a world that is unable to recognise the Paraclete sent to the disciples by the Father as a result of Jesus’ request. However, colon 10.22 (14:17c) stresses that the disciples do know the Spirit. Therefore the sub-unit is thematically coherent and clearly demarcated from the following unit.


---

614 The semantic relationships within the sub-unit are as follows: colon 10.20 is linked to colon 10.21 by means of a qualificational substance-content relationship. Cola 10.21.1-10.21.4 are the explanation on the Spirit who is mentioned in colon 10.21. Colon 10.21.1 is linked to the previous two cola by means of a subordinate logical means-purpose semantic relationship. Semantically, cola 10.21.3-10.21.4 are internally linked by means of a subordinate logical reason-result semantic relationship. Finally, colon 10.22 shows the fact that the Spirit is accessible only to those who dare to perceive the present in faith so it thus represents the function of the Spirit (Kysar 1986:227). The following exegesis will be based on this linguistic analysis.

615 Newman and Nida (1980:466; cf. Barrett 1978:385) say, in translating the verb “ask” (ἐπροτητο), that it is important to distinguish clearly between requests for information and requests for benefits. According to them, the latter is clearly the meaning in this particular context: Jesus promises “to ask for something” rather than “to inquire of” or “to ask a question about”.

616 Ridderbos (1997:499) notes, “Vv. 16-17 speak of how in this practice Jesus will demonstrate to them his permanent help and fellowship. To that end he first promises them that, on his request, the Father ‘will give you another Paraclete to be with you forever’, a promise only stated generally in this first announcement of the sending of the Paraclete; further explication of this promise will follow later. But at this point we must take a closer look at the general significance of the Paraclete as it is conveyed in these chapters of the Fourth Gospel and in the New Testament as a whole.”
The expression “another Paraclete” indicates someone other than the one the disciples have until now possessed in the person of Jesus himself. That is, the Spirit is sent in order that the divine presence may be with the disciples forever after

---

617 Köstenberger (2004:435) notes: the term παρακλητος does not occur in the LXX (but see Aquila and Theodotion on Job. 16:2; παρακλητοι), and elsewhere in the NT it appears only in 1 John 2:1, there with reference to Jesus “our advocate” with God the Father. For a survey of all known examples from the fourth century B.C. to the third century A.D., see Grayston (1981), who concludes that παρακλητος was a more general term that was sometimes (but not always) used in legal contexts, meaning “supporter” or “sponsor”. The closest contemporaneous usage is found in Philo, who uses the expression to convey the notion of rendering general help, be it by giving advice or support (with the latter meaning being the more common). In later rabbinic usage, the term in its transliterated form is used alongside the transliterated term for a Greek expression meaning “advocate” (συνήγορος). Patristic references include Did. 5:2; 2 Clem. 6:9; and Clement of Alexandria, The Rich Man’s Salvation 25.7 (for a study of the Johannine Paraclete in the church fathers, see Casarella 1983). Betz (1963) unconvincingly argues for a Qumran background (the archangel Michael; cf. Shafat [1980-81], who likewise adduces DSS parallels; and Leane [1972], who says that the Paraclete is God himself); Windisch (1968) advances the hardly more plausible hypothesis that the Paraclete is “a kind of angel……in human form”, be it a prophet or teacher; Johnston (1970) unsuccessfully proposes that the παρακλητος is an active divine power that has become embodied in certain leaders of the apostolic church, such as the Fourth Evangelist (see the critiques by Brown [1966:126; 1970:268-70], for whom the Paraclete is the “alter ego of Jesus” [cited in Smalley 1996:297]; cf. Burge 1987); Bultmann (1971:566-72) views the concept as a Johannine appropriation of his Gnostic source’s figure of “helper”; Riesenfeld (1972) postulates a sapiential provenance, which is equally unlikely; Boring (1979) claims that the Paraclete is an angel demythologised as the “spirit of prophecy”. For a discussion of the Paraclete as part of the Fourth Gospel’s lawsuit motif (esp. in 15:26-16:15), see Lincoln (2000:110-23, esp. 113-114). Billington (1995) appropriately stresses the Paraclete’s role in mission. If the disciples are to witness to Jesus, they must understand the significance of his coming; witness to Jesus and the Paraclete’s ministry are thus inseparable (15:26-27; 16:8-11; 20:21-23). The translation of the term has proved particularly difficult since there does not seem to be an exact equivalent in the English language. None of the expressions chosen in English translations seems fully adequate. Kysar (1986:227) acknowledges that counsellor translates παρακλητος is difficult to find an adequate translation. He goes on to assert, “Within the judicial realm the word could mean ‘intercessor’ or ‘advocate’ (the NEB translation; cf. 1 John 2:1 RSV), and in the sphere of religious thought it was used to mean ‘proclaimer’ (cf. Rom 12:8) and ‘comforter’ (the KJV translation, e.g., Acts 9:31). Its immediate background, so far as John was concerned, might have been the role attributed to angels in some Jewish thought of the first century. John or his tradition enlisted this word and pressed it into service to become a means by which a new and richer view of the Spirit might be conceived and communicated. In this case, Paraclete is called ‘another (αλλον) counsellor’, which suggests that Jesus was the first. Hence there is a continuity of function between the Spirit and the historical Jesus. Unlike Jesus, the Paraclete remains with the believers ‘for ever’. It appears, then, that one of the functions Jesus assigns to the Spirit-Paraclete is to provide a permanent presence of God with the community of believers.……It is clear that this fourth evangelist thought of the Paraclete as the continuing presence of the resurrected Christ in the church.” For surveys of the wide-ranging discussions of possible background to the Johannine use of the term “Paraclete”, see Behm (1967:803); Brown (1966:115-126); Carson (1991:499); Köstenberger (2004:436); Burge (1987:41-43).

618 Carson (1991:500) mentions that the term “another Paraclete” in the context of Jesus’ departure implies that the disciples already have one, the one who is departing. He goes on to say that although Jesus is never in the Fourth Gospel explicitly referred to as a Paracletos, the title is applied to him in 1 John 2:1. According to him, that means that Jesus’ present advocacy is discharged in the courts of heaven; John 14 implies that during his ministry his role as Paraclete, strengthening and helping his disciples, was discharged on earth. “Another Paraclete” is thus given to perform this latter task. This Paraclete will be with the disciples forever.


619 According to Newman and Nida (1980:467), “‘Who will stay with you forever’ (ι[να μεθς υ⎯μω/ν ειϖϕ το.ν αιϖω/να η=|) is literally ‘in order that he might be with you into the age’, and ‘age’ (αιϖω/να) is an expression for endless future time, and so ‘into the age’ means ‘to eternity’ or ‘eternally’.”

620 In the first half of this Gospel, John’s treatment of the Spirit has largely resembled that of the Synoptics. Like them, he included the Baptist’s reference to Jesus as the one who will baptise with the Holy Spirit (1:32-33; cf. Mark 1:8 pars.) and emphasised that the Spirit in all his fullness rested on Jesus during his earthly ministry (1:32; 3:34; cf. Luke 4:18). Moreover, John stressed the Spirit’s role in regeneration (3:5, 6, 8; cf. 1:12-13), worship (4:23-24), and the giving of life (6:63). But as in John’s presentation of Jesus’ followers, his adoption of a post-exaltation vantage point leads to a vastly enhanced portrayal in the farewell discourse, where the Spirit is featured primarily as the “Paraclete” (14:16, 26; 15:26; 16:7) and as “the Spirit of truth” (14:17; 15:26; 16:13), two closely related terms (see 15:26) (Köstenberger 2004:435).

621 The word πνευμα occurs sporadically throughout the Gospel (see Van der Watt 2000:370): 1:32,33; 3:5, 6, 8, 34; 4:23, 24; 6:63; 7:39; 11:33; 13:21; 14:17, 26; 15:26; 16:13; 19:30; 20:22. Not all these occurrences refer to the Holy Spirit. According to Newman and Nida (1980:468), “In this verse the pronouns referring to the Spirit are actually neuter in Greek. This is because the Greek term for Spirit (πνευμα) is neuter, although masculine pronouns are used elsewhere in reference to the Spirit (note 15:26; 16:7, 8, 13, 14). If there is a choice in the receptor language between impersonal (neuter) and personal pronouns, it is better to choose personal pronouns, since in John’s Gospel the Spirit has a very personal role. In 4:22 the pronouns which TEV renders ‘whom’ are actually neuter in Greek, but the reference is obviously to a personal deity. In 1 John 1:1 the pronouns are also neuter, but since the reference is to Jesus Christ, they are better rendered as personal rather than impersonal pronouns.”

622 This title is used three times (here and in 15:26 and 16:13), always in definition of the Paraclete. However, in 14:26 the Paraclete is called “the Holy Spirit” (το. πνευμα το. α[γιον) (see Barrett 1978:386).

623 As Morris (1971:649) notes, “This is a striking coincidence of language as the expression is not at all common. But it is a coincidence of language, not thought.” He adds, “Where John thinks of ‘the Spirit of truth’ as a being to be associated with the Father and the Son, the scrollss think of two spirits,
Köstenberger’s (2004:438) view, the concept of truth in John’s Gospel encompasses several aspects: (1) truthfulness as opposed to falsehood: “to speak the truth” means to make a true rather than false statement, that is, to represent the facts as they actually are (cf. 8:40, 45, 46; 16:7; “to witness to the truth” [5:33; 18:37]); (2) truth in its finality as compared to previous, preliminary expressions: this is its eschatological dimension (esp., 1:17; “the law was given through Moses; grace and truth came through Christ”); (3) truth as an identifiable body of knowledge with actual prepositional content (e.g., 8:32: “you will know the truth”; 16:13: “he will guide you into all truth”); (4) truth as a sphere of operation, be it for worship (4:23-24) or sanctification (17:17, 19 [Swain 1998]); and (5) truth as relational fidelity (1:17; 14:6).

Köstenberger (2004:438) concludes that the Spirit is involved in all five aspects: he accurately represents the truth regarding Jesus; he is the eschatological gift of God; he imparts true knowledge of God; he is operative in both worship and sanctification; and he points people to the person of Jesus. Thus the motif of “the coming of Jesus in the perspective of the Spirit” is again emphasised here.

one good and one evil, and fairly evenly matched, which strive for mastery within men” (cf. 1 John 4:6; Judah 20:1, 5).

624 In this regard, Köstenberger (2004:438) notes: the expression “spirit of truth” was current in Judaism (e.g., T. Judith 20). Similarly, the Qumran literature affirms that God placed within humankind “two spirits so that he would walk with them until the moment of his visitation; they are the spirits of truth and of deceit” (I OS. 3:18; cf. 4:23-26). Yet these parallels are merely those of language, not thought. For although these expressions are part of an ethical dualism in Second Temple literature (including Qumran), John’s Gospel does not feature a “spirit of error” corresponding to the Spirit of truth (but see 1 John 4:6, where “the Spirit [or spirit] of truth and the spirit of falsehood” occur together). Rather, the Spirit of truth is the “other helping presence” who takes the place of Jesus while on earth with his disciples. This “other helping presence”, the “Spirit of truth,” the world cannot accept (see commentary at 1:10; cf. 10:26; 12:39; see also 1 Cor. 2:14), because it neither sees nor knows him. Yet, Jesus’ followers do accept him, because “he resides with you and will be in you” (see 1 John 3:24; 4:13). Carson (1991:500) also points out, “Although the expression itself is found in Judaism of the first century, it is customarily parallel to the ‘spirit of perversity’, the two spirits referring to two ‘inclinations’ that battle it out in every human being (Testament of Judah 20:1, 5; 1QS 3:18ff.; 4:23).” He argues that it never has this dualistic force in John. According to Carson, “Within the framework of the Fourth Gospel, the expression immediately calls up the sustained treatment of the Holy Spirit afforded in earlier chapters (cf. 1:32-33; 3:5-8; 4:23-24; 6:63; 7:37-39).” Carson goes on to say, “Judging by descriptions of his work, the Paraclete is the Spirit of truth primarily because he communicates the truth (cf. v. 26; 16:12-15). Coming so soon after 14:6, where Jesus claims to be the truth, ‘the Spirit of truth’ may in part define the Paraclete as the Spirit who bears witness to the truth, i.e. to the truth that Jesus is.” (See Schnackenburg 1982:75)

625 Barrett (1978:386; cf. Morris 1971:650; Moloney 1998:401) points out that the expression πίστις ἡ αὐτή is not simply a defining genitive nor is it simply a substitute for Jesus (the Spirit of Jesus, who is the truth). He proposes that this means “the Spirit who communicates truth” – a meaning closely parallel to that which has been ascribed above to πατρια κλητος or, especially when it is borne in mind that in Jewish and early Christian literature αὐτὴ ἡ ἱδία often means the truth proclaimed by a missionary preacher and accepted by his converts (e.g., 2 Cor 4:2).
There is a world that is unable to recognise the Paraclete sent by the Father to the disciples at Jesus’ request (v. 17b/cola 10.21.3-10.21.4) \(^{626}\) (Moloney 1998:401; see Van der Watt 2000:320-323; Tolmie 1995:140; Marrow 2002:90-102; Lightfoot 1956:276; Countrypman 1994:103; Culpepper 1998:211-212; Freed 1983:71). \(^{627}\) Most scholars understand the term “the world” here as the moral order in rebellion against God (Carson 1991:500; Haenchen 1984:126). \(^{628}\) Barrett (1978:386; see Marrow 2002:90-102) says that the world (κο,σμοϕ, cf. 1:10) in this context means mankind against God. Kysar (1986:228) mentions, “World designates in the farewell discourse the realm of unbelief between which and the church there is hostile opposition.” Newman and Nida (1980:467) more precisely explain “the world” here as “the people of the world”, essentially equivalent to “unbelievers”. They add, “The term is based upon a contrast between people who are related only to the system of the world and those whose faith and confidence is in God, who is in heaven.” Indeed, there is another world that has responded to Jesus by rejecting his claims for himself and his revelation of the Father (Moloney 1998:401-402). The world, unbelievers, cannot receive (λαβει/ν) him, because it neither sees (θεωρει/) him nor knows (γινω,σκει) him (see Van der Watt 2000:375; Morris 1971:650; Marrow 2002:90-102). \(^{629}\)

While the world has never accepted his origins from the Father (cf. 1:35-51; 3:1-21, 31-36; 4:10-15; 5:19-30, 36-38, 43-44; 6:41-51; 7:25-31, 40-44; 8:12-20, 21-29;

\(^{626}\) Kysar (1986:228) notes that the term “know” (γινω,σκει) means not just creedal acceptance but a trusting relationship as well. According to him, the verbs “sees” and “knows” are in the present tense, betraying the perspective of the evangelist and his community.

\(^{627}\) The Holy Spirit is the token of difference between the Christian and the unbeliever (see Tenney 1976:220).

\(^{628}\) In John 1:1-12:50 the world (in its negative connotation) is characterised primarily in terms of its rejection and hatred of Jesus. In John 13:1-17:26 this negative characterisation of the world is developed to some degree: it is unable to receive the Paraclete (14:17); it only possesses a worldly kind of peace (14:27); it is ruled by the Satan (14:30); it hates both Jesus and the disciples (15:18; 17:14); it is sinful (15:18-25;16:8); it has already been judged (16:11); and it experiences joy that will not last (John 16:20) (Tolmie 1995:140).

\(^{629}\) As Carson (1991:500) states, “Profoundly materialistic, the world is suspicious of what it cannot see; but seeing in itself guarantees nothing, as the world’s response to Jesus demonstrates. The truth is that the world does not know the Spirit of truth, and cannot accept him (cf. 1 Cor. 2:14), and if it could it would cease being the world.” However, as Carson underscores, “This does not mean the Spirit of truth has no task to discharge toward outsiders: that will be elucidated in due course (16:7-11); it does mean that there are peculiar ways in which the Spirit of truth remains with them already, and will be in them following Jesus’ glorification.”
9:24-34; 10:31-39), and it is committed to the untruth of all that it can control (Moloney 1998:401-402), the disciples do know the Spirit (v. 17c/colon 10.22) (see Schnackenburg 1982:75-76; Countryman 1994:102-103; Keener 2003:972-974). The present “because he abides with you” points to a continuing reality, just as “he will be in you” indicates a future certainty (Morris 1971:650). According to Kysar (1986:228), the expression “dwell” is the familiar Johannine word μενεν that suggests a mutual relationship of intimacy (see Ford 1997:151). He underscores that John will use this verb to construct the pattern of relationships among God, Christ, the believers, and the Spirit. Thus in this first of the Paraclete passages the function of the Paraclete is limited to the inner life of the church. The Spirit is accessible only to those who dare to perceive the present in faith (Kysar 1986:228-229). That is, this “another Paraclete” will abide with the disciples, setting them apart from the world that cannot receive the Spirit (Moloney 1998:401; Marrow 2002:90-102). The former Paraclete (Jesus) is with the disciples and the “other Paraclete”, the Spirit of truth, will be among them (Moloney 1998:407; Countryman 1994:103). This will become a reality through and after the cross events (7:39) (Van der Watt 2000:273).

630 In the phrase “you know him”, the pronoun “you” is emphatic (Newman & Nida 1980:468).

631 The use of the present tense μενεν and the future εσται in this one sentence is a notorious difficulty for interpreters (Moloney 1998:406). Some important early manuscripts (P66 B D* W f many OL MSS syr* p. 144) read εστιν instead of εσται and understand all three verbs as present. εσται is supported by P66c, 75vid a Α Ψ f13 28 33 vid 700 syr* al. Various versions go on to read μενεν (present) as μενε/ι (future) along with εσται (it aur vg cop arm eth) (see Metzger 1994:208). According to Beasley-Murray (1987:243), the sense is best understood in reading the future tense for the last two verbs and γινωσκετε as a present with future meaning (see Moloney 1998:406-407; Barrett 1978:387; Brown 1970:639-640). A majority of the UBS Committee also interpreted the sense of the passage as requiring the future εσται (Metzger 1994:208). In other words, the UBS committee favours the future tense, though rating its choice a “D” decision, indicating a very high degree of doubt regarding the original text (Newman & Nida 1980:468).

632 Ford (1997:15) explains the mutuality in John 14 as follows: “In 14:1 we see another aspect of the mutuality: to have faith in God is also to have faith in Jesus, a faith that drives angst. The mutuality between Father and Son is also shown in that access to the Father is only through the Son, who is the way, the truth, and the life (14:6-7). This statement of Jesus is brought to an emphatic conclusion by his declaration that to have seen him is to have seen the Father, for the Son abides (is immanent) in the Father and the Father in the Son (v. 9). In v. 10 the simple εν (in) is replaced by o δε πατηρ εμοι μενων (the Father who dwells in me). In 14:19, the disciples will share the transformed life of Christ, and they will recognize the dwelling of Jesus in the Father, themselves in Jesus, and Jesus in themselves. Mutuality is on a triple level. This will lead to love on a triple level: the person who loves Jesus will be loved by the Father, and Jesus will love him or her and manifest himself (14:21). The love of Jesus and the keeping of his word will lead to the Father and the Son taking up their abode in him or her, that is, lasting immanence (v. 23).”

633 The Spirit is the divine presence when Jesus’ physical presence is taken away from his followers (Morris 1989:159).
Thus the history of Jesus does not cease with his departure from his disciples; it continues in another form and creates a new chapter that gives real meaning to everything that has gone before (Haenchen 1984:126).  

3.3.3.3. The coming of Jesus (14:18-20/cola 10.23-10.27)

Jesus is about to depart, but he assures his children (cf. 1:12; 11:52; 13:33) that they will not be left as orphans (ορφανοῦ,φ) (14:18a/colon 10.23). As Ridderbos

634 Carson (1991:499) notes, “The first entailment of the disciples’ love for Jesus is their obedience (v. 15); the second is that Jesus will ask the Father to provide for them another Counsellor to be with them forever.” He adds, “The love of the disciples for Jesus should not be seen as the price paid for this gift, any more than it is the price paid for their obedience.” Newman and Nida (1980:466) also mention, “One result of the disciples’ love for Jesus will be their obedience to his commandments, and the other will be his sending them another helper.” They go on to say, “It should be noticed that John speaks of the coming of the ‘Helper’ in several different ways, though there is no real distinction to be made between them. Here the ‘Helper’ is ‘given’ by the Father at the request of the Son, while in verse 26 the Father will ‘send’ him ‘in the name’ of the Son. In 15:26 (see also 16:17) the Helper is ‘sent’ from the Father by the Son.”

635 The term ορφανοῦ,φ occurs twice in the New Testament. The first instance is in James 1:27, which is under Old Testament influence. James is here making a common Old Testament demand, namely, to protect orphans and widows, as in Ex. 22:21 (cf. Dt. 10:18; 27:19; Job 29:12; Ψ 9:34; 67:5; 145:9; Is. 1:17; Jer. 5:28; 22:3; Ez. 22:7; Zech 7:10; Sir 4:10; 35:14). The other New Testament occurrence of ορφανοῦ,φ is in this passage. As Seesemann (1967:487-488) points out, it is not to suppose though Jesus is here representing himself as a father and his disciples as children who will be orphaned when he leaves them. ορφανοῦ,φ is simply used in a figurative sense for “abandoned”.

636 The reason for the demarcation of the third sub-unit (cola 10.23-10.27/14:18-20) from the following is found in the fact that this sub-unit clearly mentions the coming of Jesus, while the following cola (cola 10.28 onwards) state the terms “love” and “commandment” again (see above). The sub-unit has thematic coherency on the coming of Jesus and accordingly the demarcation of this unit from the following is proper. Semantically, colon 10.23 is linked to colon 10.24 by means of a coordinate additive different consequential semantic relationship. Colon 10.26 (14:19b) is linked to
(1997:505) notes, the idea of “orphans” is evoked by his farewell and refers to the relation between Jesus and his own as teacher and pupils. The expression furthermore corresponds to the address in 13:33 where Jesus, admittedly, calls his disciples “little children”, although he is nowhere called their Father (Morris 1971:651; Ridderbos 1997:504; see Schnackenburg 1982:76-77; Countryman 1994:103; Bruce 1983:303; Segovia 1991:97). Orphans in the ancient world were without familial protection from a senior male member of the family (Van der Watt 2000:343; cf. Köstenberger 2004:438-439; Marrow 2002:90-102). That is, the term orphan is a familial term. In John, Jesus uses the concept of orphan to describe the position of the disciples after he has left (ουϖκ αϖφη,σω υ⎯μα/ϕ οϖρφανου,ϕ) (Van der Watt 2000:369). The implication here is, of course, that he will not leave his people helpless, without a social support system (see Shelton 1988:34-35; Malherbe 1995:122).

Regardless of what has been said of the coming of the Spirit (14:16-17), Jesus furthermore assures them that he will come to them (ε;ρχομαι προ.ϕ υ⎯μα/ϕ) (14:18b/colon 10.24) (Ridderbos 1997:504-505; Barrett 1978:387; Woll 1980:229; Orchard 1998:181; Moloney 1998:402; Keener 2003:972-974; Morris 1971:651; Bruce 1983:303; Segovia 1991:97; Tolmie 1995:132-133). It is clear that Jesus will not leave the disciples to battle their way through the world alone (Morris 1971:651; see Schnackenburg 1982:77; Countryman 1994:103). However, when will this coming of the departed Jesus take place? Arguments have been advanced for all three “comings” – Jesus’ resurrection, the gift of the spirit, the Parousia – and for various combinations of them. Indeed, over the years this “coming” has been interpreted in close connection with 14:3, whether, as in the exegesis of the ancient

637 In the only two other places where it occurs in the New Testament it is used in the literal sense (Mark 12:40 v.l.; Jas 1:27) (Morris 1971:651).

638 According Newman and Nida (1980:469), “οϖρφανου,ϕ” is literally “orphans” (JB), but the more general meaning of “one left without anyone to care for him” is perhaps better in the context. They add that the disciples of Socrates were said to have been left “οϖρφανου,ϕ” at his death, and this term was also used in reference to disciples whose rabbi had died (see Plato, Phaedo 116a).

639 According to Newman and Nida (1980:469), the clause ε;ρχομαι προ.ϕ υ⎯μα/ϕ can be read as “I am coming to you”. In 14:3 the same verb is used, but with the addition of the adverb “again” (=back).
Latin fathers, by applying the content of 14:19 and 14:20 in totality to Jesus’ Parousia, or, as some moderns do, by taking everything that occurs after Jesus’ departure (resurrection, ascension, Pentecost, and second coming) as a single “coming” in which successive phases are not temporally distinguished (see Ridderbos 1997:505; Tenney 1976:220-221; Tolmie 1995:132-133).

Two of the resurrection appearances are explicitly cast in terms of Jesus’ coming (20:19, 26), and this suits the personal language very well (“I will come to you …. You will see me”). On the other hand, John 14:18-20 is framed by two passages that explicitly refer to the coming of the Spirit (vv. 16-17, 25-26). Again, some reflect on the “coming” language of v. 3, with its reference to the Parousia, and believe that John has purposely collapsed these “comings” so that differences between them are at a vanishing point, as if to say that it does not matter what “coming” one has in mind, provided that Jesus remains with his followers and does not abandon them as orphans (Carson 1991:501).641 The time reference may be either the resurrection appearances or Jesus’ return in the person of the Holy Spirit, and both find support from the context.

Kysar (1986:229; see also Schnelle 1989:68) argues that it is the coming of the Paraclete that is most relevant here. He mentions that the promise with which the chapter begins is reiterated in this passage and it flows from the promise of the giving of the Paraclete. He claims that the following arguments support this view.642 Firstly, in v. 19, the term μικρο.ν (yet a little while) refers to the impending crucifixion (cf. 13:33 above as well as the related expression “a little longer” at 8:33 and 12:35 above) (Kysar 1986:229; see Barrett 1978:387; Schnackenburg 1982:77-78;

---

641 As Carson (1991:501) mentions, “More sceptical commentators argue that John represents a mature version of Christianity, where Jesus’ personal resurrection and the promise of his apocalyptic coming at the end of time are effectively ‘demythologised’ in favour of an emphasis on the coming of the Spirit.” Carson cites Bultmann (1971:617-618) in this regard who argues that v. 18 originally referred to the Parousia, but that the author, by putting the verse in this context, has changed its meaning to make it refer to the coming of the Spirit.

642 “As a result of Christ’s having life after resurrection, the believers too are given life. These two verses describe the promise of the resurrection to believers; for it means they are not left alone (deprived of the divine presence), and they are given life.” (Kysar 1986:229)
Haenchen 1984:126). Secondly, it is because of his death that “the world will see me no more” , and because of his resurrection that “you will see me” (see Marrow 2002:90-102). Finally, there is a play on the word “see” (thereof) here, for in the first instance it means no more than physical sight, while in the second it is a perception which is the result of faith (i.e., the resurrection appearances are experiences of faith).

However, Barrett (1978:387; see also Countryman 1994:103; Kundsinn 1934:212; Becker 1970:226-227; Schneider 1976:262-263; Kysar 1986:229; Lindars 1972:481) points out that the idea that the coming of Jesus in the person of the Holy Spirit is improbable because John does not simply confound Jesus with the Holy Spirit , and the view that the coming of Jesus in the resurrection appearances is supported by the following verses (see Tenney 1976:221). Carson (1991:501) also remarks, “When vv. 18-20 are read within the framework of the impending ‘hour’, a concatenation of small clues drives the reader to the conclusion that Jesus is referring to his departure in death and his return after his resurrection.”

643 This term echoes Isa. 26:20 and Hab. 2:33-34, cited in Heb. 10:27-28 with reference to the end of the age (Beasley-Murray 1987:501). Ridderbos (1997:505-506) also notes the expression “yet a little while” is a heavily charged phrase familiar from the Old Testament (Is 10:25; 29:17; Jr 28:17 LXX; Ho 1:4; Ps 36:10 LXX) that indicates a state of being left alone and “seeking in vain” (7:33, 34).
644 Newman and Nida (1980:469) point out that both occurrences of θεωρεῖ/ and θεωρεῖτε, are actually in the present tense in Greek (“sees”), but the time reference is obviously future. According to them, the event referred to is, of course, Jesus’ death, which was destined to take place within a day’s time.
645 It is so important to render this second clause so as to indicate clearly that the disciples were not to continue to see Jesus during the entire time of his death, but rather that they would see him again at the time of his resurrection (Newman & Nida 1980:469).
646 Kysar (1986:229) notes, “Doubtless it is a state of affairs experienced by the Johannine community cast out of its home with its ‘parents’ in the synagogue.”
647 Like Barrett, Carson (1991:501) thinks that there is no reason to think that John simply confuses the coming of the Spirit with the coming of Jesus.
648 However, as Barrett (1978:387) suggests, it is by no means impossible that John consciously and deliberately used language applicable to both the resurrection and the Parousia, thereby emphasising the eschatological character of the resurrection.
649 Newman and Nida (1980:470) argue that the pronouns “you … I … and you” are all emphatic in this passage. They maintain that the expression “because I live, you also will live” affirms that Jesus is the source of life for the believers, just as the Father is the source of life for him (see 6:57; “because of him I live also”). They continue that it is possible to punctuate this verse differently and so connect the clause “because I live” with what precedes (JB “but you will see me, because I live and you will live”; see NAB). Both interpretations are thoroughly Johannine and well suited to the context. Besides, according to them, “A literal translation of ‘because I live, you also will live’ might be understood to mean simply ‘because I have lived, you also will live’ or ‘because I am now alive, you also will live.’” Thus, in the view of Newman and Nida, “What seems clear in this context is that it is the continuing
maintains that Jesus’ hearing the prayers of the disciples and doing for them whatever
they ask (vv. 13-14) indicate that he performs the role of a Paraclete (cf. 1 John 2:1),
but that there will be “another Paraclete.” For all the similarities that might exist
between the roles of Jesus the Paraclete (vv. 13-14) and the “other Paraclete” (v. 16),
Moloney believes the latter does not become flesh (1:14) and will not be lifted up in
death to reveal God in a consummate act of love for his disciples (cf. 12:32-33; 13:1).

The flow of thought also supports the notion that the coming of Jesus may be his
resurrection (see above): 14:18a (colon 10.23) stresses that Jesus’ children (cf. 1:12;
11:52; 13:33) will not be left as orphans (ὀφρανου,ϕ) and furthermore, in 14:18b
(colon 10.24), it is indicated that Jesus will come to them again (ερχομαι προ.ϕ υ⎯μα/ϕ).
As has been mentioned above, these two cola indicate
that Jesus will not leave the disciples to battle their way through the world alone
(Morris 1971:651). John 14:19 (cola 10.25-10.26) refer to the coming of Jesus in the
resurrection appearances and this is referred to on the basis of evidence in the
following verse (colon 14:20/10.27) where the day of Jesus’ resurrection is clearly
indicated. John 14:19-20 (cola 10.25-10.27) illustrate the difference between the
disciples and the world in that, unlike the world, the disciples experience the Paraclete,
the resurrection appearances and the abiding presence of the Father and the Son (see
below).

Furthermore, verse 20 (colon 10.27) indicates that, εν επει,νη| τη/| η⎯με,ρα| (in
life of Jesus which forms a basis for the life of the disciples, that is, the fact that Jesus will himself rise
from death.”

Semantically, colon 10.23 is linked to colon 10.24 by means of a coordinate additive different
consequential semantic relationship (see above).

Ridderbos (1997:506) notes, “… for the disciples, ‘yet a little while …. and you will see me’. His
coming to them will not be long delayed and will deliver them from the uncertainty in which now they
are still caught up. With ‘because I live, you will live also’ Jesus does not mean that this life will not be
theirs until later or that faith in it will be based on this ‘seeing’. For Jesus’ entire self-revelation has
already consisted in the reality that he is the Resurrection and the Life; everyone who now believes in
him, even if he or she dies, will yet live (11:25; cf. 5:26, 27; 10:18). The saying ‘because I live, you
will live also’ rather means that in Jesus’ coming and their ‘seeing’ him it will become overpoweringly
clear that just as death has no power over him, so no one will be able to snatch them out of his hand,
and all this because of his unity with the Father (cf. 10:28-30).”

284
that day\textsuperscript{652}, the disciples will know that Jesus is in his Father, and the disciples in Jesus, and Jesus in the disciples (see Schnackenburg 1982:79; Bruce 1983:303; Segovia 1991:97-99). As Kysar (1986:229; cf. Barrett 1978:387) notes, the expression εν εκείνη τη/η μερα| has the ring of eschatological language, for the expression summarises the Old Testament concept of the “Day of the Lord” (e.g., Amos 5:18) and is used in Christian apocalyptic thought (e.g., Mark 13:32). Newman and Nida (1980:470) note correctly that, “Although in traditional biblical language the term refers to ‘the last day’, the day of God’s final intervention, in the present verse it refers to verse 18. Verses 18 and 20 both refer primarily to the time of Jesus’ resurrection, but the thought is obviously extended to the permanent presence of the risen Lord with his people everywhere.”\textsuperscript{653} They think that it is essential that the time referred to in “that day” be understood as the time when the disciples would see Jesus again (v. 19) or when Jesus would live again (implied in verse 19).

Therefore it seems more plausible to suppose that the coming of Jesus in this context refers to the coming of Jesus in the resurrection appearances. However, as Tolmie (1995:133; see Brown 1970:646) points out, the second possibility should not be excluded altogether, as verse 18 suggests a more enduring presence lasting longer than merely a few appearances. A more satisfactory conclusion is that the promise must be interpreted as referring primarily to the resurrection appearances of Jesus that were limited to his followers and were therefore not seen by the world. However, as this promise obviously does not imply that the disciples would be left on their own again after the termination of these appearances, it should be interpreted as including his presence in the Paraclete.

Jesus now promises a knowledge that will be granted to the believer on the day of his departure (“in that day”), the time of his coming and his gift of new life (v. 20/colon 10.27).\textsuperscript{654} This knowledge, a fruit of the presence of the Paraclete, is the revelation of the oneness that exists between the Father and the Son, and the oneness that exists

\textsuperscript{652} The phrase εν εκείνη τη/η μερα| is used three times in John’s Gospel (here and 16:23, 26).

\textsuperscript{653} Thus the term “in that day” marks the great transition to be effected by Jesus’ resurrection.

\textsuperscript{654} According to Newman and Nida (1980:464), once again the pronouns “you” and “I” are emphatic.
between Jesus and the believer (Moloney 1998:403; cf. Strachan 1941:286; Newman & Nida 1980:464; Lightfoot 1956:276-277; Barrett 1978:387-388; Haenchen 1984:127; Tolmie 1995:207; see Appold 1976). What is spoken of here is the relationship that exists between God and Christ and the way in which the believers’ relationship with Christ will become like that divine relationship (Kysar 1986:229). The disciples will see or experience Jesus because they live as he lives. They share the same mode of existence. This enables and grounds the positive relationship between them and Jesus (Van der Watt 2000:209-210). This refers to different forms of a life-giving presence of the risen Jesus among the believers (cf. Moloney 1998:407). Ultimately, as Kysar (1986:229) argues, the reference here is to the resurrection of Christ, and hence it speaks of the promise of the eschatological time already fulfilled in the community of faith (cf. the same expression in 16:23, 26 and “the last day” in 6:39, 40, 44, 54; 11:24 and 12:48).

3.3.3.4. The ethical implications of being his follower (14:21-24/cola 10.28-13.7)

10.28. (21) ο⎯ ε;χων τα.ϕ εϖντολα.ϕ μου και. τηρω/ν αυϖτα.ϕ  εϖκει/νο,ϕ εϖστιν ο⎯ αϖγαπω/ν με∴

10.29. ο⎯ δε. αϖγαπω/ν με αϖγαπηθη,σεται υ⎯πο. του/ πατρο,ϕ μου( 10.30. καϖγω. αϖγαπη,σω αυϖτο.ν και. εϖμφανι,σω αυϖτω/| εϖμαυτο,ν⊕

11.0. (22) Λε,γει αυϖτω| ςΙου,δαϕ( ουϖχ ο⎯ ςΙσκαριω,τηϕ∴

655 The oneness between the Father and the Son has been at the heart of much of Jesus’ teaching, and the basis of his authority (cf. 5:19-30; 10:30, 38), but the introduction of the believer into a oneness with Jesus is new (Moloney 1998:403).

656 As Ridderbos (1997:506) mentions, it is that unbreakable unity of the Father and the Son that will effect the resurrection and into which from now on the disciples will be incorporated – a unity of life between him and them that will be expressed in the same “reciprocal formula of immanence” as that of the unity of the Father and the Son (cf. 17:21ff.), what Paul refers to when he speaks of dying with Christ and of being raised with him (Ro 6:3ff; Col 2:12; 3:1ff.) and which will be further unfolded in what follows.

657 Moloney (1998:402) properly notes, “The Paraclete is the ongoing presence of the truth as ‘the Spirit who communicates truth’. The Paraclete is introduced into the story as the ongoing presence of the revelation of God to those who love Jesus and keep his commandments (cf. v. 15). Despite the physical absence of Jesus created by his departure, his revealing mission is not coming to an end. It is moving toward a new era when the revealing role of Jesus will be taken over by another Paraclete, the Spirit of truth. During the celebration of Tabernacles the narrator told the reader that the Spirit would be given when Jesus was glorified (7:39). The glorification and the gift of the Spirit are at hand, closely associated with Jesus’ death (cf. 11:4, 51-53; 12:23, 32-33; 13:1, 31-32). Therefore the departure of Jesus will be no ordinary departure.”
In a way that is typical of the Fourth Gospel, v. 21 (col. 10.28-30) harks back to v. 15 (colon 10.19) in order to place the meaning of what was said there in a broader context and a clearer light (Ridderbos 1997:506; Kysar 1986:230; cf. Barrett 1978:388; Schnackenburg 1982:79-80; Haenchen 1984:127; Segovia 1991:99). Indeed, Jesus again speaks of keeping and doing his commandments (in the broad sense of “my word”) as the indispensable (v. 15) and unmistakable (v. 21) evidence of his disciples’ love for him. However, although the thought of v. 15 is again reiterated (one who loves Jesus lives by the word of Jesus), two further declarations are made regarding such a person. First, he will be “loved by my Father”; this in no way lessens the reality of the Father’s love for the world, manifest in Christ (3:16), but that love becomes revealed and experienced to new depths by the lover of Jesus. Second, the promise is made that to one who loves Jesus and seeks to follow him, Jesus will “reveal” himself (Beasley-Murray 1987:259; see Kysar 1986:230). Thus Jesus’
love includes his manifestation (see Barrett 1978:388; Bruce 1983:303; Nissen 1999a:194-212; Tolmie 1998:57-75).661

If the believers love the Son and do what he requires, the Father will love them (see Tolmie 1995:208). But if they do not love the Son, they will not accept what he says (14:24; in 14:21 the same is expressed differently). Obedience again seems to form the basis on which love functions (Van der Watt 2000:307; Carson 1991:503; Tolmie 1995:208; Culpepper 1998:212). Love functions within the constraints of obedience, in other words, within the conventions of the ancient Mediterranean family. In essence it comprises a relation in which influence (e.g., in the sense of what a person wants and wills) is transferred from one person to another and that influence is willingly accepted. It means a positive acknowledgement of the relationship and the implications thereof. The will of the person plays a role in the process. This willing acceptance of the implications of the relationship implies loyalty and acceptance of responsibility. It is a combination of will and action. The Father must be obeyed, which implies that he is loved. Love and its corresponding action cannot be separated. Correct action implies an action that obediently acknowledges the position of the Father as father. This illustrates how the imagery is interwoven with the social conventions of the time (Van der Watt 2000:307-308).

Jesus loves those who stand in a relation of loving obedience to him. His love will reveal (ἐϖμφανι,σω) itself in his presence among his disciples (Van der Watt 2000:311). The term ἐϖμφανι,σω is employed in John’s Gospel only here and in the

661 The following are the semantic relationships within this sub-unit: colon 10.29 is linked to colon 10.30 by means of a coordinate dyadic reciprocal semantic relationship. To this colon 10.28 is linked by means of a logical cause-effect semantic relationship. The semantic relationship between cola 11.1 and 11.2 is a coordinate additive equivalent. To this colon 11.0 is linked by means of a subordinate qualificational substance content semantic relationship. Cola 12.0 and 13.0 are linked to each other by means of a subordinate qualificational substance generic-specific semantic relationship. This has a subordinate qualificational substance content semantic relationship with the following cola (cola 13.1-13.7). Colon 13.1 is linked to cola 13.2-13.4 (linked internally by means of a coordinate additive different consequential relationship) by means of a subordinate logical condition-result semantic relationship. Colon 13.6 has a coordinate dyadic alternative semantic relationship with colon 13.7. To this colon 13.5 is linked by means of a subordinate qualificational substance generic-specific semantic relationship.
following verse, so it is somewhat unclear what we are to make of it (Kysar 1986:230; Newman & Nida 1980:471; see Barrett 1978:388). As in the Septuagint of Exodus 33:13, where Moses prays, “Show yourself to me” and Yahweh answers his prayer, it is used of a special divine manifestation. In the New Testament the verb and its cognates are (along with other meanings) used of resurrection appearances: in Matt. 27:53 to describe the resurrected persons resulting from Christ’s crucifixion, and Acts 10:40, in Peter’s proclamation to speak of Christ’s resurrection (God raised up Jesus and “gave him to become manifest”). It is fair, then, to say that the manifestation to the believers here has a first reference to the resurrection appearances. As a consequence of love and faith comes the firsthand experience of the risen Lord.662 The resurrection then is not to be understood as a grand sign that evokes faith from unbelievers but as a confirmation of faith and caring (Kysar 1986:230).663 Furthermore, what this means is described in 14:23 (cola 12.0-13.4). Jesus and the Father will make their home with them. Thus love is expressed by sharing a home. According to Van der Watt (2000:311), the Lazarus events (11:4) also come to mind here: in this instance the focus falls on the relation which implies that Jesus will come to the aid of Lazarus, something which he indeed does.

Judas, not Iscariot (ζιων,δαφ( ουϖχ ο⎯ ςΙσκαριω,τηϕ), 664 interrupts Jesus’ discourse in verse 22 (cola 11.0-11.2). This Judas is probably the one identified as “Judas, son of James” mentioned in Luke 6:16 and Acts 1:13 (Carson 1991:503; Bruce 1983:304)665, but the relationship should not be pressed (Kysar 1986:231).666

662 In a similar way, Moloney (1998:403-404) mentions, “In v. 21 Jesus addresses the wider audience of the Gospel’s readership: ‘they who have my commandments.’ All potential recipients of v. 20 are told that oneness with God is to be understood in terms of love. A response to the revelation of God in Jesus through the observance of his commandments is simultaneously a loving commitment to Jesus (v. 21a). Such love will be matched by the Father’s love for them, Jesus’ love for them, and the ongoing revelation of Jesus to them (v. 21b; cf. Exod. 33:13, 18; Wis. 1:2, 17:4), even after his departure (v. 21c).”

663 Beasley-Murray (1987:259) also notes, “Following the sayings on the Easter and the era they initiated in vv. 18-20, it is evident that what is here promised is a counterpart in the believer’s life to the Easter appearances of the risen Lord to the disciples.”

664 The singular and sub-singular readings in several versional witnesses are interesting from the standpoint of later hagiographical tradition (Metzger 1994:208; see Beasley-Murray 1987:243; Barrett 1978:388-389).

This is the fourth time one of the disciples interrupts this final discourse of Jesus (cf. 13:37; 14:5, 8). The following table illustrates the interruptions of the disciples in the first farewell discourse (Tenney 1976:221-222):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERSON</th>
<th>POINT OF DEPARTURE</th>
<th>CONTENT</th>
<th>ATTITUDE</th>
<th>ANSWER</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Peter</td>
<td>“Where I am going, you cannot come.” 13:33</td>
<td>“Lord, where are you going?” 13:36a</td>
<td>Curiosity</td>
<td>Disillusionment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>“Destiny”</td>
<td>Eagerness</td>
<td>Reproof</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Loyalty</td>
<td>Encouragement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thomas</td>
<td>“You know the way to the place where I am going.” 14:4</td>
<td>“How can we know the way?” 14:5</td>
<td>Petulance</td>
<td>Disclosure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Pessimism</td>
<td>Self-revelation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Disclosure</td>
<td>Challenge to personal contact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philip</td>
<td>“If you know me, you will know my Father also. From now on you do know him and have seen him.” 14:7</td>
<td>“Lord, show us the Father, and we will be satisfied.” 14:8</td>
<td>Obtuseness</td>
<td>Evidence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Yearning</td>
<td>Person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Words</td>
<td>Words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Words</td>
<td>Works</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judas (not Iscariot)</td>
<td>“… I will love them and reveal myself”</td>
<td>“Lord, how is it that you will reveal yourself”</td>
<td>Confusion</td>
<td>Love</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

666 According to Kysar (1986:231), “John has not restricted the participants in the dinner scene to the Twelve, and it is clear that his list of the Twelve (if he had one) differed from those found in the Synoptics (Matt. 10:2-4; Mark 3:16-19; and Luke 6:14-16, as well as the list of the eleven in Acts 1:13-14). ‘Not Iscariot’ may be a gloss to make clear a distinction between this figure and the betrayer.”
Judas’ question also reveals the same kind of tragic misunderstanding as Philip’s in a material and physical sense (cf. 14:9). Jesus has again just spoken of his “coming” (14:18). The error of Judas springs from a typical Jewish understanding that the final “coming” must be a glorious external manifestation (cf. 13:31-32), a definitive triumph over the enemies of God visible to all men (McCaffrey 1988:152-153). He asks, then, why the promised experience is reserved only for the privileged few (cf. Acts 10:40-41: “not for all the people”). That is, Judas’ question posits a distinction between the believers and the world and may assume a grandiose picture of the Parousia in which Christ is to be made known to the whole of creation (Kysar 1986:231; Haenchen 1984:127). He does not understand how a visible manifestation of Jesus in his final glory can take place without being seen by the whole world (Newman & Nida 1980:471; cf. Strachan 1941:286; Van Tilborg 1993:132-137; Countryman 1994:103-104; Caird 1968:265-277; Bratcher 1991:401-408; Cook 1984:291-297; Bruce 1983:304; Segovia 1991:100-101). This latter part of the discourse would seem to be designed to reinterpret traditional Jewish eschatological expectations (McCaffrey 1988:153).

As mentioned above, many scholars agree that the author of the Gospel uses the

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14:21</th>
<th>to us, and not to the world?&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

---

667 Carson (1991:504) gives the precise explanation of the implication of Judas’ question as follows: “His question is not so much ‘why…?’ as ‘how is it…?’” In view of the fact that none of the disciples entertained very clear notions of the resurrection of Christ before the fact, it is unlikely that Judas is specifically asking how it is Jesus will show himself, in his resurrection body, to the disciples and not to the world. By the same reasoning, his question cannot be taken as a clear reference to the Holy Spirit (cf. v. 17). Rather, Judas hears these distinctions between what the world will perceive or be given, and what the disciples will enjoy, and in his mind he cannot square this distinction with his belief that the kingdom must arrive in undeniable and irresistible splendour. If Jesus is the messianic king, then he must startle the world with apocalyptic self-disclosure. Indeed, a select reading of some Old Testament passages (e.g. Isa. 11; Dan. 7; Heb. 3:3-15; Zec. 9), without compensating reflection on passages that speak of suffering and atonement, might be taken to sanction just such a stance.”

668 Here Judas picks up the word επιφάνεια ("reveal") used by Jesus in v. 21. This word suggests a visible manifestation of Jesus in his final glory. In another perspective, in this question the phrase “to
misunderstanding of one of Jesus’ hearers as a means of furthering the discourse (Newman & Nida 1980:471). That is, Judas’ question, like the other queries posed by disciples (13:37; 14:5 and 14:8), serves as a reason for the advancement of the discussion (Kysar 1986:231; see Schnackenburg 1982:81; Van Tilborg 1993:132-137). The following accounts for this assumption. Since the question of Judas in v. 22 (cola 11.0-11.2) suggests a distinction between the believers and the world, Jesus’ answer in vv. 23-24 (cola 12.0-13.7) repeats the difference between those of his family and those who exclude themselves from that circle by their failure to believe and love (Kysar 1986:231; see Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:232; Schnackenburg 1982:80-81). Moloney (1998:404) in this regard notes, “The theme of loving Jesus and holding fast to his commandments appeared in v. 15. Judas’ question, asking for further clarification on the privilege of a revelation to the disciples that will not be given to ‘the world’ (v. 22), leads this section of the discourse to close with the same themes (vv. 23-24).” In v. 23 (colon 13.1), it is indicated that the disciples who love Jesus will keep the word of Jesus. That is, Jesus’ self-revelation after his departure will only be open to those who will keep his word as the word of the one sent by the Father, thus providing proof of their love for him. In other words, Jesus’ answer emphasises love as the condition for revelation (Tenney 1976:222; Van Tilborg 1993:137). Jesus’ answer in this perspective contains nothing other than what Jesus has already said in v. 21 (Ridderbos 1997:508). After all, Jesus does not deny that there will be an apocalyptic denouement at the end (cf. 5:28, 29; 6:39, 40; 14:1-3), but he insists that the theophany of which he has been speaking occurs within the circle of love that displays itself in obedience to the Son’s teaching (“logos”; the singular suggests the Son’s revelation as a whole: contrast v. 21). That is why he reiterates vv. 15 and 21. For the person who so loves and obeys Jesus, Jesus himself promises the exclusive love of his Father (Carson 1991:504; cf. Barrett 1978:389; Schnackenburg 1982:81-82; Countryman 1994:103-104; Keener 2003:977-982; Segovia

us” appears first and so is to be stressed. It stands contrast with “to the world,” which appears last in the Greek sentence order (Newman & Nida 1980:471).


670 The latter unfailingly flows from the former as the disciple lives the in-between-time, assured by the words of Jesus that the Father will love the loving and believing disciples (see Moloney 1998:404).

671 “My word” is synonymous with “commandments” above (cf. v. 15 above) (Kysar 1986:231).
Jesus promises more: “We will come to him and make our home with him.” He refers to μονην in this verse (colon 13.4), the same word which is used in 14:2 (see Van der Watt 2000:311; Orchard 1998:181). With reference to this statement, Schnackenburg (1982:81) feels that the verb used in the plural is sufficient to warrant the conclusion that John does not have the resurrection appearances or the second coming of Jesus in mind. He says the following: “The statement in v. 2 about the “many dwellings in the Father’s house” is now fulfilled, but with a paradoxical change of emphasis: Jesus and the Father will “make their home” with that disciple” (i.e., the disciple that loves him and keeps his word – my elaboration). As a result of this statement, Schnackenburg feels that John 14:23 is “to some extent” an elaboration on the image of “dwelling” in John 14:2 (Oliver & Van Aarde 1991:395). As has already been said, the term μονη, refers to a household situation where the Father, Jesus and the believers will live together. This term has more to do with a “relationship” than with a “place” (Van der Watt 2000:302, 345; Kerr 2002:299ff; Kysar 1986:221). Jesus in fact does not have a “faraway place” in mind, but rather a household among his followers “on earth” (Oliver & Van Aarde 1991:395). Jesus restores the right “relationship” with God. He makes man at home with the Father (Haenchen 1984:124). Since Jesus and the Father are one, because the one doing the sending is present in the one being sent, the new statement coming at the close of verse 23 (colon 13.4) is not as unprecedented as first appears (Haenchen 1984:127).

---

672 Thus, Newman and Nida (1980:471) note, “In reply Jesus indicates that the revelation of himself to his disciples is an internal, spiritual experience, which is dependent upon their obedience and love for him.”

673 According Ridderbos (1997:508), the idea of God dwelling with his people is a frequent motif in the Old Testament and is used there in both cultic and eschatological senses (e.g., Exod. 25:8; Ezk. 37:26f; Zec. 2:10 LXX).

674 Some scholars think that the reference here is to the new spiritual presence – prepared by Jesus – of God in the hearts of people (cf. 4:23, 24), to be understood of course in close connection with the ongoing indwelling of the Spirit (14:17). Carson (1991:504) for instance, argues, “While Jesus leaves his disciples in order to prepare in his Father’s house a ‘dwelling place’ (cf. v. 2) for his followers, he simultaneously joins with the Father (their equality is implicit) in making a ‘dwelling place’ in the believer. Presumably this manifestation of the Father and the Son in the life of the believer is through the Spirit, although the text does not explicitly say so. Other New Testament passages testify to the dwelling of the Son in the Christian (e.g. Eph. 3:17); this is the only place where the Father and the Son are linked in this task. Those who think that the Father and the Son are present in the believer only through the Holy Spirit see the indwelling in this verse as indistinguishable from the gift of the Spirit.”
Now the dwelling place of the divine is with the human, and the heavenly dimension of the “rooms” in 14:2 is described as a reality in the present experience of the believers (Kysar 1986:231; cf. Haenchen 1984:127).\(^675\)

In response to Judas’ question of why Jesus does not reveal himself to the world, Jesus says only, “whoever does not love me does not keep my words” (14:24a/colon 13.5). At this point he draws no further conclusions but the intent is clear. Again the point is that keeping Jesus’ words is the criterion of loving and belonging to him (Ridderbos 1997:509; cf. Schnackenburg 1982:82). That is, mere duty will not generate obedience to Christ; only love for him can do that. This statement is an emphatic expression of the authority of the revelation just made known, with an implicit appeal to receive it in faith (Beasley-Murray 1987:260). Meanwhile, it should be remembered whose words are to be obeyed: the words of Jesus are the words of the Father who sent him (cf. 5:19ff.) (Carson 1991:505; cf. Lightfoot 1956:277; Barrett 1978:390; Bruce 1983:304).\(^676\) Thus the person who does not love Jesus and does not keep his words is rejecting the words of the Father who sent Jesus (Moloney 1998:405; Countryman 1994:103; Tolmie 1995:208-209; Keener 2003:977-982).\(^677\)

**In sum**: The discourse in this part explicates the promise of Jesus’ continuing fellowship from two very important perspectives: that of the coming of “another Paraclete” (vv. 16-17) and that of Jesus’ own coming to them (vv. 18-20). The starting point of the whole passage is “keep my commandments” (v. 15), to which there is recurrent reference in vv. 21-24 (cf. Ridderbos 1997:499). Thus this part formulates the chiastic structure: a (v. 15), b (vv. 16-17), b' (vv. 18-20), a' (vv. 21-24).

The sequence of thought, then, runs as follows (cf. Carson 1991:502): Jesus has claimed to keep his commandments (that is, his words) (v. 15). Jesus has promised to ask the Father to send another Paraclete, the Spirit of truth, to be with disciples

\(^{675}\) Kysar (1986:232) adds, “John’s so-called ‘heavenly eschatology’ is realized in the church.”

\(^{676}\) The term “word” here refers to the message of the revelation as a whole (see above; Kysar 1986:232; Barrett 1978:390).

\(^{677}\) Therefore, as Ridderbos (1997:509) mentions, the expression “the world will see me no more” does not mean that after Jesus’ departure there is no future left other than the “darkness” against which Jesus has warned but – and this is the dominant thrust throughout the Fourth Gospel – that there is no fellowship with the heavenly Jesus for those who think they can escape the decision confronting them in the word of the earthly Jesus, the one sent by the Father.
forever (vv. 16-17). This Paraclete implies that Jesus is the former Paraclete. The world (that is, those who do not believe in him) will not see nor know him, only the disciples (or to those who believe in him). The Spirit is living with them and lives in them, which replaces the presence of Jesus. This train of thought is repeated in the following verses: Jesus mentions that he himself will come to them (v. 18). The next two verses (vv. 19-20) reveal what this means. The world will not see Jesus any more. Jesus never manifests himself to other than his disciples (or to those who believe in him). Because he lives (surely a reference to his resurrection), they too will live, and on that day, realise that Jesus is in the Father, they are in him, and he is in them. Jesus again stresses that only those who love Jesus and thus keep his words will be loved by Jesus and his Father, as will be manifested by Jesus and his Father (vv. 21-24). Therefore this part of narrative indicates those who will see Jesus after his departure. Jesus clearly mentions that he will present himself to people who keep his commandments. The disciples will continue to experience the presence of Jesus and understand what the Father is doing (see Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:232).

3.3.4. Part IV: The conclusion of the farewell discourse (14:25-31/cola 13.8-13.23)

This is the fourth or last part of Jesus’ first farewell address to his disciples.678 The

678 Some scholars treat 14:25-26 as the ending of the unit 14:15-24 with the reference to the Paraclete in 14:26 serving as an inclusion to the earlier Paraclete section in 14:15-17. However, as has been seen above, the theme of love holds the previous cluster (14:15-24) together (vv. 15, 21, 23, 24), in which Jesus makes a unit with the chiastic formula “commandments” in 14:15 and 14:21-24. Besides, the current cluster (14:25-31) is highlighted throughout by the repetition of a similar theme, that is, “speaking” (v. 25), “teaching” (v. 26a), “saying” (v. 26c), “saying” (v. 28), “telling” (v. 29), and “speaking” (v. 30) (Moloney 1998:391-392). Moreover, colon 13.8 (14:25) and colon 13.19 (14:30) are held together by an inclusion, which is the fourth evidence for this separation (cf. colon 13:8: ταυ/τα λελα,ληκα υ⎯μι/ν υ⎯μω/ν; colon 13:19: ουϖκε,τι πολλα. λαλη,σω μεθς υ⎯μω/ν). The current demarcation is also supported by the fact of the use of ταυ/τα λελα,ληκα υ⎯μι/ν in 14:25. Since the refrain in 14:25, ταυ/τα λελα,ληκα υ⎯μι/ν, is used elsewhere in the farewell discourse to introduce concluding remarks678, it seems best to treat 14:25-31 as the conclusion of the first farewell discourse (Brown 1970:650). Finally, from another point of view, 14:25-26 can be put with 14:27-31, for these verses collect the various themes that have been scattered through the whole of the first farewell discourse and the Last Supper scene that prefaced it (Brown 1970:650; cf. McCaffrey 1988:158): v. 26: The Paraclete=14:16-17; v. 27: Do not let your hearts be troubled=14:1; v. 28: I am coming back=14:3; v. 28: I am coming back to you=14:2; v. 28: I am coming back to you=14:3; v. 28: If you loved me (contrary to fact condition) =14:7 (If you really knew me); v. 29: I have told you this even before it happens=13:19; v. 30: The Prince of the world=13:27 (Satan). Thus the isolation of this unit from the previous is legitimate and this last section of the discourse draws together by way of synthesis the various strands of the discourse.
first farewell discourse now closes with a renewed emphasis on Jesus’ going away and its consequences for the disciples. These consequences are not couched in terms of sorrow and the like, as readers have might anticipated, but of blessing. The Holy Spirit will be active in the believers. Jesus’ peace will remain among them. They should rejoice at the prospect of Christ’s being with his Father (Morris 1971:655-656; Brown 1970:650; McCaffrey 1988:157-158). These consequences come about because Jesus does not go to the place; rather he goes, or returns, to God (προ.φ το.ν θεο,ν), more specifically to the Father (προ.φ το.ν πατερα) and thus to the one who sent him (προ.φ το.ν πεςμαντα, με). In other words, Jesus departs to the Father, God, from whom he came in the first place (13:3; 16:28; cf. 12:44-50) (De Boer 2005:3). Indeed, the departure of Jesus is not a permanent separation between Jesus and his followers; rather, it opens the possibility of his ongoing presence in and among his followers. The contents and flow of argument support the process of the exegesis under the headings as follows: “the Paraclete replaces Jesus’ physical presence” (14:25-26/cola 13.8-13.10); “the gift of peace and joy” (14:27-28/cola 13.11-13.17); “the purpose of the discourse” (14:29-31a/cola 13.18-13.21); and “the ending remarks of the discourse: A command to arise and depart” (14:31b/cola 13.22-13.23).

3.3.4.1. The Paraclete replaces Jesus’ physical presence (14:25-26/cola 13.8-13.10)

The phrase, ταυτα λελεκαυμιν, in verse 25a (colon 13.8) is an expression which appears frequently in the farewell discourses, sometimes relating to the immediate context (e.g., 16:1, 4) and sometimes with a wider reference (e.g., 16:25, 26).
As many scholars agree, this reference here appears to refer to the words of this discourse rather than the whole teaching of Jesus (Morris 1971:656; Barrett 1978:390; cf. Beasley-Murray 1987:261; Brown 1970:652; McCaffrey 1988:157; Segovia 1991:102-105). Indeed, throughout these chapters Jesus repeatedly refers, in a reflective way, to his own teaching (Carson 1991:505). This also has a literary function, serving as a refrain to underscore the seriousness of the contents of these last remarks (Kysar 1986:232). In this regard, Ridderbos (1997:510; see Beasley-Murray 1987:261) claims that this frequently recurring phrase, with which the instruction that precedes is held up before the disciples as words of farewell that are not to be forgotten, often with a purpose clause (“so that”) in which Jesus makes known the intent of the instruction. Here Jesus adds, (Ridderbos mentions) παρς υ⎯μι/ν με,νων, thus indicating that his instruction to his disciples is coming to an end, certainly one more reason for them not to forget while he is still with them what he is imparting to them as his farewell gift. Therefore, verse 25 (colon 13.8) indicates that Jesus’ teaching ministry in the world is now coming to an end (Ridderbos 1997:510; cf. Carson 1991:505; Keener 2003:977-982; Beasley-Murray 1987:261; Strachan 1941:287; McCaffrey 1988:157; Brown 1970:650).

Paraclete is here (in v. 26/cola 13.9-13.10) called by the customary name το. πνευ/μα το. α[γιον while in the previous passage (vv. 16-17/ cola 10.20-10.22) he was called το. πνευ/μα τη/ϕ αϖληθει,αϕ (cf. Lightfoot 1956:277; Barrett 1978:390; Segovia 1991:104-105; Witherington III 1995:250-252). John uses this

---

680 This expression will occur six more times in John 15-16 (15:11; 16:1, 4, 6, 25, 33) (Newman & Nida 1980:473). It serves as a refrain to underscore the seriousness of the contents of these last remarks (Kysar 1986:232). Furthermore, the first sub-unit (cola 13.8-13.10/14:25-26) is demarcated as a separate unit, because the focus has shifted from the demand to keep Jesus’ commandments (14:21-24) to the passage of the Paraclete. The following are the semantic relationships within this sub-unit: colon 13.9 is linked to colon 13.10 by means of a coordinate additive different consequential semantic relationship. To this colon, 13.8 is linked by means of a subordinate qualificational substance generic-specific relationship.

681 According to Newman and Nida (1980:473), this phrase is literally “remaining with you”. The author in this Gospel uses the verb “to remain” interchangeably with the verb “to be”.

682 Schnackenburg (1982:82) also notes that the comment that Jesus has spoken these things to the disciples while he was still with them also has a theological significance, because it marks the end of his internal instruction of the disciples as well as the end of his public proclamation before the world in 12:36b.
title three times (here, 1:33, and 20:22), but this is the only place where the full form το. πνε/μα το. α[γιον occurs (Kysar 1986:232; Blomberg 2001:203). This characteristic designation, found throughout the New Testament, does not draw attention to the power of the Spirit, his greatness, or the like, but places a certain stress on the quality of the Spirit as holy (Morris 1971:656). The Paraclete is further described as ο] πε,μψει ο⎯ πατη.ρ εϖν τω/| οϖνο,ματι, μου. Until now, Jesus has always been the one referred to as of the Father (cf. 4:34; 5:23, 24, 30, 37; 6:38-40; 7:16; 8:16, 18, 26; 12:44-49), but now the Paraclete is described as the one sent by the Father (Moloney 1998:410; Ridderbos 1997:510; Brown 1970:652-653; Witherington III 1995:250—252; Bruce 1983:305). The Father sends the Paraclete particularly “in Jesus’ name” (εϖν τω/| οϖνο,ματι, μου). As Carson (1991:505) maintains, this may not be greatly different from saying that the Father will send him in response to Jesus’ request (v. 16). However, as Carson (1991:505) says, there may be a further point: if he is sent in Jesus’ name, he is Jesus’ emissary (not simply his substitute) (see Brown 1970:653). This reference indeed may imply that “to act in relation to me, in my place, with my authority”, if the reader compares this phrase with Mark 13:6, where those who claim to be Christ (εϖγω, ειϖμι) are said to come εϖπι. τω/| οϖνο,ματι, μου (Barrett 1978:390). To put it another way, this reference means that one person acts on the authority of another, as supported by the personality behind the name. Thus the Holy Spirit, sent in the name of Jesus, would come with his authority, and the message of the Spirit should be received as if Jesus himself were speaking (Tenney 1976:223; cf. Barrett 1978:390; Brown 1970:653; Witherington III 1995:250-252; Bruce 1983:305). Just as Jesus came in his Father’s name (5:43; 10:25), i.e., as his Father’s emissary, so the Spirit comes in Jesus’ name (Carson 1991:505). Thus the origins of the Paraclete are again identified. Stylistic variations are introduced (the use of the verb “to send” rather than “to give”; the use of an instrumental of cause, “in my name” to describe Jesus’ request of the Father). The Paraclete’s origins are given as being with the Father in the world above, a provenance that is emphasised at this point by means of its specific characterisation as “the holy Spirit.” Thus, the Paraclete is described as “sent” by the Father at the request of Jesus himself (14:26ab) (Segovia 1991:105).
The task of the Paraclete in this passage extends beyond what is said of him in vv. 16-17 (cola 10.20-10.22)\(^6\)\(^8\)\(^3\) (Carson 1991:505; Keener 2003:977-982; Haenchen 1984:128; Barrett 1978:390; Brown 1970:653; Witherington III 1995:252).\(^6\)\(^8\)\(^4\) The particular function of the Paraclete here stressed is to “teach the disciples all things” (ἐπιστεύει/νοφυ ⍺μα/ϕ διδαξει πα,ντα) and “to recall believers mindful of all Jesus communicated” (ὑπομνη,σει υ⎯μα/ϕ πα,ντα α[ει=πον υ⎯μι/ν εϖγω,]) (14:26/colon 13.9).\(^6\)\(^8\)\(^5\)

The education of children was an important aspect of ancient family life. This forms a central element in the development of family life in this Gospel (see Van der Watt 2000:266-284). Van der Watt (2000:278) argues that, by means of analogy, there is a movement from aspects of conventional familial life (shared cultural knowledge), to the figurative world that is revealed by Jesus (see Dodd 1968:30-40; Brown 1966:218; Carson 1991:250; Van Tilborg 1993:29-30). According to Van der Watt (2003:278), as an ordinary parent would educate his child, so the Father educates the Son (see Van Tilborg 1993:31). He explains this issue in detail as follows: in 8:28 Jesus indeed uses the term “taught” (εϖδι,δαξε,ν) to indicate this educational interaction between the Father and the Son. The “shared everyday knowledge” of the literal world is accessed and applied to the figurative world from where Jesus comes; the world above or heaven, where the Father is. From what is commonly understood in the literal world the author moves to the figurative world, linking the two worlds by

\(^6\)\(^8\)\(^3\) In John’s Gospel the disciples are shown to fail, throughout Jesus’ ministry, in their understanding of Jesus. One of the Spirit’s principal tasks, after Jesus is glorified, is to remind the disciples of his teaching and thus, in the new situation after the resurrection, to help them grasp its significance and thus to teach them what it meant. Indeed, John himself draws attention to some things that were remembered and understood only after the resurrection (2:19-22; 12:16; cf. 20:9). Granted the prominence of this theme, the promise of v. 26 has in view the Spirit’s role to the first generation of disciples, not to all subsequent Christians. John’s purpose in including this theme and this verse is not to explain how readers at the end of the first century may be taught by the Spirit, but to explain to readers at the end of the first century how the first witnesses, the first disciples, came to an accurate and full understanding of the truth of Jesus Christ. The Spirit’s ministry in this respect was not to bring a qualitatively new revelation, but to complete, to fill out, the revelation brought by Jesus himself (Carson 1991:505).

\(^6\)\(^8\)\(^4\) As Ridderbos (1997:510) says, the need for this among the disciples was acute, as is evident from the questions that they ask Jesus during this farewell, which prove their incomprehension. But the Spirit’s work will relate to their understanding of all of Jesus’ coming and work, the mode of his going to the Father, and everything in his speech and conduct that has seemed puzzling and incomprehensible.

\(^6\)\(^8\)\(^5\) Jesus outlined the functions of the Spirit in making the revelation actual (see Tenney 1976:223).
means of metaphor. Metaphorical interaction in 5:17-30 resides mainly in the verbs. What do working, seeing and hearing involve in the above? It is not made explicit on a metaphorical level. The implicit reader knows that these activities are analogous to what is known as seeing or hearing in everyday life, but is also aware of the difference in nature from what happens in the divine sphere (similarity and difference). Other expressions which also form part of this parallel, such as coming to Jesus (6:35, ο επιφανεια προς ἐμε.) and seeing Jesus (6:40, παρακλητον θεωρων τον υιον) belong to the same semantic field as does faith in this Gospel. These metaphorical interactions of coming and seeing are in some sense analogous to the Son seeing and hearing the Father, and this seeing and hearing describes perception or receiving information through the senses. In the educational context of 5:19-23, this is apparently the common denominator or metaphorical point of convergence between what the Son does and what a son does. However, this point of perception through senses also provides the point of difference (Van der Watt 2000:278). The Father has educated Jesus and on earth Jesus becomes the teacher of the children of the Father. He makes the Father known (1:18), because this is what the children of the Father need to know (17:3). He who has seen Jesus has indeed seen the Father (14:9). He gives the children the words that the Father has given him (17:8), and so on (Van der Watt 2000:279-283; cf. Tolmie 1998:57-75; Mercer 1992:457-462).

John now stresses that the Spirit will also teach the believers. When Jesus leaves, the Paraclete continues the work of Jesus. The Paraclete condemns the world (16:8) and teaches the disciples (14:26) – when Jesus goes away, the teaching is taken over by the Paraclete. Particularly “all things” (παντα), which may contrast with “these things” (ταυτα) in v. 25 (colon 13.8), is comprehensive and probably means “all that you will need to know,” which anticipates “all the truth” mentioned in 16:13 (cf. Morris 1971:656). This indicates “the entire ramification of Christ's revelation” (Kysar 1986:232; cf. Tenney 1976:223). The Paraclete also recalls

686 Newman and Nida (1980:474) also think that this phrase is best understood in light of 16:13. That is, the Paraclete will enable the disciples to understand the full implications of Jesus’ words.
πα,ντα α] ει=πον υ⎯μι/ν εϖγω, 687 As Barrett (1978:390) points out, the pronoun εϖγω is a most emphatic. 688 This means that the Paraclete will bring back to the disciples’ memory all the things that “Jesus” had told them (Morris 1971:657). 689

Kysar (1986:232) correctly asserts that the two functions of the Paraclete named here, teaching and reminding, are two aspects of the same work. Newman and Nida (1980:474) also insist that these two phrases (“teach you everything” and “make you remember all that I have told you”) must be taken as synonymous, the one reinforcing the other. 690 Thus the Paraclete does not bring a new revelation but communicates the historical revelation in Christ to other times and places and steers the church in the interpretation of that revelation (Kysar 1986:232). 691 Thus when Jesus leaves, the Paraclete continues his work (see Van der Watt 2000:283; Witherington III 1995:252-253; Countryman 1994:104; cf. Mercer 1992:457-462). 692 These two functions of the Paraclete explain in greater detail, therefore, the previous association of the Paraclete with the meaning, disclosure, and proclamation of “truth” (14:17a). The subordination of the Paraclete to Jesus is again clear: not only is the Paraclete sent by the Father at the request of Jesus, but also its assigned role is directly connected to Jesus’ own revelation and teaching. The two functions envisioned are interdependent. The recalling of Jesus’ mission and message for the disciples implies

688 This is read by B L 060 0141 (33 εϖγω ει/−πον, cf. ver. 28) 127 1819, and is omitted (perhaps as unnecessary) by P75vid A Δ Γ Θ f1 f13 Byz Lect. The omission of this word gives an entirely different meaning to the work of the Paraclete, who (according to this reading) receives fresh teaching from Jesus and transmits it to the church. This is contrary to the meaning of the passage as a whole (Barrett 1978:390-391). Thus, in the absence of any compelling internal considerations, and in order to reflect the somewhat unusual division of external attestation, the UBS Committee correctly thought it necessary to retain the word in the text, but to enclose it within square brackets (Metzger 1994:209). According to Metzger, it is possible to punctuate by taking εϖγω with the following sentence, but this obscures the prominence otherwise given to ειϖρη,νην.
689 The main point is the nature of the work that is here assigned to the Spirit as the one who assists the disciples: He will teach you everything, and remind you of all that I have said to you (Ridderbos 1997:510).
690 Newman and Nida (1980:474) propose that the method by which the Spirit teaches the disciples “everything” is by “making them remember” all that Jesus has taught them, and by bringing out the implications of his teaching.
691 The Spirit’s ministry in this respect was not to bring a qualitatively new revelation, but to complete, to fill out, the revelation brought by Jesus himself (Carson 1991:505).
much more than a simple recollection of the events and teaching in question; such recalling involves further teaching as well, allowing the disciples to begin to understand at last the full implications of that mission and message. As Jesus’ permanent successor among the disciples, therefore, it is the Spirit-Paraclete that brings the disciples to that change of perception promised within the unit itself (14: 7b, 20), a change that in turn forms the basis for most of the other consequences or promises extended. In other words, it is the promise of the Spirit-Paraclete that functions as the key to full belief and understanding and thus as the key to most of the other promises of Jesus for the time after “the hour” (Segovia 1991:105-106; Tolmie 1995:209; Witherington III 1995:252-253; Keener 2003:977-982; Culpepper 1998:212-213; Morrison 2005:598-603). 693

### Functions of the Paraclete in the farewell discourses

692 Therefore, in vv. 25-26, there are two “times” in the experience of the disciples: the now as Jesus speaks to them (v. 25) and the future time when the Paraclete, the Holy Spirit, sent by the Father in the name of Jesus, will be with them (v. 26) (Moloney 1998:409). 693 In this regard, Ford (1997:156) notes: It is John’s emphasis on the Spirit that completes the Trinitarian aspect of the farewell discourse. The Spirit is the bond of friendship between God and redeemed humanity. Just as we saw that within human intimate friendship persons were one soul, there was an interpenetration of spirits, so now Jesus teaches the disciples about the very ontological link between humanity and divinity. The five Paraclete sayings present an incipient Trinitarian view, although Jesus speaks of “another Paraclete”, suggesting that he is the first Paraclete (14:16). The five sayings are a preparation for Jesus’ donation of the Spirit in John 19:30 and 20:22-23. They are solemn prophetic pronouncements. The Spirit is the ekstasis of the Father. The Spirit proceeds from the godhead (15:26) and through Jesus through the birth pangs of the cross. The Spirit is also described as “sent” by Jesus (16:13-15). The first Paraclete saying, John 14:16-17, speaks of the Spirit as immanent in the community. The Paraclete comes as counsellor (one of the meanings of Paraclete) to lead the disciples into all truth and to dwell in them. This is close to the concept of wisdom in the sapiential literature, where wisdom as counsellor/teacher/friend leads her disciples to truth. Jesus speaks about another Paraclete, so that Paraclete comes as an *alter Christus* (another Christ), it would seem, in his capacity of wisdom incarnate. The Paraclete is the possession of the *koinonia*, and not of the world in general. The second Paraclete saying, John 14:26, again represents the Spirit as revealer and teacher. Again the Spirit comes as an *alter Christus*. In the third Paraclete saying, John 15:26-27, the Spirit comes as witness, and witness is a major theme in the Gospel. Here the Spirit appears in a quasi-legal context. However, the fourth Paraclete passage, John 16:7-11, is of great importance. Here the readers see the Paraclete in the capacity of judge of the world. The Spirit will convict it with regard to sin, Jesus’ concept of sin rather than sin according to the Mosaic law; to righteousness, Christ is proven righteous although judged a blasphemer; and to judgment, Christ is judge although he was judged by Pilate and unbelievers. The fifth Paraclete saying, John 16:12-15, identifies the Paraclete with the godhead. The Spirit will be one with the Father and the Son in his teaching, the Spirit will announce the future and will participate in the intra-Trinitarian glorification. But the second Paraclete cannot come until Jesus withdraws (16:7b). The other Paraclete will afford the disciples permanent divine immanence (14:16). The Paraclete is a mutual gift from both Jesus and the Father (14:16; 15:26; 16:7b). The Spirit, like the Logos, is an ekstasis from the Father (v. 26). The Father sends the Paraclete in the name or character of the Son (14:26), and this Paraclete will reveal the full knowledge of Jesus’ teaching to the disciples (cf. 16:13). The Paraclete will also come as judge (16:8-11).
be with you forever (14:16)
teach the disciples all things and remind them of all that Jesus said (14:26)
testify on Jesus’ behalf (15:26)
prove the world wrong about sin, righteousness, and judgment (16:8)
guide the community into all truth (16:13)
does not speak on his own but will speak what he hears (16:13)
glorify Jesus (16:14)
take what is Jesus’ and declare it to the community (16:14-15)

In conclusion, some theological implications can be made throughout the second Paraclete passage of this discourse, as follows: first, as Carson (1991:505) points out, John’s purpose in including this theme and this verse is to explain to readers at the end of the first century how the first witnesses, the first disciples, came to an accurate and full understanding of the truth of Jesus Christ. Secondly, as Ridderbos (1997:510) emphasises, the mission of Jesus is now coming to an end and will soon be completed. Jesus’ future “coming” to his disciples will have another character. In other words, the Paraclete will replace Jesus’ physical presence, teaching them all things and recalling for them everything he has said (Moloney 1998:410; cf. Brown 1970:653). As Jesus was with the disciples (v. 25/colon 13.8), so will the Paraclete be with the disciples in the midst of hostility and rejection (v. 16). As the story has insisted that

---

694 Beasley-Murray (1987:261), in this regard, remarks, “It occurs in two significant passages in the Gospel: first in 2:17 it is said that after Easter the disciples remembered the enigmatic saying regarding the destruction of the temple and the formation of a new one (2:19), together with the relevance of Psalm 69:9 concerning the cleaning of the temple and the saying itself, and so the meaning of the whole event; the second is in 12:16, where it is stated that ‘after Jesus was glorified’ the disciples remembered the triumphal entry of Jesus into Jerusalem and the scriptures that illuminated the meaning of the event.” Beasley-Murray (cf. Tenney 1976:223-224) goes on to say, “These two occasions of ‘remembering’ in the time following Easter and the coming of the Spirit provide illustrations of what is meant by the Spirit ‘remembering’ the disciples of what Jesus said: he not only enables them to recall these things but to perceive their significance, and so he teaches the disciples to grasp the revelation of God brought by Jesus in its richness and profundity.” According to Beasley-Murray (1987:261), “Two observations accordingly are in place regarding this saying about the Paraclete: first, it is clear that the Spirit brings no new revelation; his task is to point to that which Jesus brought and to enable the disciples to understand it; second, like the language used of the Paraclete-Spirit (e.g., επεκείνον in v. 26), his role as representative of Jesus and his task of recalling and interpreting the revelation brought by Jesus make very clear the personal nature of the Spirit. The Trinitarian implications of v. 26, as of the rest of the Paraclete sayings, are evident.”

695 According to Ridderbos (1997:510), that is not to say that the Spirit will come in the place of Jesus or that Jesus will not be involved in the Spirit’s mission (which until now has been his mission).
Jesus’ teaching has revealed God to his disciples, so will the Paraclete recall and continue Jesus’ revelation of God to the disciples (v. 26/cola 13.9-13.10). The mission and purpose of the former Paraclete, Jesus (cf. 14:13-14), who speaks and teaches “his own” will continue into the mission and purpose of the “other Paraclete” (cf. 16) who teaches and brings back the memory of all that Jesus has said (Moloney 1998:410; Haenchen 1984:128; Countryman 1994:104; Morris 1971:656; Tolmie 1995:209-210; Culpepper 1998:212-213). As Schnelle (1998:21) points out, the Paraclete plays a central role in the continuing presence of the Father and the Son among the believers, and guarantees the truth. The Paraclete ensures the continuance of the teachings of Jesus among his people and even by his people, for instance through the charismatic leadership of figures like the beloved disciple. It was common in those days that a father would send his children to a teacher to be taught, or, if he could afford it, to appoint a teacher in the house. Education was, however, the responsibility of the father, whether he undertook it himself, or whether he made use of someone else. The children in the family are educated even when Jesus has returned to his Father (Van der Watt 2000:283; cf. Schnackenburg 1982:83)

3.3.4.2. The gift of peace and joy (14:27-28/cola 13.11-13.17)

> Εἰμπρη,νην αἰσθήμα ὑμῖν μιν/ν.
> Εἴπρη,νην τῇ ἐσμή ὅ ὅ,ὅ,ὅ μιν/ν.
> οὐ καθώ,φο ᾧ ὁ κο,σμοφ δι,δωμί ὅ ὅ,ὅ,ὅ μιν/ν.
> μη ταρασσε,σθω ὅ καρδι,a
> μηδε, δειλια,τω
> ηπικου,σατε ὃ ὃ εἴπον ὅ μιν/ν.
> υπαγω
> και, ερχομαι προ,φ υμαι/φ

696 Furthermore, the ministry of the Spirit described in verse 26b proves crucial for understanding the process by which John wrote this Gospel. On the one hand, the freedom he felt to select, interpret, abridge and elaborate on the works and words of the historical Jesus doubtless stemmed from his sense of the Spirit’s inspiration depicted is explicitly designed to “remind you of everything I have said to you”. In other words, John is not freely inventing pious, edifying fiction, but is bringing out the significance of the things Jesus really did and said (Blomberg 2001:203).
Jesus leaves peace among his disciples and calls on his disciples to rejoice that he is going away to the Father \( ^{697} \) (14:27-28/cola 13.11-13.17). Peace \( \textit{εἰϖρη,νη} \), which is a rendering of Hebrew “\textit{shalom}”, was commonly used at this period as both a word of greeting (so in 20:19, 21, 26) and of farewell (so here and in 16:33). \( ^{699} \) Here it is primarily farewell and thus comes in aptly in this final discourse of Jesus (Carson 1991:505; Barrett 1978:391; Morris 1971:657; Beasley-Murray 1987:262; Haenchen 1984:128; Brown 1970:653; Keener 2003:982-984; Bruce 1983:305; Segovia 1991:106-107; Tolmie 1995:210; Witherington III 1995:253). \( ^{700} \) Assuming its Hebraic connections, peace denotes a wholeness of person, including both spiritual well being and material prosperity (see Kysar 1986:233). However, as Barrett (1978:391) notes, the word “peace” had already acquired much more than conventional depth; thus in the Old Testament (Num. 6:26; Ps. 29:11; Isa. 54:13; 57:19; Ezek. 37:26); and in the New Testament (Rom. 1:7; 5:1; 14:17); and in many other passages (Philo, \textit{Mos.} I, 304). Morris (1971:658) also states that it is worth nothing that in the Bible “peace” is given wider and deeper meaning than in other Greek writings. He believes that for the Greeks peace was essentially negative, the absence of war, but for the Hebrews it meant positive blessing, especially a right relationship with God. Indeed, although the word “peace” represents the conventional

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{Jesus leaves peace among his disciples and calls on his disciples to rejoice that he is going away to the Father.}
\end{align*} \]

\( ^{697} \) The verb \( \alphaϖφι,ημι \) probably here has the sense of a passing on of one’s inheritance (cf. Ps. 16:14 LXX [Matt. 17:14]; Ecc. 2:18; Mark 12:22) (see Kysar 1986:233; Morris 1971:657; Carson 1991:505; Barrett 1978:391).

\( ^{698} \) The semantic relationships within the sub-unit are as follows: colon 13.11 is linked to colon 13.12 by means of a substance qualificational substance generic-specific semantic relationship. To this colon 13.13 linked by means of a coordinate additive different consequential semantic relationship. Cola 13.14 and 13.15 are linked to the previous cola (cola 13.11-13.13) by means of a subordinate logical means-result semantic relationship. Colon 13.16.1 is linked to colon 13.16.2 by means of a coordinate additive different consequential semantic relationship. To this colon, 13.16 is linked by means of a subordinate qualificational substance content relationship. Colon 13.17 is linked to the previous colon (13.16) by means of a subordinate logical means-result semantic relationship.

\( ^{699} \) The word \( \text{εἰϖρη,νη} \) occurs in John’s Gospel only in the farewell discourse (here and 16:33) and as a greeting at the resurrection appearances (20:19, 21, 26) (Kysar 1986:233; Barrett 1978:391; Morris 1971:657).

\( ^{700} \) According to Tenney (1976:225), “With verse 27 the discourse on revelation was completed, and Jesus returned to the original procedure of giving farewell instructions and comfort.”

Indeed many scholars support the assumption that the promise of peace here means more than a mere wish or good wishes. Among others, Schnackenburg (1982:84) is correct in pointing out that peace is eschatological salvation (cf. Isa. 52:7; Ezk. 37:26), offered and given to man with Jesus’ coming (Luke 2:14; 19:38, 42; see also Acts 10:36), gained by individuals with his word (see Mark 5:34 par.; Luke 7:50) and also present in the proclamation of the disciples (see Luke 10:5f.; Matt. 10:13). After he considers the twin uses of this word, that is, Jesus’ word of farewell becoming a word of greeting after the resurrection (20:19, 21, 26), Carson (1991:505) also insists that the contexts of these twin uses are so pregnant with meaning that the underlying notion of peace must be fundamentally messianic and eschatological. He concludes that peace is one of the fundamental characteristics of the messianic kingdom anticipated in the Old Testament (Num. 6:26; Ps. 29:11; Isa. 9:6-7; 52:7; 54:13; 57:19; Ezk. 37:26; Hg. 2:9) and fulfilled in the New (Acts 10:36; Rom. 1:7; 5:1; 14:17). 702

Tolmie (1995:76) moreover stresses that the peace promised by Jesus has nothing to do with an absence of warfare or with a sentimental or psychological feeling of well being, but should be understood as eschatological salvation, as prophesied by the post-exilic prophets, given to the disciples as a lasting gift. Therefore the expression used here is not the usual formula of farewell. Jesus is using the term in his own way for his own purpose (Morris 1971:657; cf. Beutler 1984:90-104; Haenchen 1984:128; Keener 2003:982-984; Orchard 1998:186-187; Barrett 1978:391; Brown 1970:653; Segovia 1991:106-107). 703

701 For instance, Newman and Nida (1980:474) state, “In Psalm 29:11 (‘The Lord…blesses them with peace’) and in Isaiah 57:19 (‘I offer peace to all’) it has the special meaning of a gift from the Lord. In John’s Gospel it is to be taken as equivalent to terms such as ‘light’, ‘life’, ‘joy’ and ‘truth’, all figurative terms descriptive of various aspects of salvation that God brings to his people. In Romans 1:7; 5:1; 14:17 the term also has this broader meaning.”

702 “On the lips of Johannine Jesus ‘peace’ becomes a synonym for salvation or eternal life.” (Kysar 1986:233)

703 Tenney (1976:225) properly notes that the peace of Jesus did not consist in freedom from turmoil and suffering, but in a calm undeviating devotion to the will of God. For Tenney, precisely for this reason, Jesus bequeathed a different peace from that of the world that consists of temporary compromise or of heedless complacency.
Jesus leaves the believers his peace (εἰρήνην τῷ νῦν ἐπιμην) and it is this qualification that makes it something the world can never match (see Van der Watt 2000:351-352; Schnackenburg 1982:84; Moloney 1998:410; Segovia 1991:106-108). As Ridderbos (1997:511) remarks, the “world” here – here, presumably, meaning “people in general” – extends shalom as a wish, pious or otherwise, sincerely or perhaps superficially, but always without the ability to give what is wished for the other. Carson (1991:506) furthermore explains this as follows: “The world is powerless to give peace. There is sufficient hatred, selfishness, bitterness, malice, anxiety and fear that every attempt at peace is rapidly swamped. Within a biblical framework, attempts to achieve personal equanimity or merely political stability, whether by ritual, mysticism or propaganda, without dealing with the fundamental reasons for strife, are intrinsically loathsome.”

Indeed, Jesus’ gift of peace is given not as the world gives it (since he has it at the moment of supreme peril and distress), and accordingly he gives it in a novel way (Van der Watt 2000:352; Barrett 1978:391; Brown 1970:653; Orchard 1998:184-185; Countryman 1994:105; Segovia 1991:106-108). Thus it is peace within the context of what the heavenly Father gives to his family (Van der Watt 2000:352). After his resurrection Jesus greets his disciples with the words “Peace be with you” (20:19, 21, 26). This peace functions within the context of the resurrection and should be defined in those terms (Van der Watt 2000:352). This promise of peace is based on the

---

704 Thus, as Ridderbos (1997:511) mentions, in this verse εἰρήνην νῦν ἐπιμην and μου is reinforced by the emphatic statement εἰρήνην τῷ νῦν ἐπιμην δὲ δομει μου. The possessive pronoun “my” and the words “I give” are further explained in what follows: “not as the world gives do I give to you.”

705 Jesus’ gift of shalom is given “not as the world gives it”; its greetings of “shalom” have no power (cf. Jer. 6:14), and its attempts to establish it in the world come to naught. According to him, a striking example of the latter is the famous Ara Pacis, altar of peace, erected in Rome by Augustus, the first of its emperors, to celebrate his establishment of the age of peace proclaimed by the prophets; it still stands in Rome, a monument to the skill of its sculptors and to the empty messianic pretensions of its emperors (see Beasley-Murray 1987:262).

706 As Newman and Nida (1980:474) say, in this verse, this second statement is perhaps more difficult than the first, since it may be assumed that what is being compared here is the peace, rather than the manner in which the peace is given. According to them, the meaning here is “I do not cause you to have this peace in the same way that the world causes people to have peace”.

707 Therefore, peace that is given by Jesus secures composure in the midst of trouble, and dissolves fear, as the final injunction of this verse demonstrates. This is the peace that garrisons our hearts and
Giver(s). The Father is the King who has all the power. He has given everything into the hands of Jesus (3:35). The kingship of Jesus is not of this world (18:36) and therefore he gives peace not as this world gives peace – he is going to the Father and this must make the family happy and peaceful (12:27ff.). Within the framework of the power and presence of the family of the King, the children experience the joy and peace only the Son can give. If the Son sets you free, you are free indeed (8:36) (Van der Watt 2000:352). Therefore Jesus’ departure is actually a great gift to the disciples – the gift of peace (Countryman 1994:104; Haenchen 1984:128; Tolmie 1995:210; Witherington III 1995:253).

The admonition μη ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α μηδε. δειλια,τω (14:27b/cola 13.14-13.15) harks back to the beginning of the discourse (14:1), creating a small inclusio around this chapter (Blomberg 2001:203). After everything that Jesus has already said about the disciples’ community with him and with God and about their security in his love and peace, he here repeats his initial admonition very emphatically and reinforces it with encouragement not to be afraid (Schnackenburg 1982:85). Jesus’ shalom is not a cheap wish. He is now at the point of going away on a journey in which he will have to fight for that peace against the powers of darkness and violence (v. 30; 16:33), a peace that he will have to bring back from the depths of death (cf. 20:19, 26). But he also knows where and to whom he is going, and his “shalom” is therefore a benediction full of grace and divine power (see Lightfoot 1956:277). For that reason he now repeats the words with which he began: μη ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α μηδε. δειλια,τω (v. 1; cf. 16:33) (Ridderbos 1997:511; Brown 1970:654; Countryman 1994:105; Orchard 1998:18; Segovia 1991:106-107).

minds against the invasion of anxiety (Phil. 4:7), and rules or arbitrates in the hearts of God’s people to maintain harmony amongst them (Col. 3:15) (Carson 1991:506).

708 In the light of this gift of peace, the words of 14:1 with which this discourse began can be repeated, this time in antithetical parallel construction with μη ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α μηδε. δειλια,τω (Kysar 1986:233).

709 Newman and Nida (1980:474) mention that μη ταρασσε,σθω υ⎯μω/ν η⎯ καρδι,α translates the same expression used in 14:1. Here the exhortation μηδε. δειλια,τω is added. Literally the verb used here means “to be a coward” and a noun made from this same stem (TEV “coward”) is used in Revelation 21:8.

710 That peace, in Jesus’ teaching, is to be as characteristic of the dawning kingdom as the presence and power of the Holy Spirit, and Jesus bequeaths both (vv. 26-27), thus fully providing all that is
Jesus recalls his teaching of the opening passage of the discourse (vv. 2-3) that he will go away and come again (υ⎯πα,γω και ε;ρχομαι προ.ϕ υ⎯μα/ϕ) (14:28a/cola 13.16.1-13.16.2). Jesus calls on his disciples to rejoice that he is going away to the Father. This joy should be born of their love for Jesus, which calls for reflection about and keeping his words (see vv. 15, 21, 23). In other words, their love for Jesus should lead them to rejoice in what will happen to Jesus in his departure to the Father (Moloney 1998:411; Brown 1970:654-655). Jesus’ departure is the means of his permanent presence among his followers. Grief and pain will turn to joy when Jesus returns and the disciples experience the presence of the Paraclete (cf. 16:21-22) (Van der Watt 2000:351). John the Baptist experienced similar joy when he realised that he was in the presence of Jesus, the Bridegroom (3:29). There will also be joy among the disciples when the love of the Father and Son is experienced (15:10-12). In 17:13 their joy is linked to the knowledge the disciples have about the protection the Father will afford, their sanctification and mission. These are benefits that they can expect because they have God as their Father. Jesus goes to his Father and therefore the Father will look after his children. Joy occurs within the familial context of love, obedience, protection and fellowship within the family. The joy of Jesus must be duplicated in the believers, and this underlines the unity of experience in the family (Van der Watt 2000:351).

Jesus then mentions that his Father is greater than he. What does “for the Father is necessary to still his disciples’ fears (vv. 1, 27). Many have remarked that in this discourse Jesus imparts to his followers not only “my peace” but also “my love” (15:9, 10) and “my joy” (15:11) (Carson 1991:506).

711 According to Newman and Nida (1980:475), the word υ⎯πα,γω is a term frequently used in John’s Gospel of Jesus’ departure to the Father (note 13:33 and 14:4). It should not be so translated as to suggest that Jesus was abandoning his disciples. A frequent equivalent of υ⎯πα,γω is simply “I am going away”. “I am coming back to you” (ε;ρχομαι προ.ϕ υ⎯μα/ϕ) is the same expression used in verse 18.

712 Rejoicing is the result of the resurrection, as 16:22 indicates.

713 The encouraging explanation of the reason for Jesus’ impending death and promise of his return, given in vv. 2-3, should have brought joy to the disciples, since it is a departure to be with the Father; real love for Jesus would mean rejoicing with him in that prospect. A further ground for such joy is the reminder that the Father, who sent Jesus, and gave him his words to say and works to do, is greater than Jesus, and so everything is under control; God will work out his beneficent purpose through the terrifying events of the coming hours, and the disciples may be sure that he will do the like for them in their hours of testing (Beasley-Murray 1987:262).
greater than I” mean in this context? This strange form of argument has over the years occasioned an assortment of profound dogmatic discussions of the intratrinitarian ontological relationship between the Son and the Father and of the relationship between Jesus’ divine and human “natures” (Ridderbos 1997:512; Morris 1971:658; cf. Lightfoot 1956:277; Orchard 1998:185; Bruce 1983:305; Carson 1991:507-508). As Barrett (1978:391) notes, in this context, “John is not thinking of the essential relations of the Father and the Son, but of the humiliation of the Son in his earthly life, a humiliation that now, in his death, reached both its climax and its end.” Morris (1971:659-659) also argues that the reference is not to Christ’s essential being, but rather to his incarnate state. The incarnate involved the acceptance of a certain subordination, as is insisted throughout the New Testament. More precisely, Kysar (1986:233) puts it in the following way: “This account is not to be taken as a metaphysical statement having to do with relationships within the Godhead. Such is far from John’s mind. The agency concept of Jesus, which we find in this Gospel, implies that the envoy is subordinate to the one he or she represents. Moreover, the description of the Father-Son relationship also implies a subservience of Christ to God (e.g., the Son obeys the Father, 8:25; 10:15; 15:10, 15). But the context of these words shows that what is meant is that the Father is able to bring glory out of the tragedy of the cross. In going to the Father God’s love transforms the apparent failure of the cross into a victorious exaltation.” Newman and Nida (1980:475) also maintain, “In many passages in the Fourth Gospel, Jesus is spoken of as the one whom the Father has sent, or the one who has come from the Father, and it is in this light that the verse is to be understood. The Father is greater than Jesus in the sense that the one who sends a messenger is greater than the messenger he sends. Note especially 13:16. Here the specific reference is probably to the coming of Jesus into the world, by which he accepts the limitations of humanity, including physical death. But after Jesus’ death God will raise him to the position that he had before he came into the world. Note 17:4-5, which indicates that after Jesus had finished the work on earth

714 Jesus is the obedient Sent One of the Father (cf. 4:34; 5:23, 24, 30, 37; 6:38-40; 7:16; 8:16, 18, 26; 12:44-49), and it is as the lesser figure, the Sent One, that he delights in the greater figure: the Sender (v. 28b) (Moloney 1998:411).
715 According to Newman and Nida (1980:475), “In some languages ‘greater’ is understood in the sense of ‘importance’ rather than ‘strength’ or ‘power’. This meaning reflects well the distinction between the one who sends and the one who is sent.”
that the Father had given him to do, the Father restored him to the position that he had before the world was created."\(^{716}\)

Untroubled hearts, without fear in the face of his departure, are the guarantee that the disciples have heard his words and are holding fast to them. A new era is dawning and there is reason for joy. Their love for Jesus should lead them to rejoice in what will happen to Jesus in his departure to the Father who is greater than him. Jesus is the obedient Sent One of the Father (cf. 4:34; 5:23, 30, 37; 6:38–40; 7:16; 8:16, 18, 26; 12:44–49), and it as the lesser figure, the Sent One, that he delights in the greater figure: the Sender (v. 28b). But the coming of the Sent One into the world and his return to the one who sent him are not irrelevant for the disciples (Moloney 1998:411). Jesus himself is indeed the only sent one, but the Father who sends him is sovereign. Jesus is the promise but the Father is the fulfilment (Haenchen 1984:128; cf. Brown 1970:654–655; Tolmie 1995:210).

3.3.4.3. The purpose of the discourse (14:29–31a cola 13.18–13.21)

Jesus tells his disciples all these things while he is still with them (νυ/ν: now) so that

\(^{716}\) Carson (1991:507-508) states: “It is better to take this statement to refer not to the immediately preceding clause, but to the main clause: ‘if you loved me, you would be glad that I am going to the Father, for the Father is greater than I’. Some then take the intrinsic logic like this: ‘you would be glad for everything is under control’. Doubtless the disciples would have lost some of their fear and anxiety if they had really believed that everything was under control, but it is very doubtful if the clause ‘for the Father is greater than I’ can be reduced to nothing more than a generalized statement about the sovereignty of God. The comparison, after all, is between Jesus and his Father (‘greater than I’), yet in
afterwards (ο[ταν γε,νηται: when it does occur) their faith will not be shattered when he departs (14:29/colon 13.18)\(^717\) (Moloney 1998:411; Haenchen 1984:128; Brown 1970:655).\(^718\) In other words, if Jesus tells his disciples these things now\(^719\), it is not to shame them but to ensure faith when the events of which he speaks actually occur (Carson 1991:508). Thus Jesus’ words will have a greater effect in the future. This means that when the things of which he speaks actually come to pass the disciples will recall these words and believe. The disciples will trust Jesus all the more when they see his words verified (Morris 1971:659; cf. Tenney 1976:225; Tolmie 1995:210). Moloney (1998:411) explains it in the following way: “Although there is inevitability about the events of the departure that lie in the near future, the disciples must not be in fear or distress. Love for Jesus and belief in his word should make them occasions for further belief. Therefore the departure of Jesus will not be a moment of tragic desolation for the disciples (cf. vv. 1a, 18, 27b), but the beginning of the time of the Paraclete (vv. 16-17), a time of love (vv. 15, 21, 23-24, 28), belief (vv. 15, 21, 23-24, 29), joy (v. 28) and peace (v. 27a).”\(^720\)

Jesus will no longer talk “much” with his disciples\(^721\), because the enemy is already on his way (14:30a/colon 13.19). Again Jesus calls his enemy “the ruler of this world”

\(^717\) This statement repeats the point of 13:19. Jesus said the same thing with reference to the treason of Judas Iscariot (Carson 1991:508; see Newman & Nida 1980:475).

\(^718\) The semantic relationships within the sub-unit are as follows: colon 13.19 is linked to cola 13.19.1-13.19.2 (which are internally linked by means of a coordinate additive equivalent semantic relationship) by means of a subordinate logical reason-result semantic relationship. To this colon 13.18 is linked by means of a coordinate additive equivalent semantic relationship. Colon 13.20 has a coordinate additive equivalent semantic relationship with colon 13.21. To this cola 13.19.1-13.19.2 is linked by means of a coordinate dyadic alternative semantic relationship. In the coming of Judas and the soldiers Jesus saw the coming of the evil one (Morris 1971:659). In Carson’s terms (1991:508), “Whatever role Judas Iscariot plays as a responsible agent, the devil himself precipitates Jesus’ death.”

\(^719\) The adverb “νυ/ν” is emphatic in the Greek sentence structure (Newman & Nida 1980:475).

\(^720\) Ridderbos (1997:512) asserts that the disciples are to “believe,” not simply to “be prepared for” or “be warned against” the moment at which they must give him up. They are to believe in the “greater” reality with which he will return (cf. 13:19; 16:4, 32f). Morris (1971:659; cf. Newman & Nida 1980:475) underscores that this term may well mean “come to trust”.

\(^721\) Some advocates of rearrangement of these chapters maintain that Jesus’ statement ουϖκε,τι πολλα, λαλη,σω μεθς υ⎯μω/ν in verse 30 signals the conclusion of the first form of the discourse. They think that the term “πολλα’” is left to be said shows the original version of this discourse did not precede two more chapters of discussion (see Kysar 1986:234). However, Carson (1991:508) correctly points out that this statement should not be taken as “the end” of a discourse. He

To put it another way, as Ridderbos (1997:513) says, what is taking place is not just what people are devising against him and have already brought about (cf. 18:3). This bears the eschatological stamp of the conflict between the kingdom of God and the domain of Satan, the power of darkness (cf. Luke 22:53). This transcendent background becomes visible again and again throughout the story of Jesus’ suffering and death (cf. 6:70; 8:44; 13:2, 27). Jesus was especially active in the crucifixion. There the force of good and evil were engaged (Morris 1971:659; Bruce 1983:306).

Jesus immediately adds, however, that εϖν εϖμοι. ουϖκ ε;χει ουϖδε,ν (14:30c/colon 13.19.2). This is an idiomatic rendering of “he has nothing in me,” recalling a Hebrew idiom frequently used in legal contexts, “he has no claim on me”, “he has nothing over me” (Carson 1991:508-509; Keener 2003:985-986).

Jesus does not belong to the “world” of which Satan is the ruler and on which Satan can make claims (8:23), and he has never sinned (8:46). The devil could have a hold on Jesus only if there were a justifiable charge against him (Ridderbos 1997:513;
Bruce 1983:306). Thus despite all appearances to the contrary the prince of this world has no power over Jesus, whose departure is the result of his loving response to his Father (v. 30c; cf. 4:34; 5:30; 6:38; 10:15, 17-18) (Moloney 1998:411; cf. Tenney 1976:225). Jesus makes it known that for him what is about to take place is not an imaginary struggle, not merely a “triumphant” departure from this world which conceals itself behind the screen of his suffering and dying. It is, rather, “so that the world may know that I love the Father” (Ridderbos 1997:513).724

The reason for Jesus’ departure is openly stated in 14:31a (colon 13:20): Jesus departs this world because he loves his Father and obeys his Father’s commandment (Witherington III 1995:253).725

He has spoken of his Father’s love for him (cf. 3:35; 5:20; 10:17) and now he announces the reciprocation of that love (“αφιμασαμην οατερα”).727 Jesus is the child of the Father. Obedience, namely to listen and do accordingly, was expected of a

724 Ridderbos (1997:514) notes, “Again it is evident that ‘the world’ is the embodiment of the power of unbelief and opposition to God and therefore the designation of the great antithesis in which Jesus finds himself. But the world also remains the object of Jesus’ claim to faith and conversion (cf. 17:21) and is included in Jesus’ self-surrender in death (cf. 6:51). For precisely when he delivers himself up, the world must learn to know him as the Other and the Greater in whom judgment (cf. 12:31) passes over the mode of existence to which it is subject and shows it the only way in which it can be delivered from judgement.”

725 Kysar (1986:234) points out that the relationship of vv. 30-31 is not clear, but the RSV punctuation is probably correct in suggesting the continuation of the flow of thought from v. 30 to v. 31.

726 Colon 13.20 has a coordinate additive equivalent semantic relationship with colon 13.21 (see above).

727 According to Ridderbos (1997:513), “This love is further explicated in the very emphatic concluding statement: ‘and as the Father has commanded me, so I do’ (cf. 12:49, 50). Jesus is commanded to lay down his life in order to take it up again (cf. 10:17f), in keeping with the great rule of his coming, which is that ‘no one has ascended into heaven but he who descended from heaven’ (3:13). This means that he will not avoid the confrontation with the ruler of this world, who is coming to meet him with everything that is at his disposal in this world: betrayal, denial, violence, and injustice, but will step forward to meet him. And Jesus will do that so that the world may know that for him this is the direction and the manner in which the Father has commanded him to go. It will ‘know’ this when in the near future it sees him walk through the streets of Jerusalem, condemned to die, and then hanging on a cross; it will ‘know’, if it wants to or not, if it understands or not, that that is the way and the manner in which he will overcome the ruler of this world, and in him the world, not by might or violence, but the power of his love for the Father and of the Father’s love.”
child. In 8:29 Jesus states that he does what pleases his Father. He does what the Father has taught him and “continues to live and by the power of the Father’s nearness” (Van der Watt 2000:286). In other words, as the love of Jesus’ disciples for their Master is attested to by their obedience (vv. 15, 21, 23), so also does the Son himself remain in his Father’s love by keeping his commandments (8:29; 15:10). Jesus’ love for and obedience towards his Father are ultimately displayed in his willingness to sacrifice his own life (10:17-18) (Carson 1991:509; see Malina & Rohrbaugh 1998:232; Brown 1970:656; Bruce 1983:306; Tolmie 1995:210; Culpepper 1998:212-213). Only in Jesus’ obedience does it become clear that he does not live for himself, but acts only as the Father charges him (Haenchen 1984:128). Thus his departure is unlike any other departure. Despite the impotence of the prince of this world, Jesus accepts his departure at the violent hands of his opponents to reveal to the world his love for his Father (Moloney 1998:411-412; cf. Tenney 1976:226; Barrett 1978:391-392; Brown 1970:656). 728

3.3.4.4. The ending remarks of the discourse: A command to arise and depart (14:31b/cola 13.22-13.23)

\[
\begin{align*}
13.22. & \varepsilon\varphi\gamma\epsilon\iota, \rho\varepsilon\sigma\theta\epsilon( \\
13.23. & \alpha;\gamma\omega\mu\epsilon\nu \varepsilon\varphi\nu\tau\nu\epsilon\theta\nu\iota\nu\zeta
\end{align*}
\]

The time for words appears to have come to an end. Jesus’ violent departure will make known to the world – by deeds rather than words – how much Jesus loves the Father (v. 31a), and it will be the definitive demonstration of his unconditional acceptance of the will of his Father (v. 30b) (Moloney 1998:412; cf. Countryman 1994:105). With this the climax of Jesus’ discourse has been reached: \( \varepsilon\varphi\gamma\epsilon\iota, \rho\varepsilon\sigma\theta\epsilon( \alpha;\gamma\omega\mu\epsilon\nu \varepsilon\varphi\nu\tau\nu\epsilon\theta\nu\iota\nu\zeta \) 729 (Rise, let us go from here). 730 Some

728 As Moloney (1998:414) says, the use of “the world” (ο⎯ κο,σμοϕ) in this verse does not have the negative connotations of vv. 17, 19 and 22. It refers to God’s creation, offered life and salvation through the revelation of God in and through Jesus (cf. 3:16; 4:42).
729 The following is the semantic relationships within this sub-unit: colon 13.22 is linked to colon 13.23 by means of a coordinate additive equivalent semantic relationship.
commentators attempt to treat Jesus’ summons as metaphorical language. They suppose that the words, σήχει,ρεσθε( α;γωμεν εϖντευ/θεν, belong to the well known ambivalent expressions typical of the Gospel. Amongst others, Dodd (1953:409) thinks that there is no physical movement from the place. He assumes that the movement is a movement of the spirit, an interior act of will. He argues that the words mean “up, let us march to meet him”. For him, this is a spiritual acceptance of the conflict that lies ahead, not physical movement, and it leads directly into chapter 15 (see Moloney 1998:414). Other scholars, who argue that the last clause of 14:31 is intended to have only a spiritual meaning, suppose that the real meaning of the words is a summons to resurrection (see Barrett 1978:392; Beasley-Murray 1987:223). However, this option can be dismissed on the slender evidence. Efforts to understand “rise, let us be on our way” as a spiritual rather than physical movement are an effort to avoid the problem it raises (cf. Schnackenburg 1982:87; Haenchen 1984:128; Brown 1970:656-657; Countryman 1994:105). Although various attempts have been made to interpret the end of v. 31 metaphorically, many modern scholars still insist that the words “from here” point clearly to a literal change of location (see “context”). However, the present study has attempted to show that Jesus’ exit is strikingly similar to a dramatic exit in ancient tragedy. That is, like tragic characters whose exits mark critical developments in a dramatic plot, Jesus’ exit from the Last Supper marks a critical narrative shift. His exit is a critical point in the Gospel for a host of reasons, and so the progress of the narrative pauses immediately prior to the exit, in order to reflect on and underscore this exit’s significance. Therefore the dramatic action of Jesus, which is nothing like what one sees in the testament form, is a critical theological concern of the Fourth Gospel. Because Jesus is the ascending and descending redeemer, whose purpose culminates in a return to the Father, and because Jesus is the one who gives his life for his friends, culminating in his death on the cross,

730 Newman and Nida (1980:476) say that “come, let us go from this place” is very close to Mark 14:42 (Get up, let us go), words spoken in Gethsemane immediately before the arrest of Jesus. “From this place” may be best translated in some languages “from this room” or “from this building”.

731 It has already been noticed that a critical feature distinguishing John’s last supper discourses from other testaments is the dramatic action of the scene, specifically the fact that Judas and Jesus depart from the last supper like characters exiting the stage.

732 Jesus’ exit to death is compared to tragic exits in general in order to argue further that his departure resembles a particular type of tragic exit, the delayed exit. Ancient dramatic figures, in all eras and in
his exit from the farewell discourses is the completion of his life and work. Greek tragedy provides a ready literary form to emphasise and dramatisate Jesus’ departure and return to the Father. In any case, this passage apparently functions as an indication that the first farewell discourse of Jesus has ended.

**To sum up:** This is the last section of the first farewell discourse. Jesus’ words ταυτα λελοκα και ομιλοντες μετα του διδασκειν των οικουμενων αποδεικνυοντος την ολοκληρωσιν της διδασκαλικης του δοσιμος στον κόσμον. This is immediately followed by the second remark by the Paraclete about his function. The particular function of the Paraclete that is here stressed is to “teach all things” (επικεινομενοι μετα του μεσημβρινος διδασκειν των οικουμενων) and keep the believers mindful of all that Jesus communicated (ποιητες των διδασκαλης του). This implies that the Paraclete will take over Jesus’ position among the disciples. Jesus then leaves a peace to his disciples and calls on them to rejoice that he is going away to the Father (the second sub-unit). This admonition clearly implies that he is going to the Father to open the possibility of being present in and among his followers. It is also indicated that the purpose of the discourse is the belief of the disciples in him and the reason for his departure is his obedience to the Father (third sub-unit). Thus the textual function of the discourse as replacing the presence of Jesus is clearly indicated. Then the discourse of Jesus closes with his commands to arise and depart (the fourth sub-unit). Therefore the conclusion of the discourse confirms that the departure of Jesus provides the disciples with the gift of the permanent presence of Jesus in and among them.

3.4.Conclusion

The first farewell discourse has been investigated in detail in this chapter. Jesus announced his imminent departure to his disciples. However, as the exegetical enterprise has shown, the departure of Jesus does not mean a separation from his followers; rather, it opens the possibility of his permanent dwelling in and among them.
them. The leaving and return of Jesus should be understood in terms of the new relationship between Jesus and the believers. For this reason, Jesus calls on courage and faith from his disciples (cf. 14:1) and emphasises that it is good (cf. 16:7) for him to depart. Indeed, his departure means preparing a place for these disciples (cf. 14:2-3) and signifies the completion of the work the Father has given him to do, a work that will be for the benefit of the disciples (cf. 14:28). Thus the disciples should rejoice and not be fearful (cf. 14:27).